BEGINNER'S HISTORY

MAC

THIS IS A
CALIFORNIA STATE
TEXT BOOK

IT IS THE DUTY OF PUPILS TO ASSIST THE STATE BY GUARDING AND USING THIS BOOK WITH CARE, SO THAT IT MAY YIELD GOOD SERVICE. ONLY ONE BOOK CAN BE GIVEN TO A PUPIL. HE SHOULD COVER IT WITH PAPER OR OTHER PROTECTIVE MATERIAL, AND SHOULD HE LOSE, DAMAGE, OR DESTROY THE BOOK HE SHOULD REPLACE IT AT HIS OWN EXPENSE. ¶IT IS THE DUTY OF TEACHERS TO ENCOURAGE AND ENFORCE THESE PROVISIONS.

Book No. _____

_____ *School District*

in _____ *County*

Date of issue _____ *19*____

The American's Creed

I BELIEVE in the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA as a government of the people, by the people, for the people; whose just powers are derived from the consent of the governed; a democracy in a republic; a sovereign nation of many sovereign states; a perfect union, one and inseparable; established upon those principles of Freedom, Equality, Justice, and Humanity for which American patriots sacrificed their lives and fortunes.

I THEREFORE believe it is my duty to my country to love it; to support its CONSTITUTION; to obey its laws; to respect its FLAG; and to defend it against all enemies.

AUTHORIZED VERSION.

THE SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS

CALIFORNIA STATE SERIES

A

Beginner's History

by

WILLIAM H. MACE

Professor of History in Syracuse University, Author of "Method in History," "A Working Manual of American History," "A School History of the United States," "Lincoln: The Man of the People," and "Washington: A Virginia Cavalier"

Illustrated by
HOMER W. COLBY

Portraits by
JACQUES REICH and P. R. AUDIBERT

REVISED AND ADOPTED
BY THE CALIFORNIA STATE BOARD OF EDUCATION

CALIFORNIA STATE PRINTING DEPARTMENT

SACRAMENTO

Copyright 1916,
By the PEOPLE OF THE STATE OF CALIFORNIA

Mace's Primary History
Copyright, 1909,
By WILLIAM H. MACE
All rights reserved
Mace's Elementary History
Copyright, 1914,
By WILLIAM H. MACE
Mace's Beginner's History
Copyright, 1914,
By WILLIAM H. MACE
Copyright, 1916,
By WILLIAM H. MACE

In the compilation of this book certain matter from A Beginner's History, by William H. Mace, has been used. All such matter is protected by the copyright entries noted above.

THE TABLE OF CONTENTS

PAGE

THE NORTHMEN DISCOVER THE NEW WORLD
Leif Ericson, Who Discovered Vinland 1

EARLY EXPLORERS IN AMERICA
Christopher Columbus, the First Great Man in American History 2
Ponce de Leon, Who Sought a Marvelous Land and Was Disappointed 17
Cortés, Who Found the Rich City of Mexico 18
Pizarro, Who Found the Richest City in the World . . . 23
Coronado, Who Penetrated Southwestern United States but Found Nothing but Beautiful Scenery 24
De Soto, the Discoverer of the Mississippi 24
Magellan, Who Proved that the World Is Round 28

THE MEN WHO MADE AMERICA KNOWN TO ENGLAND AND WHO CHECKED THE PROGRESS OF SPAIN
John Cabot also Searches for a Shorter Route to India and Finds the Mainland of North America 34
Sir Francis Drake, the English "Dragon," Who Sailed the Spanish Main and Who "Singed the King of Spain's Beard" 37
Sir Walter Raleigh, the Friend of Elizabeth, Plants a Colony in America to Check the Power of Spain 42

THE MEN WHO PLANTED NEW FRANCE IN AMERICA, FOUNDED QUEBEC, EXPLORED THE GREAT LAKE REGION, AND PENETRATED THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY
Samuel de Champlain, the Father of New France 49
Joliet and Marquette, Fur Trader and Missionary, Explore the Mississippi Valley for New France 53

WHAT THE DUTCH ACCOMPLISHED IN THE COLONIZATION OF THE NEW WORLD
Henry Hudson, Whose Discoveries Led Dutch Traders to Colonize New Netherland 54

FAMOUS PEOPLE IN EARLY VIRGINIA
John Smith the Savior of Virginia, and Pocahontas its Good Angel 60

PAGE

Lord Baltimore, in a Part of Virginia, Founds Maryland as a Home for Persecuted Catholics and Welcomes Protestants 68
Industries, Manners, and Customs of First Settlers of Virginia 71

PILGRIMS AND PURITANS IN NEW ENGLAND
Miles Standish, the Pilgrim Soldier, and the Story of "Plymouth Rock" 73
John Winthrop, the Founder of Boston; John Eliot, the Great English Missionary; and King Philip, an Indian Chief the Equal of the White Man 81
Industries, Manners, and Customs 85

THE MEN WHO PLANTED COLONIES FOR MANY KINDS OF PEOPLE
Peter Stuyvesant, the Great Dutch Governor 87
Manners and Customs of New Netherland 91
William Penn, the Quaker, Who Founded the City of Brotherly Love 92
Quaker Ways in Old Pennsylvania 98
John Oglethorpe, the Founder of Georgia as a Home for English Debtors, as a Place for Persecuted Protestants, and as a Barrier against the Spaniards 100
Industries, Manners, and Customs of the Southern Planters . 103

ROBERT CAVELIER DE LA SALLE, WHO FOLLOWED THE FATHER OF WATERS TO ITS MOUTH, AND ESTABLISHED NEW FRANCE FROM CANADA TO THE GULF OF MEXICO
La Salle Pushed Forward the Work Begun by Joliet and Marquette 106
The Men of New France 113

GEORGE WASHINGTON, THE FIRST GENERAL AND FIRST PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES
The "Father of His Country" 115

THE MAN WHO HELPED WIN INDEPENDENCE BY WINNING THE HEARTS OF FRENCHMEN FOR AMERICA
Benjamin Franklin, the Wisest American of His Time . . . 147

PATRICK HENRY AND SAMUEL ADAMS, FAMOUS MEN OF THE REVOLUTION, WHO DEFENDED AMERICA WITH TONGUE AND PEN
Partick Henry, the Orator of the Revolution 158
Samuel Adams, the Firebrand of the Revolution 167

THE MEN WHO FOUGHT FOR AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE WITH GUN AND SWORD
Nathan Hale 179

PAGE

Generals Greene, Morgan, and Marion, the Men Who Helped Win the South from the British 182

THE MEN WHO HELPED WIN INDEPENDENCE BY FIGHTING ENGLAND ON THE SEA

John Paul Jones, a Scotchman, Who Won the Great Victory in the French Ship, *Bon Homme Richard* 194

John Barry, Who Won More Sea Fights in the Revolution than Any Other Captain 199

THE MEN WHO CROSSED THE MOUNTAINS, DEFEATED THE INDIANS AND BRITISH, AND MADE THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER THE WESTERN BOUNDARY OF THE UNITED STATES

Daniel Boone, the Hunter and Pioneer of Kentucky . . . 202

John Sevier, "Nolichucky Jack" 210

George Rogers Clark, the Hero of Vincennes 216

DEVELOPMENT OF THE NEW REPUBLIC

Eli Whitney, Who Invented the Cotton Gin and Changed the History of the South 226

Thomas Jefferson, Who Wrote the Declaration of Independence, Founded the Democratic Party, and Purchased the Louisiana Territory 229

Lewis and Clark, American Explorers in the Oregon Country 238

Oliver Hazard Perry, Victor in the Battle of Lake Erie . . 244

Andrew Jackson, the Victor of New Orleans 245

THE MEN WHO MADE THE NATION GREAT BY THEIR INVENTIONS AND DISCOVERIES

Robert Fulton, the Inventor of the Steamboat 257

Samuel F. B. Morse, Inventor of the Telegraph 264

Cyrus West Field, Who Laid the Atlantic Cable between America and Europe 268

Thomas A. Edison, the Greatest Inventor of Electrical Machinery in the World 272

THE MEN WHO WON TEXAS, THE OREGON COUNTRY, AND CALIFORNIA

Sam Houston, Hero of San Jacinto 276

David Crockett, Great Hunter and Hero of the Alamo . . 284

John C. Fremont, the Pathfinder of the Rocky Mountains . 285

Spanish Missions in the Southwest 292

THE THREE GREATEST STATESMEN OF THE MIDDLE PERIOD

Henry Clay, the Founder of the Whig Party and the Great Pacificator 296

PAGE

Daniel Webster, the Defender of the Constitution 302
John C. Calhoun, the Champion of Nullification 308

ABRAHAM LINCOLN, THE LIBERATOR AND MARTYR
A Poor Boy Becomes a Great Man 315

TWO FAMOUS GENERALS
Ulysses S. Grant, the Great General of the Union Armies . 331
Robert Edward Lee, the Man Who Led the Confederate Armies 337

THE BEGINNING OF EXPANSION ABROAD
William McKinley and the Spanish-American War 342

WESTWARD EXPANSION AND DEVELOPMENT
The Westward Movement of Population and the Development of Transportation 350
George Washington Goethals, Chief Engineer of the Panama Canal 354

HEROINES OF NATIONAL PROGRESS
Elizabeth Cady Stanton and Susan B. Anthony, Who Were the First to Struggle for the Rights of Women 358
Julia Ward Howe, Author of "The Battle Hymn of the Republic," and Harriet Beecher Stowe, Who Wrote *Uncle Tom's Cabin* 362
Frances E. Willard, the Great Temperance Crusader; Clara Barton, Who Founded the Red Cross Society in America; and Jane Addams, the Founder of Hull House Social Settlement in Chicago 366

RESOURCES AND INDUSTRIES OF OUR COUNTRY
How Farm and Factory Helped Build the Nation 374
Mines, Mining, and Manufactures 379

A Pronouncing Index 383

The Index 386

CALIFORNIA
The Story of Our State (follows Index)

ARCTIC
CIRCLE
RUSSIAN EMPIRE
Lena River
Amur River
Irkutsk
Vladivostok
Port Arthur
Peking
Hwang-ho R.
Yangtse Kiang R.
Shanghai
CHINA
Hong-kong
FORMOSA I.
SEA OF OKHOTSK
BERING SEA
ALEUTIAN ISLANDS
Bering Strait
ALASKA
Nome
Fort Yukon
Yukon R.
Dawson
St Michael
Mackenzie R.
Juneau
Sitka
Vancouver
Seattle
Portland
DOMINION
Monday
Sunday
San Francisco
PACIFIC
OCEAN
DATE LINE
INTERNATIONAL
MIDWAY I.
TROPIC OF CANCER
Honolulu
HAWAIIAN IS.
MARCUS I.
WAKE I.
MARIANNE IS.
GUAM I.
PHILIPPINE IS
YAP I.
PELEW IS.
CAROLINE IS.
MARSHALL IS.
HOWLAND I.
BAKER I.
FANNING I.
EQUATOR
SOUTH CHINA SEA
Manila
Singapore
BORNEO
SUMATRA
CELEBES
JAVA
EAST INDIES
NEW GUINEA
BISMARCK ARCH.
GILBERT IS.
SOLOMON IS.
ELLICE IS.
PHOENIX IS.
MANAHIKI IS.
MARQUESAS IS.
NEW HEBRIDES
SANTA CRUZ IS.
SAMOA IS.
MANUA I.
TUTUILA I.
Tahiti
SOCIETY IS
TUAMOTU IS.
FIJI IS.
NEW CALEDONIA
LOYALTY IS.
TONGA IS.
COOK IS.
TROPIC OF
EASTER I.
EPITCAIRN IS.
AUSTRALIA
Perth
Adelaide
Sydney
Melbourne
TASMANIA
NORFOLK I.
NEW ZEALAND
Auckland
Wellington
Latitude North
Latitude South
Longitude from Greenwich
140°
160°
180°
160°
140°
120°

THE WORLD

showing the
UNITED STATES
and its
Outlying Possessions

Copyright, 1900, by Rand, McNally & Company.

MACE'S BEGINNER'S HISTORY

THE NORTHMEN DISCOVER THE NEW WORLD

LEIF ERICSON, WHO DISCOVERED VINLAND

1. The Voyages of the Northmen. The Northmen were a bold seafaring people who lived in northern Europe hundreds of years ago. Some of the very boldest once sailed so far to the west that they reached the shores of Iceland and Greenland, where many of them settled. Among these were Eric the Red and his son Leif Ericson.

The Northmen discover Iceland and Greenland

Now Leif had heard of a land to the south of Greenland from some Northmen who had been driven far south in a great storm. He determined to set out in search of it. After sailing for many days he reached the shore of this New World (A. D. 1000). There he found vines with grapes on them growing so abundantly that he called the new land Vinland, a country of grapes.

Leif's discovery caused great excitement among his people. Some of them could hardly wait until the winter was over, and the snow and ice broken up, so as to let their ships go out to this new land.

This time Thorvald, one of Leif's brothers, led the expedition. On reaching land, as they stepped ashore, he exclaimed: "It is a fair region and here I should like

to make my home." But Thorvald was killed in a battle with the Indians and was buried where he had wanted to build his home. The Northmen continued to visit the new land, but finally the Indians became so unfriendly that the Northmen went away and never came again.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* The Northmen, bold sailors, settled Iceland and Greenland. *2.* Leif Ericson reached the shores of North America and called the country Vinland. *3.* The Northmen continued to visit the new land, but finally ceased to come on account of the Indians.

Study Questions. *1.* In what new countries did the Northmen settle? *2.* Tell the story of Leif Ericson's voyage. *3.* What did he call the new land, and why?

Suggested Readings. THE NORTHMEN: Glascock, *Stories of Columbia*, 7–9; Higginson, *American Explorers*, 3–15; *Old South Leaflets*, No. 31.

EARLY EXPLORERS IN AMERICA

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS, THE FIRST GREAT MAN IN AMERICAN HISTORY

2. Old Trade Routes to Asia. More than four hundred fifty years ago Christopher Columbus spent his boyhood in the queer old Italian town of Genoa on the shore of the Mediterranean Sea. Even in that far-away time the Mediterranean was dotted with the white sails of ships busy in carrying the richest trade in the world. But no merchants were richer or had bolder sailors than those of Columbus' own town.

Boyhood of Columbus

Genoa had her own trading routes to India, China, and Japan. Her vessels sailed eastward and crossed the Black Sea to the very shores of Asia. There they found

stores of rich shawls and silks and of costly spices and jewels, which had already come on the backs of horses and camels from the Far East. As fast as winds and oars could carry them, these merchant ships hastened back to Genoa, where other ships and sailors were waiting to carry their goods to all parts of Europe.

Every day the boys of Genoa, as they played along the wharves, could see the ships from different countries and could hear the stories of adventure told by the sailors. No wonder Christopher found it hard to work at his father's trade of combing wool; he liked to hear stories of the sea and to make maps and to study geography far better than he liked to comb wool or study arithmetic or grammar. He was eager to go to sea and while but a boy he made his first voyage. He often sailed with a kinsman, who was an old sea captain. These trips were full of danger, not only from storms but from sea robbers, with whom the sailors often had hard fights.

Why Columbus learned to like the sea

THE BOY COLUMBUS
After the statue by Giulio Monteverde in the Museum of Fine Arts, Boston

While Columbus was growing to be a man, the wise and noble Prince Henry of Portugal was sending his sailors to brave the unknown dangers of the western coast of Africa to find a new way to India. The Turks, by capturing Constantinople, had destroyed Genoa's overland trade routes.

Prince Henry's work

The bold deeds of Henry's sailors drew many seamen

Columbus goes to Lisbon

to Lisbon, the capital of Portugal. Columbus went, too, where he was made welcome by his brother and

A SEA FIGHT BETWEEN GENOESE AND TURKS

The Genoese were great seamen and traders. When the Turks tried to ruin their trade with the Far East by destroying their routes many fierce sea fights took place

other friends. Here he soon earned enough by making maps to send money home to aid his parents, who were very poor.

Columbus was now a large, fine-looking young man with ruddy face and bright eyes, so that he soon won the heart and the hand of a beautiful lady, the daughter of one of Prince Henry's old seamen. Columbus was in the midst of exciting scenes. Lisbon was full of learned men, and of sailors longing to go on voyages. Year after year new voyages were made in the hope of reaching India, but after many trials, the sailors of Portugal had explored only halfway down the African coast.

Sailors hope to reach India

It is said that one day while looking over his father-in-law's maps, Columbus was startled by the idea of reaching

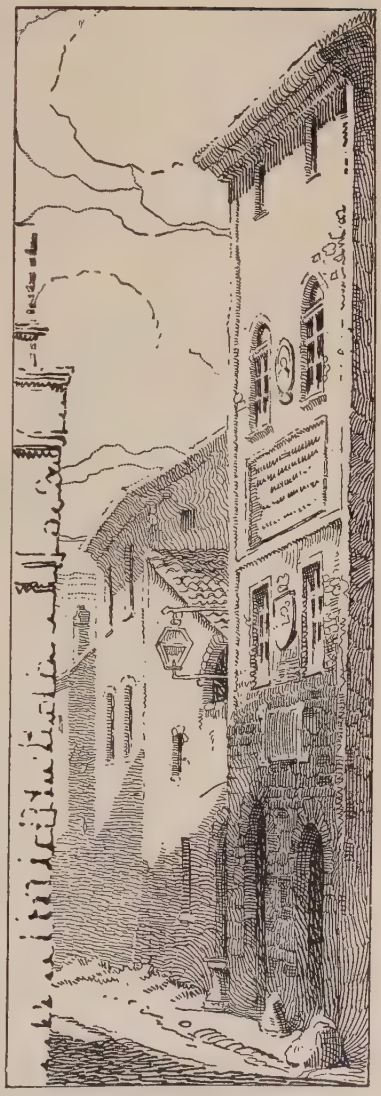
India by sailing directly west. He thought that this could be done, because he believed the world to be round, although all people, except the most educated, then thought the world flat. Columbus also believed that the world was much smaller than it really is.

Columbus' new idea

The best map of that time located India, China, and Japan about where America is. For once, a mistake in geography turned out well. Columbus, believing his route to be the shortest, spent several years in gathering proof that India was directly west. He went on long voyages and talked with many old sailors about the signs of land to the westward.

Finally Columbus laid his plans before the new King of Portugal, John II. The king secretly sent out a ship to test the plan. His sailors, however, became frightened and returned before going very far. Columbus was

A tricky king



THE HOME OF COLUMBUS, GENOA

indignant at this mean trick and immediately started for Spain (1484), taking with him his little son, Diego.

3. Columbus at the Court of Spain. The King and Queen of Spain, Ferdinand and Isabella, received him kindly; but some of their wise men did not believe the world is round, and declared Columbus foolish for thinking that countries to the eastward could be reached by sailing to

What the Spaniards thought of Columbus

COLUMBUS SOLICITING AID FROM ISABELLA
From the painting by the Bohemian artist, Vaclav Brozik, now in the Metropolitan Museum, New York

the westward. He was not discouraged at first, because other wise men spoke in his favor to the king and queen.

It was hard for these rulers to aid him now because a long and costly war had used up all of Spain's money. Columbus was very poor and his clothes became thread bare. Some good people took pity on him and gave him money but others made sport of the homeless stranger and insulted him. The very boys in the street,

it is said, knowingly tapped their heads when he went by to show that they thought him a bit crazy.

Some thought him crazy

LA RABIDA CONVENT NEAR PALOS
At this monastery, on his way to France, Columbus met the good prior

4. New Friends of America. Disappointed and discouraged, after several years of weary waiting, Columbus set out on foot to try his fortunes in France. One day while passing along the road, he came to a convent or monastery. Here he begged a drink of water and some bread for his tired and hungry son, Diego, who was then about twelve years of age. The good prior of the monastery was struck by the fine face and the noble bearing of the stranger, and began to talk with him. When Columbus explained his bold plan of finding a shorter route to India, the prior sent in haste to the little port of Palos, near by, for some old seamen, among them a great sailor, named Pinzón. These men agreed with Columbus, for they had seen proofs of land to the westward.

Begs bread for his son

COLUMBUS AT THE CONVENT OF LA RABIDA
Columbus explaining his plan for reaching India to the prior and to Pinzon, the great sailor

The prior himself hastened with all speed to his

The prior goes to Queen Isabella

good friend, Queen Isabella, and begged her not to allow Columbus to go to France, for the honor of such a discovery ought to belong to Isabella and to Spain. How happy was the prior when the queen gave him money to pay the expenses for Columbus to visit her in proper style! With a heart full of hope, once more Columbus hastened to the Spanish Court, only to find both king and queen busy in getting ready for the last great battle of the long war. Spain won a great victory, and while the people were still rejoicing, the queen's officers met Columbus to make plans for the long-thought-of voyage. But because the queen refused to make him governor over all the lands he might discover, Columbus mounted his mule and rode away, once more bent on seeking aid from France.

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS

From the portrait by Antonis van Moor, painted in 1542, from two miniatures in the Palace of Pardo. Reproduced by permission of C. F. Gunther, Chicago

Why Columbus did not go to France

Some of the queen's men hastened to her and begged her to recall Columbus. Isabella hesitated, for she had but little money in her treasury. Finally, it is said, she declared that she would pledge her jewels, if necessary, to raise the money for a fleet. A swift horseman overtook Columbus, and brought him back. The great man cried with joy when

Isabella told him that she would fit out an expedition and make him governor over all the lands he might discover.

COLUMBUS BIDDING FAREWELL TO THE PRIOR
From the painting by Ricardo Balaca

Columbus now took a solemn vow to use the riches obtained by his discovery in fitting out a great army which should drive out of the holy city of Jerusalem those very Turks who had destroyed the greatness of his native city.

Columbus' unselfish vow

5. The First Voyage. Columbus hastened to Palos. What a sad time in that town when the good queen commanded her ships and sailors to go with Columbus on a voyage where the bravest seamen had never sailed! When all things were ready for the voyage, Columbus' friend, the good prior, held a solemn religious service, the sailors said good-by to sorrowing friends, and the little fleet of three vessels and ninety stout-hearted men sailed bravely out of the harbor, August 3, 1492.

First voyage begun

Columbus commanded the *Santa Maria*, the largest

The stop at the Canary Islands

vessel, only about ninety feet long. Pinzón was captain of the *Pinta*, the fastest vessel, and Pinzón's brother of the *Niña*, the smallest vessel. The expedition stopped at the Canary Islands to make the last preparations for the long and dangerous voyage. The sailors were in no hurry to go farther, and many of them broke down and cried as the western shores of the Canaries faded slowly from their sight.

After many days, the ships sailed into an ocean filled with seaweed, and so wide that no sailor could see the end. Would the ships stick fast or were they about to run aground on some hidden island and their crews be left to perish? The little fleet was already in the region of the trade winds whose gentle but steady breezes were carrying them farther and farther from home. If these winds never changed, they thought, how could the ships ever make their way back?

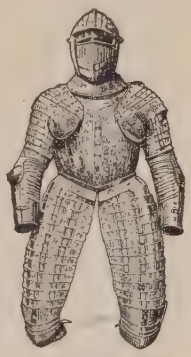
The sailors lost heart, but Columbus grew hopeful

THE SANTA MARIA, THE FLAGSHIP OF COLUMBUS

From a recent reconstruction approved by the Spanish Minister of Marine

The sailors begged Columbus to turn back, but he encouraged them by pointing out signs of land, such as flocks of birds, and green branches floating in the sea. He told them that according to the maps they were near Japan, and offered a prize to the one who should first see land. One day, not long after, Pinzón shouted, "Land! Land! I claim my prize." But he had seen only a dark bank of clouds far away on the horizon. The sailors,

thinking land near, grew cheerful and climbed into the rigging and kept watch for several days. But no land came into view and they grew more downhearted than ever. Because Columbus would not turn back, they threatened to throw him into the sea, and declared that he was a madman leading them on to certain death.



THE ARMOR OF COLUMBUS
Now in the Royal Palace, Madrid

6. Columbus the Real Discoverer. One beautiful evening, after the sailors sang their vesper hymn, Columbus made a speech, pointing out how God had favored them with clear skies and gentle winds for their voyage, and said that since they were so near land the ships must not sail any more after midnight. That very night Columbus saw, far across the dark waters, the glimmering light of a torch. A few hours later the *Pinta* fired a joyful gun to tell that land had been surely found. All was excitement on board the ships, and not an eye was closed that night. Overcome with joy, some of the sailors threw their arms around Columbus' neck, others kissed his hands, and those who had opposed him most, fell upon their knees, begged his pardon, and promised faithful obedience in the future.

Land at last discovered

On Friday morning, October 12, 1492, Columbus, dressed in a robe of bright red and carrying the royal flag of Spain, stepped upon the shores of the New World. Around him were gathered his officers and sailors, dressed in their best clothes and carrying flags, banners, and crosses. They fell upon their knees, kissed the earth, and with tears of joy, gave thanks. Columbus then

Taking possession of the country for Spain

drew his sword and declared that the land belonged to the King and Queen of Spain.

7. How the People Came to be Called "Indians." When the people of this land first saw the ships of Columbus, they imagined that the Spaniards had come up from the sea or down from the sky and that they were beings from Heaven. They, therefore, at first ran frightened

THE LANDING OF COLUMBUS

From the painting by Dioscoro Puebla, now in the National Museum, Madrid

into the woods. Afterwards, as they came back, they fell upon their knees as if to worship the white men.

Columbus and his men disappointed

Columbus called the island on which he landed San Salvador and named the people Indians because he believed he had discovered an island of East India, although he had really discovered one of the Bahama Islands, and, as we suppose, the one known to-day as San Salvador. He and his men were greatly disappointed at the appearance of these new people, for

instead of seeing them dressed in rich clothes, wearing ornaments of gold and silver, and living in great cities, as they had expected, they saw only half-naked, painted savages living in rude huts.

8. Discovery of Cuba. After a few days Columbus sailed farther on and found the land now called Cuba, which he believed was Japan. Here his own ship was wrecked, leaving him only the *Niña*, for the *Pinta* had gone, he knew not where. He was now greatly alarmed, for if the *Niña* should be wrecked he and his men would be lost and no one would ever hear of his great discovery. He decided to return to Spain at once, but some of the sailors were so in love with the beautiful islands and the kindly people that they resolved to stay and plant the first Spanish colony in the New World. After collecting some gold and silver articles, plants, animals, birds, Indians, and other proofs of his discovery, Columbus spread the sails of the little *Niña* for the homeward voyage, January 4, 1493.

First Spanish colony planted in the New World

9. Columbus Returns to Spain. On the way home a great storm knocked the little vessel about for four days. All gave up hope, and Columbus wrote two accounts of his discovery, sealed them in barrels, and set them adrift. A second storm drove the *Niña* to Lisbon, in Portugal, where Columbus told the story of his great voyage. Some of the Portuguese wished to imprison Columbus, but the king would not, and in the middle of March the *Niña* sailed into the harbor of Palos.

The homeward voyage

What joy in that little town! The bells were set ringing and the people ran shouting through the streets to the wharf, for they had long given up Columbus and his crew as lost. To add to their joy, that very night

The joy of Palos

when the streets were bright with torches, the *Pinta*, believed to have been lost, also sailed into the harbor.

Columbus immediately wrote a letter to the king and queen, who bade him hasten to them in Barcelona. All along his way, even the villages and the country roads swarmed with people anxious to see the great discoverer and to look upon the strange people and the queer products which he had brought from India, as they thought.

The people's reception

As he came near the city, a large company of fine people rode out to give him welcome. He entered the city like a hero. The streets, the balconies, the doors, the windows, the very housetops were crowded with happy people eager to catch sight of the great hero.

THE RECEPTION OF COLUMBUS AT BARCELONA

From the celebrated painting by the distinguished Spanish artist, Ricardo Balaca

In a great room of the palace, Ferdinand and Isabella had placed their throne. Into this room marched Columbus surrounded by the noblest people of Spain, but none more noble looking than the hero. The king and queen arose and Columbus fell upon his knees and kissed their hands. They gave him a seat near them and bade him tell the strange story of his wonderful voyage.

Reception by the king and queen

COLUMBUS IN CHAINS
After the clay model by the Spanish sculptor, Vallmitjiana, at Havana

When he finished, the king and queen fell upon their knees and raised their hands in thanksgiving. All the people did the same, and a great choir filled the room with a song of praise. The reception was now over and the people, shouting and cheering, followed Columbus to his home. How like a dream it must have seemed to Columbus, who only a year or so before, in threadbare clothes, was begging bread at the monastery near Palos!

10. The Second Voyage. But all Spain was on fire for another expedition. Every seaport was now anxious to furnish ships, and every bold sailor was eager to go. In a few months a fleet of seventeen fine ships and fifteen hundred people sailed away under the command of Columbus (1493) to search for the rich cities of their dreams. After four years of exploration and discovery among the islands that soon after began to be called the West Indies, Columbus sailed back to Spain greatly disappointed. He had found no rich cities or mines of gold and silver.

Fails to find rich cities

11. The Third and Fourth Voyages. On his third voyage (1498) Columbus sailed along the northern shores of South America, but when he reached the West Indies the Spaniards who had settled there refused to obey him, seized him, put him in chains, and sent him back to Spain. But the good queen set Columbus free and sent him on his fourth voyage (1502). He explored the coast of what is now Central America, but afterward met shipwreck on the island of Jamaica. He returned to Spain a broken-hearted man because he had failed to find the fabled riches of India. He died soon afterward, not knowing that he had discovered a new world.

Death of Columbus

THE HOUSE IN WHICH COLUMBUS DIED

This house is in Valladolid, Spain, and stands in a street named after the great discoverer

In 1501 Amerigo Vespucci made a voyage to South America. He was sent out by Portugal. It was thought that Vespucci had discovered a different land than that seen by Columbus. Without intending to wrong Columbus, the country he saw, and afterward all land to the northward, was called America.

Naming the country

Spain was too busy exploring the new lands to give proper heed to the death of the man whose discoveries would, after a few years, make the kingdom richer even than India. But it was left to the greatest nation in all the western world to do full honor to the memory of Columbus in the World's Columbian Exposition at Chicago (1892–1893).

Honor to his memory

PONCE DE LEON, WHO SOUGHT A MARVELOUS LAND AND WAS DISAPPOINTED

12. Ponce de Leon. When the Spaniards came to America they were told many strange stories by the Indians about many marvelous places. Perhaps most wonderful of all was the story of Bimini, where every day was perfect and every one was happy. Here was also the magic fountain which would make old men young once more, and keep young men from growing old.

A magic fountain

When Columbus sailed to America for the second time he brought with him a brave and able soldier, named Ponce de Leon. De Leon spent many years on the new continent fighting for his king against the Indians. After a while he was made governor of Porto Rico. While thus serving his country he too heard the story of this wonderful land which no white man had explored. Like most Spaniards, he loved adventure. Also he was weary of the cares of his office, and soon resolved to find this land and to explore it.

In the spring of 1513 De Leon set sail with three ships from Porto Rico. Somewhere to the north lay this land of perfect days. Northward he steered for many days, past lovely tropical islands. At last, on Easter Sunday, an unknown shore appeared. On its banks were splendid trees. Flowers bloomed everywhere, and clear streams came gently down to the sea. De Leon named the new land Florida and took possession of it for the King of Spain.

De Leon sets out to find Bimini

Various duties kept him away from the new land for eight years after its discovery. In 1521 he again set out from Porto Rico, with priests and soldiers, and amply provided with cattle and horses and goods. He wrote

to the King of Spain: "Now I return to that island, if it please God's will, to settle it." He was an old man then and hoped to found a peaceful and prosperous colony of which he was to be governor. But Indians attacked his settlement and sickness laid low many of his men. He had been in Florida only a short time when he himself was wounded in a fight with the Indians. Feeling that he would soon die, he hastily set sail with all his men for Cuba, where he died shortly after.

The first settlement in America founded

De Leon had failed to find the wonderful things of which the Indians had told him. He had failed even to establish the colony of which he was to be governor. But De Leon did discover a new and great land which now forms one of the states of the Union. To him also goes the honor of having been the first man to make a settlement in what is now a part of the United States.

CORTÉS, WHO FOUND THE RICH CITY OF MEXICO

13. Cortés Invades Mexico. Columbus died disappointed because he had not found the rich cities which everybody believed were somewhere in India. Foremost among Spanish soldiers was Hernando Cortés, who, in 1519, sailed with twelve ships from Cuba to the coast of what is now Mexico. His soldiers and sailors were hardly on land before he sank every one of his ships. His men now had to fight. They wore coats of iron, were armed with swords and guns, and they had a few cannon and horses. Every few miles they saw villages and now and then cities. The Indians wore cotton clothes, and in their ears and around their necks and their ankles they had gold and silver ornaments. The Spaniards could hardly keep their hands off these ornaments, they

Cortés sank his ships

were so eager for gold. They were now sure that the rich cities were near at hand, which Columbus had hoped to find, and which every Spaniard fully believed would be found.

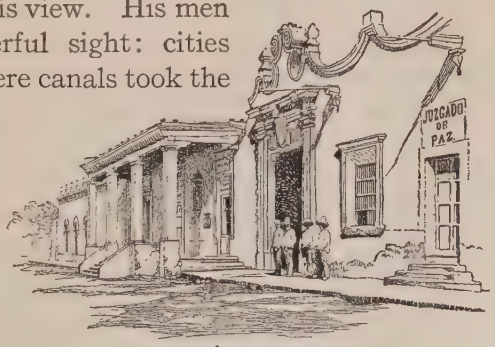
Spaniards saw signs of riches

THE ARMOR OF CORTÉS
Now in the museum at Madrid

The people of Mexico had neither guns nor swords, but they were brave. Near the first large city, thousands upon thousands of fiercely painted warriors wearing leather shields rushed upon the little band of Spaniards. For two days the fighting went on, but not a single Spaniard was killed. The arrows of the Indians could not pierce iron coats, but the sharp Spanish swords could easily cut leather shields. The simple natives thought they must be fighting against gods instead of men, and gave up the battle.

Difference in Spanish and Indian ways of fighting

Day after day Cortés marched on until a beautiful valley broke upon his view. His men now saw a wonderful sight: cities built over lakes, where canals took the place of streets and where canoes carried people from place to place. It all seemed like a dream. But they hastened forward to the great capital city. It, too, was built over a lake,



HOUSE OF CORTÉS, COYOACAN, MEXICO
Over the main doorway are graven the arms of the Conqueror, who lived here while the building of Coyoacan, which is older than the City of Mexico, went on

larger than any seen before, and it could be reached only along three great roads of solid mason work.

A great Indian City

GUATEMOTZIN
The nephew of Montezuma and the last Indian emperor of Mexico. After the statue by Don Francisco Jimenes

These roads ran to the center of the city where stood, in a great square, a wonderful temple. The top of this temple could be reached by one hundred fourteen stone steps running around the outside. The city contained sixty thousand people, and there were many stone buildings, on the flat roofs of which the natives had beautiful flower gardens.

Cortés makes Montezuma a prisoner

Montezuma, the Indian ruler, received Cortés and his men very politely and gave the officers a house near the great temple. But Cortés was in danger. What if the Indians should rise against him? To guard against this danger, Cortés compelled Montezuma to live in the Spanish quarters. The people did not like to see their beloved ruler a prisoner in his own city.

The Spaniards driven out of the city

But no outbreak came until the Spaniards, fearing an attack, fell upon the Indians, who were holding a religious festival, and killed hundreds of them. The Indian council immediately chose Montezuma's brother to be their ruler and the whole city rose in great fury to drive out the now hated Spaniards. The streets and even the housetops were filled with angry warriors. Cortés

AN INDIAN CORN BIN, TLAXCALA
These are community or public bins, stand in the open roadway, and are still fashioned as in the days of Cortés

compelled Montezuma to stand upon the roof of the Spanish fort and command his people to stop fighting.

But he was ruler no longer. He was struck down by his own warriors, and died in a few days, a broken-hearted man. After several days of hard fighting, Cortés and his men tried to get out of the city, but the Indians fell on the little army and killed more than half of the Spanish soldiers before they could get away.

HERNANDO CORTÉS

From the portrait painted by Charles Wilson Peale, now in Independence Hall, Philadelphia

14. Cortés Conquers Mexico. Because of jealousy a Spanish army was sent to bring Cortés back to Cuba. By capturing this army Cortés secured more soldiers. Once more he marched against the city. What could bows and arrows and spears and stones do against the terrible horsemen and their great swords, or against the Spanish foot soldiers with their muskets and cannon? At length the great Indian city was almost destroyed, but thousands of its brave defenders were killed before the fighting ceased (1521). From this time on, the country gradually filled with Spanish settlers.

The great Indian city almost destroyed

15. Cortés Visits Spain. After several years, Cortés longed to see his native land once more. He set sail, and reached the little port of Palos from which, many

years before, the great Columbus had sailed in search of the rich cities of the Far East. Here, now, was the

CORTÉS BEFORE MONTEZUMA

After the original painting by the Mexican artist, J. Ortega, now in the National Gallery of San Carlos, Mexico

very man who had found the splendid cities and had returned to tell the wonderful story to his king and countrymen. All along the journey to the king the people now crowded to see Cortés as they had once crowded to see Columbus.

Cortés shares Columbus' fate

Cortés afterwards returned to Mexico, where he spent a large part of his fortune in trying to improve the country. The Spanish king permitted great wrong to be done to Cortés and, like Columbus the discoverer, Cortés the conqueror died neglected by the king whom he had made so rich. For three hundred years the mines of Mexico poured a constant stream of gold and silver into the lap of Spain.

PIZARRO, WHO FOUND THE RICHEST CITY IN THE WORLD

16. Pizarro's Voyages. Another Spaniard, Francisco Pizarro, dreamed of finding riches greater than De Leon or Cortés had ever heard of. He set out for Peru with an army of two hundred men. Reaching the coast, he started inland and in a few days came to the foot of the Andes. They crossed the mountains and, marching down the eastern side, the Spaniards came upon the Inca, the native ruler, and his army. By trickery they made the Inca a prisoner, put him to death, and then subdued the army. The Spaniards then marched on to Cuzco, the capital of Peru, where they found enormous quantities of gold and silver. Never before in the history of the world had so many riches been found. This great wealth was divided among the Spaniards according to rank. But the greedy Spaniards fell to

ROUTES OF THE CONQUERORS, CORTÉS AND PIZARRO

Their conquests of Mexico and of Peru brought untold stores of riches to Spain

Pizarro finds great riches in Peru

quarreling and fighting among themselves, and Pizarro fell by the hand of one of his own men.

CORONADO, WHO PENETRATED SOUTHWESTERN UNITED STATES BUT FOUND NOTHING BUT BEAUTIFUL SCENERY

17. Coronado's Search for Rich Cities. Stories of rich cities to the north of Mexico led Francisco Coronado with a thousand men into the rocky regions now known as New Mexico and Arizona. They looked with wonder at the Grand Cañon of the Colorado, but they found no wealthy cities or temples ornamented with gold and silver.

They pushed farther north into what is now Kansas and Nebraska, into the great western prairies with their vast seas of waving grass and herds of countless buffalo. "Crooked-back oxen" the Spaniards named the buffalo.

Coronado finds no gold or silver

But Coronado was after gold and silver, and cared nothing for beautiful and interesting scenes. Disappointed, he turned southward and in 1542, after three years of wandering, reached home in Mexico. He reported to the King of Spain that the region he had explored was too poor a place for him to plant colonies.

DE SOTO, THE DISCOVERER OF THE MISSISSIPPI

18. The Expedition to Florida. While Coronado and his men were searching in vain for hidden cities with golden temples, another band of men was wandering through the forests farther to the eastward. Hernando de Soto had been one of Pizarro's bravest soldiers. The news that this bold adventurer was to lead an expedition to Florida stirred all Spain. Many nobles sold their lands to fit out their sons to fight under so great a leader.

The Spanish settlers of Cuba gave a joyful welcome

to De Soto and to the brave men from the home-land. After many festivals and solemn religious ceremonies, nine vessels, carrying many soldiers, twelve priests, six hundred horses, and a herd of swine, sailed for Florida (1539).

The settlers of Cuba welcome De Soto

HERNANDO DE SOTO

After an engraving to be found in the works of the great Spanish historian, Herrera

What a grand sight to the Indians as the men and horses clad in steel armor landed! There were richly colored banners, beautiful crucifixes, and many things never before seen by the Indians. But this was by far the most cruel expedition yet planned.

Wherever the Spaniards marched Indians were seized as slaves and made to carry the baggage and do the hard work. If the Indian guides were false, they were burned at the stake or were torn to pieces by bloodhounds. Hence the Indians feared the Spaniards, and Indian guides often misled the Spanish soldiers on purpose to save the guides' own tribes from harm.

The Spaniards' cruelty to the Indians

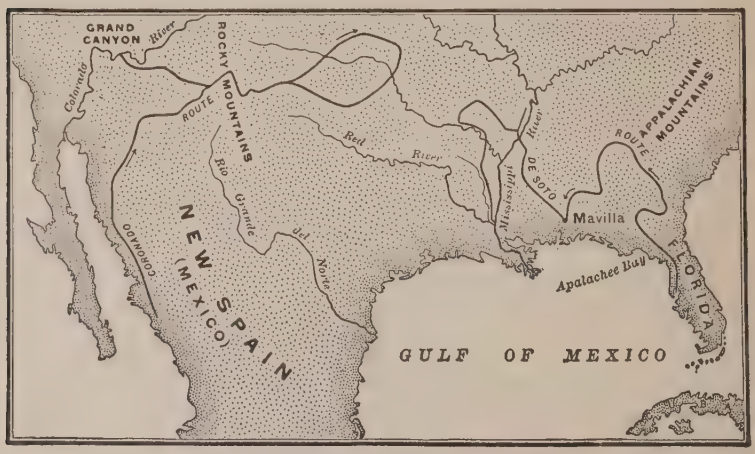
De Soto fought his way through forests and swamps to the head of Apalachee Bay, where he spent the winter. In the spring a guide led the army into what is now Georgia, in search of a country supposed to be rich in gold and ruled by a woman. The soldiers suffered and grumbled, but De Soto only turned the march farther northward.

The Appalachian Mountains caused them to turn

Attacked by Indians

south again until they reached the village of Mavilla (Mobile), where the Indians rushed on them in great numbers and tried to crush the army. But Spanish swords and Spanish guns won the day against Indian arrows and Indian clubs. De Soto lost a number of men, at least a dozen horses, and the baggage of his entire army, yet he boldly refused to send to the coast for the men and supplies waiting for him there.

19. The Discovery of the Mississippi. Again De Soto's men followed him northward, this time into what we know as northern Mississippi, where the adventuring army spent the second winter in a deserted Indian village. In the spring, in 1541, De Soto demanded two hundred Indians to carry baggage, but the chief and his men one night stole into camp, set fire to their own rude houses, gave the war whoop, frightened many horses into running away, and killed a number of the Spaniards.



THE ROUTES OF CORONADO AND DE SOTO

Following these pathways, the soldier-explorers discovered the Grand Cañon of the Colorado and the great Mississippi River

The army then marched westward for many days, wading swamps and wandering through forests so dense that at times they could not see the sun. At last, a river was reached greater than any the Spaniards had ever seen. It was the Mississippi, more than a mile wide, rushing on at full flood toward the Gulf.

They reached a great river

DE SOTO DISCOVERS THE MIGHTY MISSISSIPPI

On barges made by their own hands, De Soto and his men crossed to the west bank of the broad stream. There they marched northward, probably as far as the region now known as Missouri, and then westward two hundred miles. Nothing but hardships met them on every hand. In the spring of 1542, the little army came upon the Mississippi again.

De Soto was tiring out. He grew sad and asked the Indians how far it was to the sea. But it was too far for the bold leader. A fever seized him, and after a few days he died. At dead of night his companions buried him in the bosom of the great river he had discovered.

Burial of De Soto

20. Only Half the Army Returns to Cuba. There were bold leaders still left in the army. They turned westward again, but after finding neither gold nor silver, they returned to the Mississippi and spent the winter on its banks. There they built boats, and then floated down to the Gulf. Only one half of the army returned

to tell the sad tales of hardships, battles, and poverty.

What Coronado and De Soto proved to the King of Spain

Thus it came about that Coronado and De Soto proved that northward from Mexico there were no rich cities, such as Columbus had dreamed about, and such as Cortés and Pizarro had really found. Hence it was that the King of Spain and his brave adventurers took less interest in that part of North America which is now the United States, and more in Mexico and in South America.

MAGELLAN, WHO PROVED THAT THE WORLD IS ROUND

21. Magellan's Task. Columbus died believing that he had discovered a part of India. But he had not proved that the earth is round by sailing around it. This great task was left for Ferdinand Magellan, a Portuguese sailor. Columbus' great voyage had stirred up the Portuguese. One of their boldest sailors, Vasco da Gama, had reached India in 1498 by rounding Africa, and Magellan had made voyages for seven years among the islands of the East.

FERDINAND MAGELLAN

From the portrait designed and engraved by Ferdinand Selma in 1788

Magellan, too, goes to Spain

After returning to Portugal, Magellan sought the king's aid, but without success; then, like Columbus, he went to Spain, and in less than two years his fleet of five vessels sailed for the coast of South America (1519).

Severe storms tossed the vessels about for nearly a month. Food and water grew scarce. The sailors threatened to kill Magellan, but the brave captain, like Columbus, kept boldly on until he reached cold and stormy Patagonia.

MAGELLAN'S FIRST VIEW OF THE PACIFIC OCEAN

Beyond the stormy strait he found the waters of the ocean smooth and quiet; hence its name Pacific, meaning peaceful

It was Easter time, and the long, hard winter was already setting in. Finding a safe harbor and plenty of fish, Magellan decided to winter there. But the captains of three ships refused to obey, and decided to kill Magellan and lead the fleet back to Spain. Magellan was too quick for them. He captured one of the ships, turned the cannon on the others, and soon forced them to surrender.

His sailors rebel

There were no more outbreaks that winter. One of the ships was wrecked. How glad the sailors were when, late in August, they saw the first signs of spring! But they were not so happy when Magellan commanded the ships to sail still farther south in search of a passage to the westward.

In October, his little fleet entered a wide, deep channel and found rugged, snow-clad mountains rising high on both sides of them. Many of the sailors believed they

had at last found the westward passage, and that it was now time to turn homeward.

Magellan's bold resolution

But Magellan declared that he would "eat the leather off the ship's yards" rather than turn back. The sailors on one ship seized and bound the captain and sailed back to Spain. Magellan with but three ships sailed bravely on until a broad, quiet ocean broke upon his sight. He wept for joy, for he believed that now the western route to India had indeed been found. This new ocean, so calm, so smooth and peaceful, he named the Pacific, and all the world now calls the channel he discovered the Strait of Magellan.

The first voyage across the Pacific begins

No man had yet sailed across the Pacific, and no man knew the distance. Magellan was as bold a sailor as ever sailed the main, and he had brave men with him. In November (1520) the three little ships boldly turned their prows toward India. On and on they sailed. Many of the crew, as they looked out upon a little island, saw land for the last time. Many thousand miles had yet to be sailed before land would again be seen. After long weeks their food supply gave out and starvation stared them in the face. Many grew sick and died. The others had to eat leather taken from the ship's yards like so many hungry beasts.

How big the world seemed to these poor, starving sailors! But the captain never lost courage. Finally they beheld land. It was the group of islands now known as the Marianas (Ladrones). Here the sailors rested and feasted to their hearts' content.

Visits the Philippines

Then Magellan pressed on to another group of islands which were afterwards called the Philippines, from King Philip of Spain.

Here in a battle with the inhabitants, while bravely defending his sailors, Magellan was killed. Their great

Magellan loses his life for his men

MAGELLAN'S ROUTE AROUND THE WORLD

Magellan, the bold Portuguese sailor, discovered the strait that bears his name and planned the first successful trip made around the world

commander was gone and they were still far from Spain. Sadly his sailors continued the voyage, but only one of the vessels, with about twenty men, ever reached home to tell the story of that wonderful first voyage around the world.

Thus Magellan proved that Columbus was right in thinking the world round and that India could be reached by sailing west, while other men like Cortés and Pizarro found rich cities like those Columbus had dreamed of finding.

What the voyage proved

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Columbus was born near the shores of the Mediterranean and trained for the sea by study and by experience. *2.* The people of Europe traded with the Far East, but the Turks destroyed their trade routes. *3.* Columbus was drawn to Portugal because of Prince Henry's great work. *4.* Columbus thought he could reach the rich cities of the East by sailing west. *5.* After many discouragements he won aid from Isabella and discovered the Bahama Islands, Cuba, and Haiti. *6.* The king and queen of Spain received Columbus with great ceremony. *7.* Columbus made three more voyages, but was disappointed in not finding the rich

cities of India. *8.* Ponce de Leon sailed from Porto Rico to find a land of which strange stories had been told of riches and of a fountain of eternal youth. *9.* He reached Florida on Easter Sunday, 1513. *10.* Eight years later he returned to found a settlement. *11.* He was attacked by the Indians, wounded, and forced to return to Porto Rico, where he died of his wounds. *12.* His is the distinction of being the first white man to plant a settlement in the United States after the discovery of America by Columbus. *13.* Cortés marched against a rich city, afterward called Mexico, captured the ruler, and fought great battles with the people. *14.* Cortés captured the city and ruled it for several years. *15.* From this time on Mexico gradually filled with Spanish settlers. *16.* Pizarro invaded Peru, the richest of all countries, and captured and put to death the ruler. *17.* Pizarro was killed by his own men. *18.* Coronado marched north from Mexico into Arizona and New Mexico, but found no rich cities. *19.* He wandered into the great prairies and the rocky country of Colorado but finally turned back in disappointment. *20.* De Soto wandered over the country east of the Rocky Mountains in search of rich cities, but found a great river, the Mississippi, and later was buried in its waters. *21.* Hence the Spaniards, eager for gold, went to Mexico and South America rather than farther to the north. *22.* Columbus thought the world was round, but Magellan proved it. *23.* Magellan sailed around South America into the Pacific Ocean, and across this new sea to the Philippine Islands, where he was killed. *24.* His ship reached Spain—the first to sail around the world.

Study Questions. *1.* Make a list of articles which the caravans (camels and horses) of the East brought to the Black Sea. *2.* What studies fitted Columbus for the sea? *3.* Why were there so many sailors in Lisbon? *4.* How did Columbus get his idea of the earth's shape? *5.* What did men in Portugal and Spain think of this idea? *6.* Tell the story of Columbus in Spain. *7.* What is the meaning of the vow taken by him? *8.* Make a picture in your mind of the first voyage of Columbus. Read the poem "Columbus," by Joaquin Miller. *9.* Shut your eyes and imagine you see Columbus land and take possession of the country. *10.* Why was Columbus so disappointed? *11.* How did the people of Palos act when Columbus returned? *12.* Picture the reception of Columbus

by the people, and by the king and queen. *13.* Why was Columbus disappointed in the second expedition? *14.* What did Columbus believe he had accomplished? *15.* What had he failed to do that he hoped to do? *16.* Why did Ponce de Leon go in search of the new land? *17.* What was the strange tradition about the country? *18.* What did Ponce de Leon set out to do on his second trip? *19.* Did he succeed? *20.* What is his distinction? *21.* Why did Cortés sink his ships? *22.* How were Spaniards armed and how were Indians armed? *23.* Describe the city of Mexico. *24.* Who began the war, and what does that show about the Spaniards? *25.* How did Cortés get more soldiers? *26.* How did the people and king receive Cortés in Spain? *27.* How was he treated on his return to Mexico? *28.* What did Pizarro find in Peru? *29.* How did he treat the Inca? *30.* What was Pizarro's fate? *31.* What was Coronado searching for, and why were the Spaniards disappointed? *32.* What things did the Spaniards see that they never before had seen? *33.* What report did Coronado make? *34.* Why were De Soto's Indian guides false? *35.* Show that De Soto was a brave man. *36.* How far north did the Spaniards go both east and west of the Mississippi? *37.* Tell the story of De Soto's death and burial. *38.* What proof can you give to show that the Spaniards were more cruel than necessary? *39.* What part of the problem of Columbus did Magellan solve? *40.* What was Magellan's preparation? *41.* Where is Patagonia, and how could there be signs of spring late in August? *42.* What did Magellan's voyage prove, and what remained of Columbus' plans yet to be accomplished? *43.* Who accomplished this?

Suggested Readings. COLUMBUS: Hart, *Colonial Children*, 4–6; Pratt, *Exploration and Discovery*, 17–32; Wright, *Children's Stories in American History*, 38–60; Higginson, *American Explorers*, 19–52; Glascock, *Stories of Columbia*, 10–35; McMurry, *Pioneers on Land and Sea*, 122–160; Brooks, *The True Story of Christopher Columbus*, 1–103, 112–172.

PONCE DE LEON: Pratt, *Explorations and Discoveries*, 17–23.

CORTÉS: McMurry, *Pioneers on Land and Sea*, 186–225; Hale, *Stories of Adventure*, 101–126; Ober, *Hernando Cortés*, 24–80, 82–291.

PIZARRO: Hart, *Colonial Children*, 12–16; Towle, *Pizarro*, 27–327.

CORONADO: Griffis, *Romance of Discovery*, 168–182; Hale, *Stories of Adventure*, 136–140.

DE SOTO: Hart, *Colonial Children*, 16–19; Higginson, *American Explorers*, 121–140.

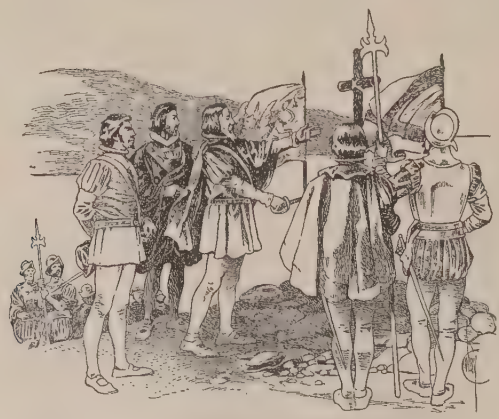
MAGELLAN: McMurry, *Pioneers on Land and Sea*, 186–225; Butterworth, *Story of Magellan*, 52–143; Ober, *Ferdinand Magellan*, 108–244.

THE MEN WHO MADE AMERICA KNOWN TO ENGLAND AND WHO CHECKED THE PROGRESS OF SPAIN

JOHN CABOT ALSO SEARCHES FOR A SHORTER ROUTE TO INDIA AND FINDS THE MAINLAND OF NORTH AMERICA

22. Cabot's Voyages. When the news of Columbus' great discovery reached England, the king was sorry, no doubt, that he had not helped him. The story is that Columbus had gone to Henry VII, King of England, for aid to make his voyage. But England had a brave sailor of her own, John Cabot, an Italian, born in Columbus' own town of Genoa, who also had learned his lessons in voyages on the Mediterranean. Cabot had gone to live in the old town of Venice. Afterward he made

The effect in England of Columbus' discovery

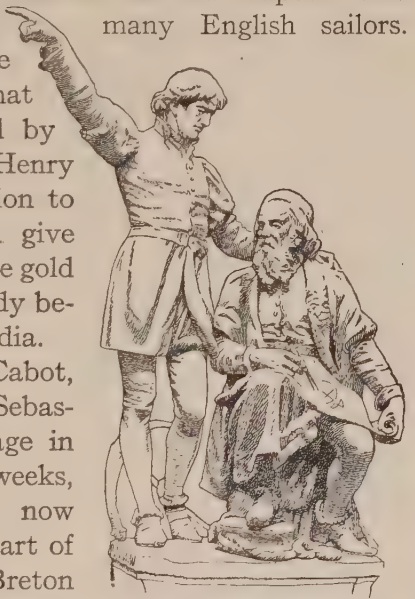


CABOT TAKING POSSESSION OF NORTH AMERICA FOR THE KING OF ENGLAND

On the spot where he landed Cabot planted a large cross and beside it flags of England and of St. Mark

England his home and lived in the old seaport town of Bristol, the home of many English sailors.

He, too, believed the world to be round, and that India could be reached by sailing westward. King Henry VII gave Cabot permission to try, providing he would give the king one fifth of all the gold and silver which everybody believed he would find in India.



JOHN CABOT AND HIS SON SEBASTIAN
From the statue modeled by John Cassidy, Manchester, England

What John Cabot discovered

Accordingly, John Cabot, and it may be his son, Sebastian, set out on a voyage in May, 1497. After many weeks, Cabot discovered land, now supposed to be either a part of Labrador or of Cape Breton Island. He landed and planted the flag of England, and by its side set up that of Venice, which had been his early home.

Later, he probably saw parts of Newfoundland, but nowhere did he see a single inhabitant. He did, however, find signs that the country was inhabited, but he found no proof of rich cities or of gold and silver. In the seas all around Cabot saw such vast swarms of fish that he told the people of England they would not need to go any more to cold and snowy Iceland to catch fish.

How John Cabot was treated by the king and people of England when he came back is seen in an old letter written from England by a citizen of Venice to his friends at home. "The king has promised that in the spring

our countryman shall have ten ships, armed to his order. The king has also given him money wherewith to amuse himself till then, and he is now at Bristol with his wife, who is also a Venetian, and with his sons. His name is John Cabot, and he is called the great admiral. Vast honor is paid to him; he dresses in silk, and the English run after him like mad people, so that he can enlist as many

The king and people pay honor to Cabot

THE FINDING OF AMERICA

The first voyages of Columbus, the discoverer of the New World, and of Cabot, the first man to reach the mainland of North America

of them as he pleases, and a number of our own rogues besides. The discoverer of these places planted on his new-found land a large cross, with one flag of England and another of St. Mark, by reason of his being a Venetian."

Cabot's second voyage

Again, in May, 1498, John Cabot started for India by sailing toward the northwest. This time the fleet was larger, and filled with eager English sailors. But Cabot could not find a way to India, so he altered his

course and coasted southward as far as the region now called North Carolina.

Now because of these two voyages of Cabot, England later claimed a large part of North America, for he had really seen the mainland of America before Columbus. Spain also claimed the same region, but we have seen how Mexico and Peru drew Spaniards to those countries.

If England had been quick to act and had made settlements where Cabot explored, she would have had little trouble in getting a hold in North America. But she did not do so. Henry VII was old and stingy. Cabot had twice failed to find India with its treasures of gold and silver, so little attention was given to the new lands.

Why England was slow in settling America

SIR FRANCIS DRAKE, THE ENGLISH "DRAGON," WHO SAILED THE SPANISH MAIN AND WHO "SINGED THE KING OF SPAIN'S BEARD"

23. The Quarrel between Spain and England. After John Cabot failed to find a new way to India, King Henry did nothing more to help English discovery. His son, Henry VIII, got into a great quarrel with the King of Spain. He was too busy with this quarrel to think much about America. But during this very time, Cortés and Pizarro were doing their wonderful deeds. Spain grew bold, seized English seamen, threw them into dungeons, and even burned them at the stake. Englishmen robbed Spanish ships and killed Spanish sailors in revenge.

24. Sir Francis Drake. A most daring English seaman was Sir Francis Drake. From boyhood days he had been a sailor. His cousin, Captain Hawkins, gave him command of a ship against Mexico, but the Spaniards fell upon it, killed many of the sailors, and took all they had. Drake came back ruined, and eager to take revenge.

Their sailors take up the quarrel

Why Drake hated the Spaniards

Besides, he hated the Spaniards because he thought they were plotting to kill Elizabeth, the Queen of England.

In 1573 Drake returned to England with his ship loaded with gold and precious stones, captured from the Spaniards on the Isthmus of Panama.

25. Drake's Voyage around the World. After four years Drake, with four small but fast vessels, sailed direct for the Strait of Magellan. He was determined to sail the Pacific, which he had seen while on the Isthmus of Panama. In June his fleet entered the harbor of Patagonia where Magellan had spent the winter more than fifty years before.

Begins his most famous voyage

After destroying his smallest vessel, which was leaky, Drake sailed to the entrance of the Strait. Here he changed the name of his ship from the *Pelican* to the *Golden Hind*, with ceremonies fitting the occasion.

SIR FRANCIS DRAKE

From the original portrait attributed to Sir Antonis van Moor, in the possession of Viscount Dillon, at Ditchly Park, England

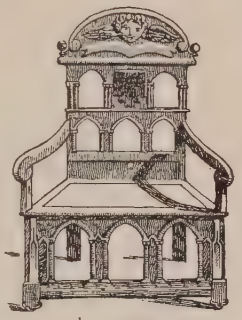
The fleet passed safely through the Strait, but as it sailed out into the Pacific a terrible storm scattered the ships. One went down, and one returned to England, believing that Drake's ship, the *Golden Hind*, had been destroyed.

But Drake had a bold heart, good sailors, and a stout ship. After the storm he sailed north to Valparaiso, where his men saw the first great treasure ship. The Spanish sailors jumped overboard, and

left four hundred pounds of gold to Drake and his men. Week after week Drake sailed northward until he reached Peru, the land conquered by Pizarro.

Capturing treasure ships on the Pacific coast

Another great treasure ship had just sailed for Panama. Away sped the *Golden Hind* in swift pursuit. For a thousand miles, day and night, the chase went on. One evening, just at dark, the little ship rushed upon the great vessel, and captured her. What a rich haul! More than twenty tons of silver bars, thirteen chests of silver coin, one hundredweight of gold, besides a great store of precious stones.



DRAKE'S CHAIR, OXFORD UNIVERSITY
It was made from the timbers of the "Golden Hind"

The little ship continued northward. Hoping for a northeast passage to the Atlantic, Drake sailed along the coast as far as what was afterward known as the Oregon country. But the increasing cold and fog and the strong northwest winds made him turn southward again. Sailing close inshore, he found a small harbor, just north of the great bay of San Francisco. Here his stout little ship came to anchor. The natives believed that Drake and his men were gods, and begged them to remain with them always. Drake named the country New Albion and took possession in the name of the queen, Elizabeth. When he had refitted his ship for the long voyage home, Drake set sail, to the great sorrow of the natives.

The "Golden Hind" winters in California

Week after week went by, until he saw the very islands where Magellan had been. He made his way among the islands and across the Indian Ocean until the Cape of Good Hope was rounded, and the *Golden Hind* spread her sails northward toward England.

Drake crosses the Pacific and Indian oceans

Drake reached home in 1580, the first Englishman to sail around the world. The people, who had given him up as lost, shouted for joy when they heard he was safe. Queen Elizabeth visited his ship in person, and there gave him a title, so that now he was Sir Francis Drake. Years after, a chair was made from the timbers of the famous *Golden Hind* and presented to Oxford University, where it can now be seen.

Drake given a title by Queen Elizabeth

26. Drake Again Goes to Fight the Spaniards. Drake soon took command of a fleet of twenty-five vessels and two thousand five hundred men, all eager to fight the Spaniards (1585). He sailed boldly for the coast of

QUEEN ELIZABETH MAKING DRAKE A NOBLEMAN

After the drawing by Sir John Gilbert. It pictures the scene that took place on board the "Golden Hind" at the close of the great voyage. Queen Elizabeth visited Drake in his ship and conferred knighthood on him for his great services to England

Spain, frightened the people, and then went in search of the Gold Fleet, which was bringing shipload after

He goes to find the Gold Fleet

THE SPANISH ARMADA

More than one hundred twenty-five vessels sailed from Lisbon to conquer England, but only about fifty returned to the home port

shipload of treasure from America to the King of Spain.

No sooner had Drake missed the fleet than he made direct for the West Indies, where he spread terror among the islands. The Spaniards had heard of Drake, the "Dragon." He attacked and destroyed three important towns, and intended to seize Panama itself, but the yellow fever began to cut down his men, so he sailed to Roanoke Island, and carried back to England the starving and homesick colony which Raleigh had planted there.

In the West Indies

The Spanish king was angry. He resolved to crush England. More than one hundred ships, manned by thousands of sailors, were to carry a great army to the hated island. Drake heard about it, and quickly gathered thirty fast ships manned by sailors as bold as himself. His fleet sailed right into the harbor of Cadiz, past cannon and forts, and burned so many Spanish ships that it took Spain another year to get the great fleet

Singeing the King of Spain's beard

ready. Drake declared that he had "singed the King of Spain's beard."

27. The Spanish Armada. The King of Spain was bound to crush England at one mighty blow. In 1588 the Spanish Armada, as the great fleet was called, sailed for England. There were scores of war vessels manned by more than seven thousand sailors, carrying nearly twenty thousand soldiers. Almost every noble family in Spain sent one or more of its sons to fight against England.

Spain aims to crush England, but is badly defeated

When this mighty fleet reached the English Channel, Drake and other sea captains as daring as himself dashed at the Spanish ships, and by the help of a great storm that came up, succeeded in destroying almost the whole fleet. No such blow had ever before fallen upon the great and powerful Spanish nation.

From that time on her power grew less and less, while England's power on the sea grew greater and greater. Englishmen could now go to America without much thought of danger from Spaniards.

SIR WALTER RALEIGH, THE FRIEND OF ELIZABETH, PLANTS A COLONY IN AMERICA TO CHECK THE POWER OF SPAIN

28. Sir Walter Raleigh. Born (1552) near the sea, Raleigh fed his young imagination with stories of the wild doings of English seamen. He went to college at Oxford at the age of fourteen, and made a good name as a student.

Raleigh, student, soldier, seaman

In a few years young Raleigh went to France to take part in the religious wars of that unhappy country. At the time he returned home all England was rejoicing over Drake's first shipload of gold. When Queen Elizabeth sent an army to aid the people of Holland against the Spaniards, young Raleigh was only too glad to go.

On his return from this war he went with his half-brother, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, on two voyages to America, at the very same time Drake was plundering the Spanish treasure ships in the Pacific Ocean. Afterward Raleigh turned soldier again and, as captain, went to Ireland, where Spain had sent soldiers to stir up rebellion. Thus, before he was thirty years old, he had been a seaman and a soldier, and had been in France, Holland, America, and Ireland.

THE BOYHOOD OF RALEIGH
After the painting by Sir John E. Millais

Raleigh when thirty years old

At this time Raleigh was a fine-looking man, about six feet tall, with dark hair and a handsome face. He had plenty of wit and good sense, although he was fond, indeed, of fine clothes. He was just the very one to catch the favor of Queen Elizabeth.

One day Elizabeth and her train of lords and ladies were going down the roadway from the royal castle to the river. The people crowded both sides of the road to see their beloved queen and her beautiful ladies go by. Raleigh pressed his way to the front.

How he won the favor of the queen

As Elizabeth drew near, she hesitated about passing over a muddy place. In a moment the feeling that every true gentleman has in the presence of ladies told Raleigh what to do, and the queen suddenly saw his beautiful red velvet cloak lying in the mud at her feet.

She stepped upon it, nodded to its gallant owner, and passed on. From this time forward Raleigh was a great favorite at the court of Queen Elizabeth.

SIR WALTER RALEIGH
From the original portrait painted by Federigo Zuccaro

Raleigh's plan for checking the power of Spain

29. Trying to Plant English Colonies. In 1584 Raleigh caused a friend to write a letter to the queen, explaining that English colonies planted on the coast of North America would not only check the power of Spain but would also increase the power of England. That very year the queen gave him permission to plant colonies. Thus a better way of opposing Spain was found than by robbing treasure ships and burning towns.

The Indians welcome the English

Raleigh immediately sent a ship to explore. The captain landed on what is now Roanoke Island. The Indians came with a fleet of forty canoes to give them a friendly welcome. After a few days an Indian queen with her maidens came to entertain the English. "We found the people most gentle, loving, and faithful, void of all guile and treason," said Captain Barlow. His glowing account of the land and people so pleased Elizabeth that she named the country Virginia, in honor of her own virgin life.

Why the land was named Virginia

Raleigh next sent out a kinsman, Sir Richard Grenville, with a fleet of seven vessels and one hundred settlers, under Ralph Lane as governor. But the settlers

were bent on finding gold and silver, instead of making friends with the Indians.

An Indian stole a silver cup from the English. Because of this theft Lane and his men fell upon the Indian village, drove out men, women, and children, burned their homes, and destroyed their crops. This was not only cruel but also foolish, for the story of his cruelty spread to other tribes, and after that wherever the English went they were always in danger from the Indians.

Why the Indians became hostile

When Drake came along the next spring with his great fleet, the settlers were only too glad to get back to England, and be once more among friends. They took home from America the turkey and two food plants, the white potato and Indian corn—worth more to the world than all the gold and silver found in the mines of Mexico and Peru!

INDIAN CORN

Indian corn and the white potato taken to England

Although Raleigh had already spent thousands of dollars, he would not give up. He immediately sent out a second colony of one hundred fifty settlers, a number of whom were women. John White was governor. Roanoke was occupied once more, and there, shortly afterwards, was born Virginia Dare, the first white child of English parents in North America. Before a year went by, the governor had to go to England for aid.

Raleigh tries again

But Raleigh and all England had little time to think of America. The Armada was coming, and every English ship and sailor was needed to fight the Spaniards. Two years went by before Governor White reached America with supplies. When he did reach there practically no trace of the colony could be found. Not a settler was left to tell the tale.

A WILD TURKEY

The only trace of Raleigh's "lost colony" was the word "Croatoan" cut in large letters on a post. Croatoan was the name of an island near by. White returned home, but Raleigh sent out an old seaman, Samuel Mace, to search for the lost colony. It was all in vain. Many years later news reached England that a tribe of Indians had a band of white slaves, but the mystery of the lost colony never was cleared up.

The "lost colony"

POTATO PLANT AND TUBERS

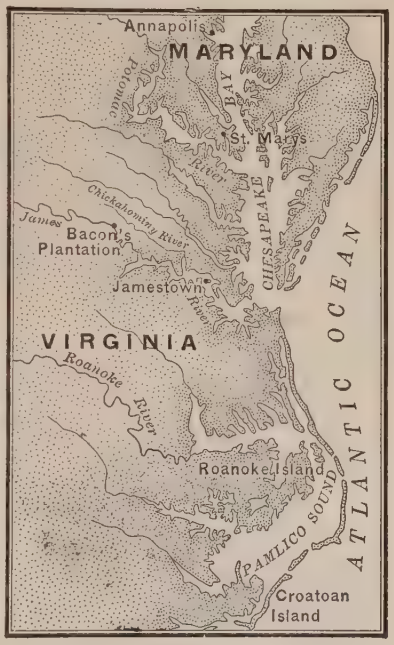
Raleigh's money gives out, but not his hope

Raleigh had now spent his great fortune. But he did not lose heart, for he said that he would live to see Virginia a nation. He was right. Before he died a great colony had been planted in Virginia, and a ship loaded with the products of Virginia had sailed into London port and an Indian "princess" had married a Virginian and had been received with honor by the King and Queen of England.

30. The Death of Raleigh. But the great Elizabeth was dead, and an unfriendly king, James I, was on the throne. He threw Raleigh into prison, and kept him there thirteen years. The Spaniards urged the king to put Raleigh to death. He had been a lifelong enemy of Spain and they knew they were not safe if he lived.

At last Spanish influence was too strong, and Sir Walter faced death on the scaffold as bravely as he had faced the Spaniards in battle.

Thus died a noble man who gave both his fortune and his life for the purpose of planting an English colony in America.



EARLY SETTLEMENTS IN VIRGINIA AND MARYLAND

Raleigh bravely meets death

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* John Cabot, trying for a short route to India, discovered what is supposed to be Labrador, or Cape Breton. *2.* On a second voyage he coasted along eastern North America as far south as the Carolinas. *3.* Later, England claimed all North America. *4.* Francis Drake sailed to the Pacific in the *Pelican* and then turned northward after the Spanish gold ships. *5.* He wintered in California, and then started across the Pacific—the first Englishman to cross. *6.* Drake reached England, and was received with great joy. *7.* Once more Drake went to fight the Spaniards,

until the Great Armada attacked England. *8.* Walter Raleigh, a student, a soldier, and a seaman, won the favor of the queen. *9.* He hated the Spaniards, and planted settlements in what is now North Carolina. *10.* What was Raleigh's prophecy?

Study Questions. *1.* Tell the story of John Cabot before he came to England. *2.* What did Cabot want to find when he sailed away and what did he find? *3.* How was Cabot treated by King Henry VII, according to a "Citizen of Venice," after he returned? *4.* Why was little attention given to the new lands by the English?

5. Prove that Spanish and English sailors did not like each other. *6.* Who was Francis Drake? *7.* What was Magellan after and what was Drake after? *8.* Find out why Drake renamed his ship the *Golden Hind*. *9.* Tell the story of Drake's voyage from Valparaiso to Oregon. *10.* Tell the story of the voyage across the Pacific and how he was received at home. *11.* What did Drake do when he missed the "Gold Fleet"? *12.* What did Drake mean when he said he had "singed the King of Spain's beard"? *13.* What became of the Spanish Armada, and what effects did its failure produce?

14. What other brave man went to America before the Armada was destroyed? *15.* Give the early experiences of Raleigh before he was thirty. *16.* Make a mental picture of the cloak episode. *17.* Explain how kind the Indians were; how did the English repay the Indians? *18.* What did the colonists take home with them? *19.* Who was the first white child of English parents born in America? *20.* How did the destruction of the Armada affect Englishmen who wanted to go to America? *21.* Read in other books about Raleigh's death. *22.* How did the English treatment of the Indians compare with that of the Spaniards?

Suggested Readings. CABOT: Hart, *Colonial Children*, 7–8; Griffis, *Romance of Discovery*, 105–111.

DRAKE: Hart, *Source Book of American History*, 9–11; Hale, *Stories of Discovery*, 86–106; Frothingham, *Sea Fighters*, 3–44.

RALEIGH: Hart, *Colonial Children*, 165–170; Pratt, *Early Colonies*, 33–40; Wright, *Children's Stories in American History*, 254–258; Higginson, *American Explorers*, 177–200; Bolton, *Famous Voyagers*, 154–234.

THE MEN WHO PLANTED NEW FRANCE IN AMERICA, FOUNDED QUEBEC, EXPLORED THE GREAT LAKE REGION, AND PENETRATED THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY

SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN, THE FATHER OF NEW FRANCE

31. The French in North America. France was the slowest of the great nations in the race for North America. Not until 1534 did Jacques Cartier, a French sea captain searching for a shorter route to India, sail into the mouth of the St. Lawrence River. He reached an Indian village where Montreal now stands and took possession of the country for his king. **Cartier, 1534**

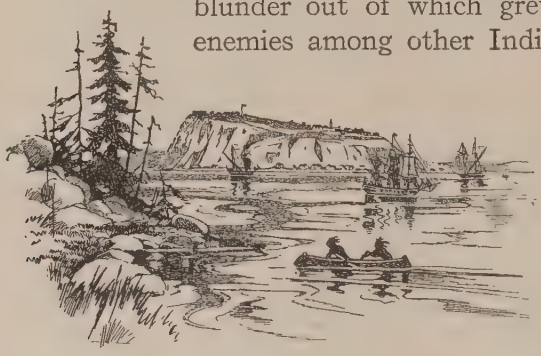
One year after Jamestown was settled, and one year before the *Half Moon* sailed up the Hudson, Samuel de Champlain laid the foundations of Quebec (1608). Champlain was of noble birth, and had been a soldier in the French army. He had already helped found Port Royal in Nova Scotia. **Champlain founded Quebec, 1608**

SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN
From the portrait painting in Independence Hall, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Wherever he went, Champlain made fast friends with the Algonquin Indians, who lived along the St. Lawrence. He gave them presents and bought their skins of beaver and of other animals. In the fur trade he saw a golden stream flowing into the king's

Made friends and foes among the Indians

treasury. Champlain certainly made a good beginning in winning over these Indians, but he also made one great blunder out of which grew many bitter enemies among other Indian tribes.



THE SITE OF QUEBEC

Here, 1608, on a narrow belt of land at the foot of the high bluff, Champlain laid out the city of Quebec

32. Champlain and the Indians. The Algonquins were bitter foes of the Iroquois or Five Nations. One time they begged Champlain and his men, clad in steel and armed with the deadly musket, to join their war party (1609). This he did. They made their way up the St. Lawrence to the mouth of the Richelieu, and up that river to the falls. The Indians then carried the canoes and the baggage around the falls.

An Indian war party

Discovery of Lake Champlain

What must have been Champlain's feelings when they glided out of the narrow river into the lake now bearing his name! A lake no white man had ever seen, and greater than any in his beloved France! On the left he saw the ridges of the Green Mountains, on the right the pine-clad slopes of the Adirondacks, the hunting grounds of the hated Iroquois.

One evening, near where the ruins of Ticonderoga now stand, they saw the war canoes of their enemies. That night the hostile tribes taunted each other and boasted of their bravery. On the shores of the lake the next day they drew up in battle array. The Iroquois chiefs wore

tall plumes on their heads, and their warriors carried shields of wood or hide.

All at once the Algonquins opened their ranks and Champlain, in full armor, walked forth. The Iroquois gazed in wonder on the first European soldier they had ever seen. Champlain leveled his musket and fired. Two chiefs fell. Then another report rang through the woods, and the boldest warriors in North America broke and fled in confusion. The Algonquins, yelling like demons, ran after them, killing and capturing as many as possible.

Why the Iroquois came to hate the French

There was great rejoicing among the victors, and Champlain was their hero. But there must have been great sorrow and vows of revenge among the Iroquois.

The next year Champlain joined another Algonquin war party, and helped win another victory from the Iroquois. Again, in 1615, he joined a party of more than five hundred fiercely painted warriors. They traveled to the shore of Lake Ontario and boldly crossed to the other side in their bark canoes. They hid their boats and then silently marched into the country of the Iroquois.

Champlain and the Algonquins invade the Iroquois country

THE ROUTES FOLLOWED BY CHAMPLAIN

Some miles south of Oneida Lake they came upon a fortified Indian town. For several days Champlain and his Indians tried to break into or burn the fort, but had to give it up. These campaigns made the Iroquois hate the French almost as much as they did the Algonquins.

THE DEFEAT OF THE IROQUOIS AT LAKE CHAMPLAIN
After an engraving of Champlain's published in 1613

Iroquois make St. Lawrence unsafe for French

For this reason Frenchmen found it safer to go west by traveling up the Ottawa River and crossing over to Lake Huron than by paddling up the St. Lawrence and through lakes Ontario and Erie. The result was that the French discovered Lake Michigan and Lake Superior long before they ever saw Lake Erie. On the other hand, we are soon to see how the Dutch made friends with the Iroquois.

A FRENCH FUR TRADER ON SNOWSHOES

Champlain true to king and country

Champlain remained many years in Canada, always working for the good of New France, as the country was called. He helped on the work of the missionaries, made peace between hostile tribes of Indians, and encouraged the fur trade and

the coming of new settlers. Worn out with toil and travel, far away from kindred and native land, Champlain died at Quebec on Christmas Day, 1635.

JOLIET AND MARQUETTE, FUR TRADER AND MISSIONARY, EXPLORE THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY FOR NEW FRANCE

33. French Explorers in the Northwest. Year after year, traders and missionaries, returning to Montreal and Quebec from the west, told strange stories of a great river larger than any the French had yet seen. In May, 1673, Joliet, a fur trader, and Marquette, a missionary, were sent out by Count Frontenac, governor of the French settlements in Canada, to explore this river.

Stories of a new country

With five others they paddled in canoes along the north shore of Lake Michigan, through Green Bay, up the Fox River, and then crossed overland to the beautiful Wisconsin. Quietly and rapidly their boats passed down the Wisconsin until they reached a great valley several miles in width and a great river.

Joliet and Marquette find the Mississippi

Following the current, they passed the mouth of the gently flowing Illinois, then the rushing and muddy Missouri, the slow and clear Ohio, and finally, in July, they reached the mouth of the Arkansas. Convinced that the Mississippi flowed into the Gulf of Mexico, they set out on the return trip of two thousand miles.

Joliet reached Quebec in safety, but Marquette fell ill and remained among the Indians. The next spring while preaching in Illinois near where Ottawa now stands, he fell ill again, and died. The Indians showed their love and respect by bearing his remains by canoe to Mackinac, where he was buried beneath the chapel floor of his own mission house.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Champlain laid the foundations of New France at Quebec, and made a treaty with the Indians on the St. Lawrence. *2.* Joliet and Marquette were sent out from Canada to explore the Mississippi River. *3.* Joliet returned to tell the story of their discoveries and Marquette remained among the Indians in Illinois.

Study Questions. *1.* What part of North America did France first settle? *2.* Who was Champlain? *3.* Tell the story of his first battle with the Iroquois. *4.* What things in New France did Champlain help? *5.* What was Champlain's blunder? *6.* Who were Joliet and Marquette? *7.* Tell the story of Joliet and Marquette. *8.* How did they get back to Canada? Near what place in Illinois did Marquette preach?

Suggested Readings. CHAMPLAIN: Wright, *Children's Stories in American History*, 269–280; McMurry, *Pioneers on Land and Sea*, 1–34.

JOLIET and MARQUETTE: McMurry, *Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley*, 1–15; Thwaites, *Father Marquette*.

WHAT THE DUTCH ACCOMPLISHED IN THE COLONIZATION OF THE NEW WORLD

HENRY HUDSON, WHOSE DISCOVERIES LED DUTCH TRADERS TO COLONIZE NEW NETHERLAND

34. Hudson's Explorations. One year after the men of New France had founded the city of Quebec the Dutch began the colony which became the Empire State. About the time John Smith was working hard for Jamestown, his friend Henry Hudson was sailing for some Dutch merchants in search of a northern sea route to India (1609).

The discovery of the Hudson by the Dutch

One bright fall day Hudson sailed into the mouth of the great river which now bears his name. He hoped that he had entered the arm of the sea which might carry him to India. He turned the prow of his vessel, the *Half Moon*, up stream.

Soon the beauty of the river, the rich colors of the great forests, the steep sides of the palisades, the slopes of the highlands, the strange Indians in their bark canoes, so took the attention of Hudson and his crew that, for a time, they forgot all about a route to India.

What Hudson and his men saw

What a flutter of excitement the *Half Moon* must have caused among the Indians! They came on board to give welcome and presents to Hudson and his men.

HENRY HUDSON
From the painting by Count Pulaski in the Aldermanic Chamber of the City Hall, New York

On the return, probably near the present city of Hudson, an old chief came on board and invited Hudson to visit the little village of wigwams located on the river. There these Dutchmen saw beautiful meadows, fields of corn, and gardens of pumpkins, grapes, and plums.

The chief showed Hudson his palace of bark, and spread a feast of roasted pigeons and other Indian food before him. In spite of such kind treatment, Hudson would not stay over night with the Indians, who even broke their bows and arrows and then threw them into the fire to prove that they meant no harm to the white man, but Hudson and his men were still afraid.

Indians kind but Hudson cruel

Indeed, Hudson had every reason to fear the Indians, for he had treated them badly and his men had even murdered some. In less than a month, Indian friendship had been turned into Indian hatred.

The next year Hudson sailed in an English vessel in

search of the long-wished-for passage. On he went, far to the northward, past Iceland and Greenland, into the great bay which bears his name. In this desolate region, surrounded by fields of ice and snow, Hudson and his men spent a fearful winter.

INDIANS WELCOMING THE "HALF MOON," HUDSON'S SHIP

Fate of Hudson and his men

In the spring his angry sailors threw him and a few faithful friends into a boat and sent them adrift. Nothing more was ever heard of them. In Irving's "Rip Van Winkle" the story tells of nightly scenes in the Catskills in which the ghosts of Hudson and his friends were the actors.

35. Dutch Traders and the Indians. Just as soon as the news of Hudson's first voyage reached Holland, the Dutch merchants claimed all the region explored by Hudson and his men and hastened to open up trade with the Indians. As early as 1614 a trading post was established on Manhattan Island—the beginning of a great city, New York.

A trading post on Manhattan

Other posts were soon located: one up the Hudson became Fort Orange, another on the Delaware was named Fort Nassau, and a fourth was placed where Jersey City now stands. Later the Dutch traders went as far east as the Connecticut Valley.

The Dutchmen treated the Indians kindly and early made a great treaty with the Iroquois, or Five Nations.

The chiefs of many tribes came to Fort Orange dressed for the event. Their bows and arrows and tomahawks were decorated, their garments tasseled and fringed, and on their heads they wore nodding plumes of many sorts, while their faces were hideous with paint. A peace belt of deer skin covered with beads was held at one end by the chiefs and at the other by the Dutch traders. They "smoked the pipe of peace, buried the tomahawk," and made vows of everlasting friendship.

A lasting Indian treaty

The Indians liked the Dutch, who often visited them in their wigwams and sat around their camp fires. The fur trade grew rapidly. The Indians hunted and trapped as never before. They paddled up the Hudson, and crossed over to lakes George and Champlain. They went up the Mohawk far beyond where Schenectady now is, plunged deeper into the unbroken forests, and even climbed the mountains in search of fur-coated animals. The favorite fur-bearing animal was the beaver. Besides, the otter, mink, and weasel were hunted.

The Indians liked the Dutch

The fur trade

THE TREATY BETWEEN THE DUTCH AND THE INDIANS AT FORT ORANGE

When the fur pack was made up the dusky hunters from every direction made their way to the nearest trading post. There they traded their furs for guns, powder, and ball, and for whatever else the white trader had that pleased

Indian fancy. Great Dutch ships came every year to carry to Amsterdam and other Dutch cities rich cargoes of furs.

THE HOME OF A PATROON
The old Van Rensselaer House at Greenbush, New York

36. The Settlement of New Netherland. Already a great company of Amsterdam merchants were sending settlers, as well as fur traders, to the new colony, which now was called New Netherland. Peter Minuit, the first governor, bought the island of Manhattan from the Indians for twenty-four dollars' worth of glass beads and other trinkets, built a town of log cabins on the end of the island, and named it New Amsterdam.

Peter Minuit bought Manhattan Island for twenty-four dollars

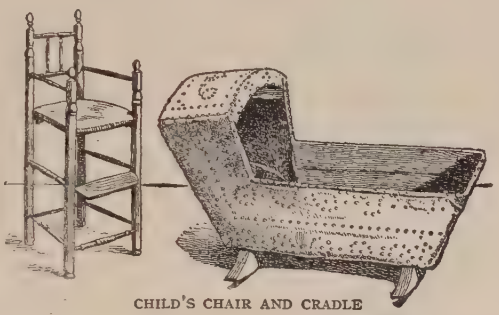
But settlers did not come rapidly enough, so the company offered its members large tracts of land and the title of "patroon" or "patron," on the condition that they plant colonies at their own expense. Each patroon was to govern the people on his own land.

THE SALE OF MANHATTAN TO THE DUTCH
Peter Minuit, who made the trade with the Indians, is known as the founder of New York City

The greatest of the patroons was Van Rensselaer,

whose plantation in the region of Fort Orange included one thousand square miles. The farmers and servants on these plantations looked upon the patroon as being much above them in authority and social position.

The patroons and their way of living



CHILD'S CHAIR AND CRADLE
Furniture used by the patroons

Every year the farmers and their families came with their wagons filled with what they had raised to pay the patroon for the use of the land. He set them a great feast, and there was merrymaking all day long.

The growth of New Netherland attracted bad men as well as good men. Some mean traders robbed and murdered a number of Indians not of the Five Nations. The Indians robbed and murdered in return. War broke out, and before it ended many settlements were broken up, and hundreds of settlers killed.

A wicked Indian war

Parties of Indians roved day and night over Manhattan Island, killing the Dutch even in sight of Fort Amsterdam. The people blamed their governor, Kieft, and threatened to arrest him and send him to Holland. He finally made peace with the Indians just before the new governor arrived.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Henry Hudson, searching for a shorter route to India, discovered the river which now bears his name. *2.* Dutch traders built trading posts throughout the region, made a treaty with the Indians, purchased

Manhattan Island, and built the town of New Amsterdam.

Study Questions. *1.* Tell the story of Henry Hudson and the *Half Moon*. *2.* What was the fate of Hudson? *3.* When was a trading post planted on Manhattan? *4.* Make a mental picture of the treaty with the Indians. *5.* How did the Dutch treatment of the Indians compare with the Spanish? *6.* What three things did Peter Minuit do? *7.* Who were the patroons?

Suggested Readings. HUDSON: Williams, *Stories from Early New York History*, 1–4, 32–36; Wright, *Children's Stories in American History*, 292–299; Griffis, *Romance of Discovery*, 233–245.

FAMOUS PEOPLE IN EARLY VIRGINIA

JOHN SMITH THE SAVIOR OF VIRGINIA, AND POCAHONTAS ITS GOOD ANGEL

37. The First Permanent English Settlement. Raleigh had made it impossible for Englishmen to forget America. They sent out ships every year to trade with the Indians. In 1606 a great company was formed of London merchants and other rich men to plant a colony in Virginia.

Raleigh's wish comes true

King James gave them a charter, ministers preached sermons about Virginia, and poets sang her praises. At Christmas time one of Raleigh's old sea captains, Newport, sailed with a colony of more than one hundred settlers. They

THE SITE OF JAMESTOWN

After a drawing made early in the nineteenth century by an English traveler, Catherine C. Hopley

went by way of the West Indies, and the Spaniards, although watching, did not dare to attack them.

In the spring, when Virginia is in her gayest dress, the ships sailed up Chesapeake Bay into the James River, and landed on a peninsula. Here they began to plant Jamestown, named in honor of their king, the first permanent English settlement in the New World.

Jamestown settled, 1607

JOHN SMITH

From an engraving made by Simon van Pass, in 1614, on the margin of Smith's map of "New England" in "A Description of New England." This shows him at the age of thirty-seven

They first built a fort to protect them from any attacks of Indians and Spaniards. But most of the settlers wanted to get rich quick, go back to England, and spend the rest of their days in ease. Therefore, instead of building comfortable houses and raising something to eat, they spent their time in searching for gold.

Settlers still hunt for gold

The result was that most of them fell sick and food grew scarce. Within a few months more than half of the settlers were dead, and the others were discouraged and homesick. Would this colony fail, too, as Raleigh's colony had?

38. John Smith. There was one man, however, in the colony who could make Jamestown a success. He bore the plain name of John Smith. But he was no common man. John Smith had already had as wonderful adventures as the knights of old.

While yet a young man he went to the land of dikes and windmills to help the brave Hollanders fight against the Spaniards. But he grew tired of seeing Christians

fighting one another, and resolved to go and fight the Turks. On his way he was robbed in France and left half dead in a great forest, but was rescued and made his way to the sea. Then he sailed with a colony of pilgrims going to the Holy Land. After many adventures John Smith found himself in eastern Europe. He was made captain of a troop of cavalry and was soon fighting the Turks. In three hand-to-hand combats, Captain Smith slew his enemies, cut off their heads, and presented them to his commander.

John Smith, a soldier

The Christian army looked on Smith as a hero, and the ruler of the land gave him a shield with three Turks' heads painted on it as a coat of arms. The Turks afterwards captured Smith and made a slave of him. His master's cruelty was so great that Smith slew him, mounted his horse, and rode away to Russia. He finally returned to England in time to talk with Captain Newport about America. Just such a man was needed in founding Jamestown.

Smith wins a queer coat of arms

The king had made Smith an officer of the new colony, but the other officers would not permit him to take part in governing Virginia. John Smith was not a man to sulk and idle his time away, but resolved to do something useful, by visiting the Indians and gathering food for the colony.

Fails to gain his position but works instead of sulking

While on an expedition up the Chickahominy, Smith's party was attacked by two hundred Indians. Smith seized his Indian guide, tied him in front for a shield, and with his gun was able to hold the Indians at bay until he fell into a swamp and had to surrender.

Taken prisoner by the Indians

He immediately showed the red men his ivory pocket compass. They saw the little needle tremble on its pivot,

but could not touch it. He wrote a letter to Jamestown. An Indian took it and returned with the articles asked for in the letter. This was still more mysterious than the compass.

SMITH SHOWING HIS POCKET COMPASS TO THE INDIANS

Smith learns how Indians live

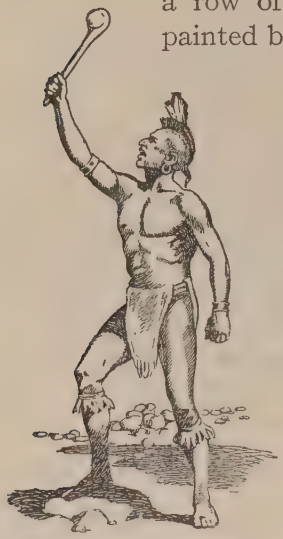
The Indians marched him from one village to another to show off their prisoner. This gave Smith a chance to learn a great deal about the Indians. Some of them lived in houses made of the bark and branches of trees; others had rude huts to shelter them. Now and then a wigwam was seen large enough to hold several families.

The Indian warriors painted their bodies to make themselves look fierce. They carried bows and arrows and clubs as weapons, for they had no guns at that time. The men did the hunting and fighting, but in other things they were lazy. The Indian women not only cared for the children, did the cooking, and made the clothes, but also gathered wood, tilled the soil, and built the wigwams. The Indian wife was the warrior's drudge.

Smith saw a more wonderful sight still, when he was led to the village where lived Powhatan. The old chief had prepared a real surprise for this Englishman. Powhatan, tall, gaunt, and grim, was wrapped in a robe of

raccoon skins. He sat upon a bench before the wigwam fire. His wives sat at his side. Along the walls stood a row of women with faces and shoulders painted bright red, and with chains of white shells about their necks. In front of the women stood Powhatan's fierce warriors. This council of Indians was to decide the fate of Smith.

An Indian council tries Smith



AN INDIAN WARRIOR

Two big stones were rolled in front of Powhatan, and a number of powerful warriors sprang upon Smith, dragged him to the stones, and forced his head upon one of them. As the warriors stood, clubs in hand, ready to slay Smith, Pocahontas, the beautiful twelve-year-old daughter of Powhatan, rushed forward, threw her arms around the prisoner, and begged for his life.

Smith's rescue by Pocahontas

Pocahontas had her way. Powhatan adopted Smith as a son and set him to making toys for the little maid. This was strange work for the man who had fought the Spaniards and slain the Turks, and who was to save a colony. This story is doubted by some people, but is believed by many good historians.

Pocahontas proves a friend in need

After a time Smith returned to Jamestown only to find the settlers facing starvation, and the officers planning to escape to England in the colony's only vessels. He promptly arrested the leaders and restored order. In a few days a band of Indians, led by Pocahontas, entered the fort. They were loaded down with baskets of corn.

The fear of starvation was now gone, because every few days the little maiden came with food for the settlers. Ever afterwards they called her "the dear blessed Pocahontas." She was the good angel of the colony.

When winter came on, Smith resolved to secure another supply of corn. But Powhatan had noticed the increase of settlers and the building of more houses. He feared that his people might be driven from their hunting grounds. Smith knew that Powhatan's women had raised plenty of corn, so immediately sailed up the river to the old chief's village.

Powhatan refuses to give any more corn

Powhatan bluntly told Smith he could have no corn unless he would give a good English sword for each basketful. Smith promptly refused, and compelled the Indians to carry the corn on board his boat. That very night, at the risk of her life, Pocahontas stole through the woods to tell Smith of her father's plot to kill his men. They kept close watch all night, and next morning sailed safely away.

Pocahontas shows her friendship

But Smith needed still more corn, and stopped at another Indian town. Suddenly he found himself and his men surrounded by several hundred Indian warriors. A moment's delay, and all would have been over. Smith rushed into the chief's wigwam, seized him by the scalp-lock, dragged him out before his astonished warriors, pointed a pistol at his breast, and demanded corn. He got it; and the English sailed back to Jamestown with three hundred bushels of corn on board.

When spring came Smith resolved that the settlers must go to work. He called them together and made a speech declaring that "he that will not work shall not eat. You shall not only gather for yourself, but for those that

Smith induces the settlers to go to work

Industry brings contentment

are sick. They shall not starve." The people in the colony not only planted more grain, but repaired the fort and built more and better houses. Thus they grew happier and more contented with their home in the Virginia woods.

Smith returns to England

Unfortunately for the colony, Smith was wounded so badly by an explosion of gunpowder that he had to return to England for medical treatment. The settlers again fell into idleness after he left, and many of them died. Still the colony had gained such a foothold that it was strong enough to live.

Some years later, Smith sailed to America again, explored the coast from Penobscot Bay to Cape Cod, drew a map of it, and named the region New England. This was his last visit to America.

39. Pocahontas. After John Smith left, Pocahontas did not visit the English any more. One time she was seized by an Englishman, put on board a vessel, and carried weeping to Jamestown.

JAMESTOWN BAPTISMAL FONT

From this font, now in Bruton Parish Church, Va., it is said Pocahontas was baptized

Before long an English settler, John Rolfe, fell in love with her and she with him. What should they do? Did not this beautiful maiden of eighteen years have a strange religion? But she was anxious to learn about the white man's religion, so the minister at Jamestown baptized her and gave her the Christian name of Rebecca.

The wedding took place in the little wooden church. No doubt it was made bright with the wild flowers of Virginia and that all the settlers crowded to see

the strange event. Powhatan gave his consent, but would not come to the wedding himself. But we may be sure that the sisters and brothers and the Indian friends of Pocahontas were there.

THE MARRIAGE OF ROLFE AND POCAHONTAS
After the painting by Henry Brueckner

Pocahontas marries John Rolfe

It was a happy day in Jamestown, for all the people, white and red, loved Pocahontas. The marriage of Pocahontas and John Rolfe was taken to mean the uniting of the Indians and settlers by ties of peace and friendship. For several years white men and red men lived as good neighbors. Rolfe took Pocahontas to England, where she was received "as the daughter of a king." The fine people, lords and ladies, called on her; and the king and queen received her at court as if she were a princess of the royal blood.

Settlers and Indians become good friends

How different the rich clothes, the carriages, and the high feasting from her simple life in the woods of Virginia! Here, too, she met her old friend, John Smith. He called her "Lady Rebecca," as did everybody. But the memory of other days and other scenes came before her mind. She covered her face with her hands for a moment, and then said he must call her "child," and that she would call him "father." Smith must have thought of the days when she brought corn to Jamestown to feed his starving people.

Lady Rebecca treated like a princess

Pocahontas dies in England

When about to sail for her native land, Pocahontas became ill and died (1617). Her son, Thomas Rolfe, was educated in England by his father's brother, but later he returned to the land of his mother. He became the ancestor of many noted Virginians; among these the best known was the famous orator and statesman, John Randolph of Roanoke.

POCAHONTAS

After the engraved portrait by Simon van Pass, known as the Bootan Hall portrait and now at Scalthorpe Hall, Norfolk

So ended the life of one who had indeed been a good and true friend of the people of Virginia. Her name, Pocahontas, meant "Bright Stream between Two Hills."

LORD BALTIMORE, IN A PART OF VIRGINIA, FOUNDS MARYLAND AS A HOME FOR PERSECUTED CATHOLICS (1634) AND WELCOMES PROTESTANTS

Religious disputes drove people to America

40. A Colony of Catholics and Protestants. When the people of England began to change their religion, some became Puritans, others members of the English Church, and still others Catholics. Great disputes arose among the religious sects. There was much persecution. To escape this, many English people fled to the New World. The Puritans settled in New England, and

the Cavalier members of the English Church found new homes in Virginia.

George Calvert desired to find a home for his people, the Catholics. He had studied at Oxford University, and had been secretary to one of Queen Elizabeth's great statesmen. When James I became king, he made Calvert Baron of Baltimore.

Charles I gives Baltimore a part of Virginia

His successor, Charles I, was also Baltimore's friend, and when the latter asked the king for permission to found a colony of Catholics in America, Charles gave him the whole of what is now Maryland. He also declared that the colony should bear the name of Maryland in honor of his queen, Henrietta Maria.

Lord Baltimore immediately began to gather a colony of emigrants. He welcomed Protestants as well as Catholics, for it was decided that in the colony of Maryland all Christians were to have the same rights. Very few nations in the world at that time permitted people to worship as they pleased.

All permitted to worship as they pleased

Lord Baltimore died before the expedition was ready, and according to the custom of England, Cecil Calvert, his eldest son, fell heir to his estate and titles. The new Lord Baltimore sent more than three hundred persons in two ships, the *Ark* and the *Dove*. The long voyage had a happy ending; the immigrants reached the mouth of the Potomac in the springtime, when Maryland is at the height of its beauty (1634).

The Indians are friendly

Governor Calvert, in the *Dove*, sailed up the Potomac. He decided to locate his little village, which was to be called St. Mary's, on land occupied by the Indians. He paid for the land on which the wigwams and cornfields stood, and the Indians invited the settlers to live with

them until their log cabins could be built. This good feeling lasted a long time, and these settlers escaped the savage wars from which many of the colonists suffered in the early days.

Annapolis founded

Many Puritans came into Maryland and settled a town afterwards named Annapolis. A number of interesting events took place there in the early days. Later the city became the home of the famous training school for

GOVERNOR CALVERT LOCATING THE VILLAGE OF ST. MARY'S

the American navy, the United States Naval Academy.

Once Baltimore's authority was taken away because there were some disputes with a Virginian high in authority. The Puritans joined him and overthrew Baltimore's rule. Later, however, his authority was restored and religious freedom reëstablished.

Baltimore settled

Baltimore, named after the founder of the colony, and afterward the most important town of Maryland, was settled in 1720.

INDUSTRIES, MANNERS, AND CUSTOMS OF FIRST SETTLERS OF VIRGINIA

41. How the Virginia Colonists Lived. After the first hardships the colony grew and prospered. Ships continued to bring settlers from England and other countries of Europe. In a few years the little settlement at Jamestown was surrounded on all sides by newly cleared farms.

The Jamestown colony prospers

To any one living to-day the old colony would seem strange indeed. There were practically no towns; almost every one lived on a large farm, called a plantation. On these plantations were great fields of tobacco, whose broad leaves in summer almost concealed the ground. Here and there a field of corn could be seen, but little else was grown. After a time the owners, or planters, built themselves great houses and kept an army of servants to grow the crops and do the work about the house. The planters did no work with their hands, but looked after their estates and enjoyed such pleasures as hunting and horseback riding. Many of these old places were the scenes of brilliant dinners and balls at which the fine ladies and gentlemen of the colony gathered.

The planters grow rich

Many poor people in England wanted to come to America, but had no money. To pay for the cost of bringing them over, these people were forced to work for the planters, often for six years or more. During this time they were almost slaves, but at the end of their service they became free. Then negroes were brought from Africa, and soon most of the work was done by black slaves.

Negro slaves are brought to Virginia

Tobacco supported the colony and made the planters wealthy. It bought the food, clothes, and luxuries, and paid the taxes. It was even used as money, and people reckoned the value of an article in pounds of tobacco,

as we do in dollars and cents. Most of the crop was shipped to England. The plantations lay along creeks or rivers up which boats could sail from the sea. When the tobacco was cured, it was packed in hogsheads, which were then rolled on board ship.

A famous robber and trader

42. Blackbeard the Pirate. The streams on which the planters shipped their goods also served as hiding places for pirates. When these sea robbers had plundered a ship on the open sea, they would hide away in a bend of one of the wooded streams. Most famous of these lawless men was Blackbeard. For years his very name was a terror to sailors along the coast. He plundered scores of merchant ships before he was run down and captured.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* London merchants carried out Raleigh's idea by planting a colony in Virginia. *2.* John Smith saved the colony by putting the settlers to work, by trading with the Indians, and by winning the friendship of Pocahontas. *3.* Lord Baltimore, a Catholic, got permission to plant a colony in Virginia; he named it Maryland, and the first settlement, St. Mary's. *4.* Protestants as well as Catholics were welcomed in the new colony. *5.* Negroes were brought to Virginia as slaves.

Study Questions. *1.* How long did it take Captain Newport to reach Virginia? *2.* How long does it take a ship to cross the Atlantic now? *3.* Why were the settlers afraid of the Indians and Spaniards? *4.* Why did the Virginia settlers hunt for gold instead of raising something to eat? *5.* What did Smith learn about the Indians? *6.* Show how Pocahontas was a friend of the colony. *7.* Tell the story of George Calvert, Lord Baltimore. *8.* How was the colony different from that at Jamestown? *9.* Picture the settlers at St. Mary's. *10.* What town did the Puritans establish? *11.* When was the richest and most important town in Maryland settled, and after whom was

it named? 12. Why were slaves brought to Virginia? 13. Tell the story of Blackbeard.

Suggested Readings. SMITH: McMurry, *Pioneers on Land and Sea*, 68–102; Hart, *Source Book*, 33–37; Higginson, *American Explorers*, 231–246.

BALTIMORE: Pratt, *Early Colonies*, 132–137; Smith and Dutton, *The Colonies*, 39–50; Sparks, *American Biography*, 5–229.

PILGRIMS AND PURITANS IN NEW ENGLAND

MILES STANDISH, THE PILGRIM SOLDIER, AND THE STORY OF "PLYMOUTH ROCK"

43. The Pilgrims. Persecuted for their religion in England, the Pilgrims first went to Holland. There they wandered from place to place, finally settling in the city of Leiden. But they saw that they could not keep their own language and customs among the Dutch, so they decided to go to America and found a colony of their own. John Carver, William Bradford, William Brewster, and Edward Winslow were the leaders of the little band that had chosen to go on the long and dangerous journey. The parting was sad. Eyes were wet with weeping and voices were choked with sorrow as the last words were spoken before going on board the *Speedwell*. Even the Dutch bystanders were moved to tears. Listen to the words of Bradford: "So they left that goodly and pleasant city which had been their resting place nearly twelve years; but they knew they were Pilgrims, and looked not much on those things, but lifted up their eyes to the heavens, their dearest country, and quieted their spirits."

They board the "Speedwell"

The Pilgrims' dearest country

The *Speedwell* carried them across to England, where they found the *Mayflower*.

The "Mayflower" carried the Pilgrims to America

In August, 1620, the two ships spread their sails for America. Twice they were forced to return—once after they had sailed three hundred miles—because the *Speedwell* was leaking, and her captain declared she would sink before reaching America.

Finally the *Mayflower*, with one hundred two Pilgrims on board, started alone. Not many days passed before great storms overtook her. The waves rolled over her deck and threatened to swallow her. For many days the passengers had to spend nearly all the time below deck, not knowing what moment would be their last. Strained by the storm, the *Mayflower* also began to leak, but the stout-hearted Pilgrims would not turn back.

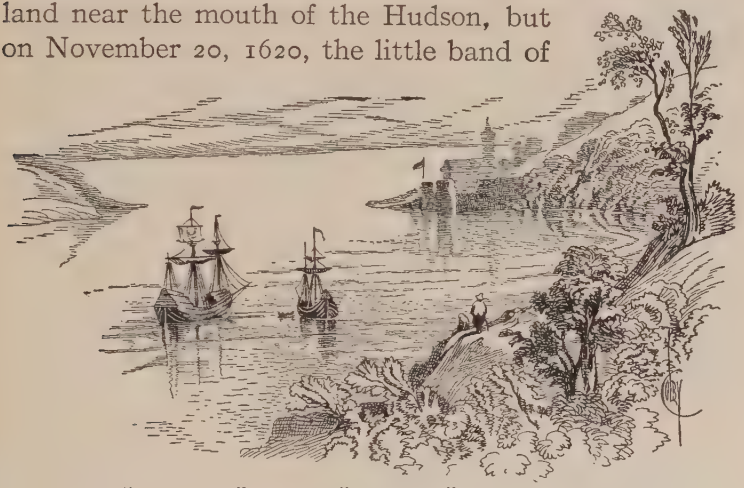
Storms did not drive them back

44. Landing of the Pilgrims in America. For days at a time, during the storm, the ship

EMBARKATION OF THE PILGRIM FATHERS
After the original painting by Charles West Cope

could not use her sails and was driven far out of her course, to the northward. The Pilgrims had intended to land near the mouth of the Hudson, but on November 20, 1620, the little band of

How they missed the Hudson



THE "MAYFLOWER" AND THE "SPEEDWELL" IN DARTMOUTH HARBOR
It was to this harbor the Pilgrims returned to repair the leak in the "Speedwell"

exiles found themselves looking with glad hearts upon the sandy but heavily-wooded shores of Cape Cod. How they poured out their hearts in gratitude that they had crossed the stormy sea in safety! The men all gathered in the little cabin of the *Mayflower* to sign a compact or an agreement in regard to the government of the colony. Then they elected John Carver their first governor.

Signing the compact

Everybody was now anxious to get on shore. Captain Miles Standish, with an exploring party of sixteen men, each armed with a sword and a musket and equipped with a corselet, waded ashore through the ice-cold water and disappeared in the dark forest in search of a good place to plant the colony.

Miles Standish and his men explore the region

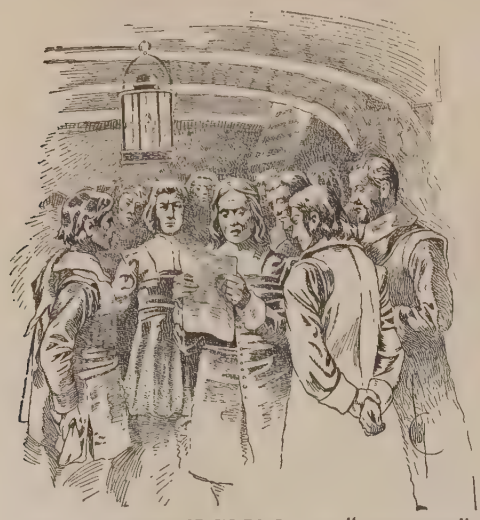
For three days they tramped through forests, up and down hills, and along the sandy coast, but found no suitable place. They found springs, however, and ponds of fresh water, and some Indian mounds containing stores of corn. What should they do, take the corn, or leave it and run the risk of starvation? They decided to take only enough to plant in the spring. They afterwards paid the owners double for what they had taken.

They learn to set snares

Everywhere they saw flocks of wild fowl, good for food, and the tracks of wild deer. While Bradford was examining an Indian snare set for game he found himself suddenly swinging by one leg in the air. They had a hearty laugh, and learned a new lesson in the art of catching game!

Twice again Standish led his little company to search out a place. On the third trip, as they were at breakfast, their ears were suddenly filled with the most fearful shouts. A shower of arrows fell near them. It was an Indian attack. Captain Standish and his men seized their guns and fired at the red men as fast as they could. Happily, the Indians, frightened by the roar and smoke of English muskets, ran away before any one was killed on either side.

Their first Indian battle



READING THE COMPACT ON BOARD THE "MAYFLOWER"

On this trip they found the harbor of Plymouth, which John Smith had explored and named several years before. Its shore was now to become their home. They immediately hastened back to the ship to tell the good news, and in a few days the *Mayflower* carried the Pilgrims into Plymouth Harbor. The little party landed on December 21, 1620, and that day is still celebrated as "Forefathers' Day." The story is that when they landed they stepped on a large stone—a bowlder, itself a "pilgrim"—brought there by the mighty ice sheet ages ago. This bowlder is called "Plymouth Rock," and may still be seen in Plymouth.

Plymouth Harbor chosen

"Plymouth Rock"

45. Their Home in the Forest. Although it was winter, the men immediately began to chop down trees and build a great log storehouse which could be used for a hospital and for worship.

Then they began building their own homes. They cut down the trees, sawed off the logs, hewed them roughly, and then dragged them by hand to the place where the house was to stand. When the logs were ready the men lifted them up by hand, or when the walls grew too high for lifting they slid them up "skids."

Building a town in the woods

The roof was made of boards which had been split from logs of wood. These were held in place by smaller logs. The wind and rain were kept out by "chinking" or daubing the cracks between the logs with mortar. The windows were few and small, for they had no glass and used oiled skins instead.

This first winter in America was the saddest the Pilgrims had ever seen. Their storehouse was turned into a hospital. They had been used to the gentler winters of England and Holland. Before the warm days of spring came, one half of the little band had perished,

among them Governor Carver. But the Pilgrims bore brave hearts, and not a man or woman among those left went back to England when the *Mayflower* sailed.

MILES STANDISH
From a portrait now in possession of Mrs. A. M. Harrison, Plymouth

True courage

46. Friendship with the Indians. Brave Miles Standish kept his little army—what was left of it—ready for any danger. He built a fort on a hill, and mounted the cannon brought over in the *Mayflower*.

But the Indians were not so bad after all, for had it not been for them, the Pilgrims would have had a much harder time. One day while the leaders were talking over military affairs, they saw a fine-looking Indian coming toward them. He called out in the English language, "Welcome! Welcome!" This was a double surprise. The Indian was Samoset, who had already saved the lives of two white men taken by the Indians.

Samoset introduces them to the Indians

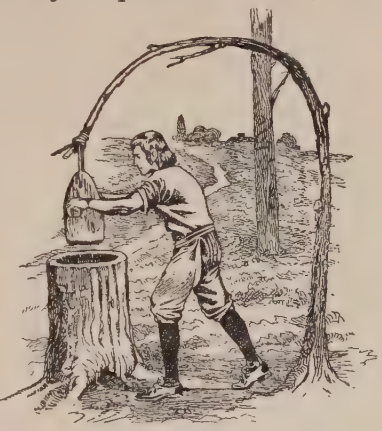
In a few days Samoset brought other Indians, dressed in deer and panther skins. They made the Pilgrims think of gypsies seen in Holland. Their long black hair was braided and ornamented with feathers and foxtails. They sang and danced for the Pilgrims.

Massasoit visits the Pilgrims

When Samoset came again, he brought Squanto, an Indian who had been captured and carried to London, and who could speak English. They gave the news that the great Indian chief, Massasoit, was coming to visit his strange neighbors.

A messenger was sent to welcome him and to give him

presents. Massasoit, and twenty other Indians without bows and arrows, were met by Captain Standish, and escorted into the presence of Bradford, the long-time governor of Plymouth. They agreed not to harm each other, and to be friends forever.



POUNDING CORN TO MAKE MEAL

What the Pilgrims learned from Squanto

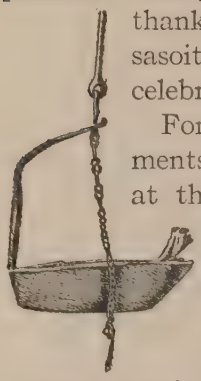
Squanto taught the Pilgrims many new things. He showed them how to raise corn by putting dead fish in the hill when planting corn, how to hoe the corn while growing, and how to pound the corn to make meal. Indian corn proved to be the Pilgrims' best food crop.

They had no means of fishing, but Squanto taught them how to catch eels by wading into shallow water, and treading them out with their feet. From the Indians the white men also learned how to make Indian shoes or moccasins, and snowshoes, birch-bark canoes, and other useful things.

INDIANS TEACHING THE PILGRIMS HOW TO CATCH EELS

The first summer was now over and the Pilgrims' first harvest had been gathered. Their houses had been repaired, and the health

of the settlers was good. Fish and wild game were plentiful. They decided that the time for rejoicing and thanksgiving had also come, and invited Massasoit and his warriors to join them in the celebration.



GOVERNOR CARVER'S LAMP

The first American Thanksgiving

For three days the games, military movements, feastings, and rejoicing went on, and at the end the Pilgrims and Indians were better friends than before. This was the beginning of our custom of having a day of thanksgiving each year.

For a whole year the Pilgrims had not heard a word from the great world across the sea. How eager they must have been for just one word from their old homes! One day the Indians sent runners to tell them that a ship was in sight. The cannon boomed on the hilltop. Captain Standish and his men ran for their guns and stood ready to defend the colony against Spaniards or French. But it was a ship with news and friends from Leiden and England.

More Pilgrims from Holland and England

After a few weeks this ship returned to England loaded with furs, clapboards, and sassafras to pay those English merchants who had furnished the Pilgrims the *Mayflower* to bring them to America.

WEDDING SLIPPER WORN BY A MAYFLOWER BRIDE

An Indian's challenge to war

An Indian chief, not far away, decided that he would rather fight with the Englishmen than be friendly with them. So he sent a bundle of arrows, wrapped in a rattlesnake's skin, to the governor of Plymouth. Squanto told the Pilgrims that this was an Indian's challenge to war.

The Pilgrims were men of peace, but they were not cowards. Governor Bradford filled the skin with powder and shot and sent it back to the hostile chief. But the Indians would not touch it and the chief would not permit it to be left in his wigwam an hour, but sent it from place to place, until it again reached Plymouth.

Bradford's answer

Thus the Pilgrims went on year by year, living in peace when they could, but fighting when they must. Every year or so new settlers came from their old homes, and the colony grew slowly, but steadily.

After a few years the new King of England was so hard upon the Puritans in England that thousands of them followed the example of the Pilgrims and came to America, and planted many other colonies in New England. But none have held so warm a place in the hearts of Americans as the little band brought to the New World by the *Mayflower*.

The Pilgrims the most famous of all the Puritans in America

JOHN WINTHROP, THE FOUNDER OF BOSTON; JOHN ELIOT, THE GREAT ENGLISH MISSIONARY; AND KING PHILIP, AN INDIAN CHIEF THE EQUAL OF THE WHITE MAN

47. The Puritans. While the Pilgrims were planting their home on the lonely American shore, the Puritans in England were being cruelly persecuted by Charles I. So great became their sufferings and dangers that the Puritan leaders decided to go to America, where they could worship as they pleased. Charles I, fortunately, gave them a very good charter. But even before this, some of the Puritans had already planted a colony at Salem.

Colony at Salem

48. John Winthrop. The Puritan leaders elected John Winthrop governor of the new colony. In the spring

of 1630, nearly ten years after the *Mayflower* sailed, more than seven hundred Puritans, in eleven ships, bade good-by to their beautiful English homes, crossed the ocean, and settled in what is now Boston.

John Winthrop founded Boston, 1630

JOHN WINTHROP
From a portrait painted by John Singleton Copley; reproduced by permission of the trustees of Harvard University

John Winthrop, the leader and governor of the Colony of Massachusetts Bay, the name given to the Salem and Boston settlements, was then about forty years old, and had been in college at Cambridge, in England. He was a man of high social position.

The Puritans who came with Winthrop were people of property, and not only parted from friends and kindred when they came to the wild shores of America, but both men and women gave up lives of comfort and pleasure for lives of suffering and hardship. In America, the men had to cut down trees, work in the fields, and fight Indians. Only brave men and women act in this way. But no one among them gave up more or was willing to suffer more than their leader. The people elected him governor almost every year until his death, in 1649.

What the Puritans gave up

John Winthrop was a firm man with many noble qualities, and not once, while governor, did he do anything merely to please the people if he thought it wrong.

Character of Winthrop

When a leading man in the colony sent him a bitter letter, he returned it saying that he did not wish to keep

near him so great a cause of ill feeling. This answer made the writer Winthrop's friend. When food was scarce in the colony, Winthrop divided his last bit of bread with the poor, and worked with his laborers in the fields.

Many new towns in Massachusetts

While Winthrop was ruling the colony, hundreds of settlers came and settled many other towns around Boston, and the Massachusetts Bay Colony grew large in the number of its people. Later the old Plymouth Colony was united with it to form one colony. But these settlers did not always agree, especially in regard to religion and government.

JOHN ELIOT, A SUCCESSFUL MISSIONARY TO THE INDIANS

49. John Eliot. The treatment of the Indians by the colonists was generally just and kind. Trading with the white man had brought the Indians better food and clothing. Schools were being set up to give them some of the white man's education, and many preachers tried to teach them to become Christians. One man who spent his whole life in this work was John Eliot. His first care was to learn the language of the Indians of Massachusetts. He succeeded so well that he was able to translate the

THE NEW ENGLAND SETTLEMENTS

Eliot translates the Bible

entire Bible into the Indian language and to preach to the Indians in their native tongue.

The converts that he made he gathered together into communities which settled near the English towns. These converts were taught how to build themselves log cabins and to live and dress like the English. The principal village established by Eliot was at Natick, Massachusetts. Others quickly followed Eliot's example, and several other Christian Indian villages sprang up. These communities flourished, and in a few years Eliot could count as many as four thousand converts among the Indians of Massachusetts.

Eliot continued to preach until his death in 1690. Even the fierce King Philip's War could not check his success.

KING PHILIP, INDIAN CHIEF AND HATER OF WHITE MEN

50. King Philip. After the death of old Massasoit the friendship between Pilgrims and Indians soon came to an end. More and more white settlers came in and built homes. The Indians began to fear that they would be crowded out of the country which belonged to them and to their fathers before them. No longer were they treated with respect as at first. They were a proud people, and grew bitter because they saw that they were despised.

The Indians are persecuted

One of the proudest of the race was Philip, son of Massasoit and ruler of his people. Several times the governor of Plymouth forced him to do things against his will. This hurt the pride of Philip, and he began to hate the English. His own people also came to him frequently with complaints against the white men. Philip grew surly, while the colonists began to distrust him.

The bad feeling grew on both sides, and gradually both Indians and colonists came to believe all the evil stories that were told of each other. Both sides collected arms, powder, and lead. After a short while war with all its horrors began. The Indians burned many villages and massacred hundreds of white men, women, and children.

There was much fighting, and finally the Indians were completely defeated. Most of the braves were killed; those who were captured were sold as slaves. Philip's family was killed or captured. He himself fled to a swamp, where he met death at the hands of one of his own people.

Philip is defeated and killed

INDUSTRIES, MANNERS, AND CUSTOMS

51. How the New England Colonists Lived. The Puritans and the Pilgrims had a hard struggle in their new homes. The winters were long and colder than in England. For the cold weather they had to build warm houses and barns, and store up much grain, hay, and provisions. The summers were cool and short; tobacco and even corn did not ripen so well as in Virginia. Most of the land was hilly and stony and hard to cultivate. But these things did not discourage the settlers, who merely worked so much harder. Soon they raised all the corn, wheat, cattle, and sheep they needed, and even had some left to sell. Where the streams had waterfalls they built mills with big water wheels. In these they ground their flour and meal and sawed their lumber.

The Pilgrims have a hard struggle

While the men farmed the land, or ran mills, or fished, the women also did their share of the work. They made butter and cheese, spun and wove the wool into cloth, and made many other things which now we buy from stores.

The Pilgrims build towns and villages

Unlike the Virginia colonists, many people of New England lived in towns and villages. They built churches, schools, and town halls. All the people went to church. Most of the children attended school. Whenever any question arose in which every one was interested, they talked it over at the town meeting. In these ways the New England colonists differed from the Virginians.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* The Puritans first migrated to Holland to gain religious freedom. *2.* Later they decided to go to America, where they planted the colony of Plymouth, made peace with the Indians, and began to worship in their own way. *3.* John Winthrop founded the Massachusetts Bay Colony of 700 Puritans. *4.* He was such a good governor that he was elected almost every year until his death. *5.* John Eliot converted many Indians and established several Christian Indian communities. *6.* King Philip was goaded into a war with the whites of Massachusetts. *7.* He was defeated and treacherously killed.

Study Questions. *1.* Why did the Pilgrims decide to leave England? *2.* What new danger threatened them in Holland? *3.* Picture the *Mayflower* in a storm at sea. *4.* Tell the story of Miles Standish and his little army. *5.* What useful things did the Pilgrims learn from the Indians? 6. Why would putting dead fish in the hill help the corn to grow? *7.* Why have Americans loved the Pilgrims so well? *8.* How did the Pilgrims' treatment of the Indians compare with that of the Spaniards? *9.* Tell the story of John Winthrop and the Puritans. *10.* Tell the story of John Eliot. *11.* What did he do before he began to teach the Indians? *12.* Tell the story of King Philip.

Suggested Readings. PILGRIMS AND PURITANS: Pumphrey, *Pilgrim Stories;* Warren, *The Little Pioneers;* Hart, *Colonial Children*, 136–140, 177–182; Glascock, *Stories of Columbia*, 69–81; Pratt, *Early Colonies*, 113–123; Drake, *Making of New England*, 67–87, 149–186; Hart, *Source Book*, 45–48; Higginson, *American Explorers*, 341–361.

JOHN ELIOT: Tappan, *American Hero Stories*, 59–72, 84–96.

THE MEN WHO PLANTED COLONIES FOR MANY KINDS OF PEOPLE

PETER STUYVESANT, THE GREAT DUTCH GOVERNOR

52. Peter Stuyvesant. This sturdy son of Holland was born at a time when his country was fighting hard against Spain for independence. His father was a minister, who, it may be supposed, brought up young Peter after the strict manner common to Dutch boys.

Young Peter Stuyvesant

Peter early began to study Latin. He was vain of his knowledge, and later took pride in showing it off to the settlers of New Amsterdam.

When he left school young Peter joined the army, where he found plenty of hard work; but he performed duties as a soldier quicker and better than some of his comrades, and in a few years was given command over a Dutch colony in the West Indies.

Becomes a soldier

THE DUTCH SETTLEMENTS

In an attack on a Portuguese fort Stuyvesant lost a leg and had to return to Holland. As soon as he was well the Dutch West India Company sent him to New Netherland (1647) to save that colony from the Indians.

Goes to New Netherland

PETER STUYVESANT
From a seventeenth-century portrait at present in the collection of the New York Historical Society

The arrival of Stuyvesant, with his little army and fleet of four vessels, brought great joy to the discouraged settlers and fur traders. He said to the people: "I shall reign over you as a father over his children." But he ruled the colony far more like a king than a father. He was not only commander in chief of the army, but was also lawmaker, judge, and governor, all in one.

What Stuyvesant said to the settlers

The new laws made by Stuyvesant showed that he intended to keep order in the colony. He forbade Sabbath-breaking, drunkenness, the sale of drink to the Indians or to any one else after the nine o'clock bell had rung. He ordered the owners of all vacant lots in New Amsterdam to improve them, and tried to fix the location of all new buildings. He taxed traders, whether they shipped goods to Europe or brought goods into New Netherland.

Strict order in New Amsterdam

Stuyvesant did, indeed, restore order to the colony, but he stirred up the people until they demanded a voice in the government. He finally agreed that they might select nine of their wisest men to advise with him. They were called the council. He had no idea of following

anybody's advice unless it agreed with his own notions, but the people had gained something.

Stuyvesant and his neighbors

At the same time Stuyvesant was just as busy with his neighbors' affairs. He quarreled with the English in New England, as well as with the patroons in his own colony.

Stuyvesant claimed all the region now included in New Jersey, a large part of that in the states of New York, Delaware, and Pennsylvania, and also a part of the territory of New England.

Government by the people demanded

The colony grew in numbers. New towns sprang up along the Hudson and on Long Island. But the increase in the number of the towns only made the call for a government by the people still louder.

For several years the dispute between the people and the governor went on until, one day in 1664, news came that a fleet of English war vessels was in sight. Although England and Holland were at peace, the English king had given New Netherland to his brother, the Duke of York, and the English fleet had come to take it for the duke.

Governor Stuyvesant was resolved to defend the colony to the last. But he was surprised to find that his people

A VIEW OF THE CITY AND HARBOR OF NEW AMSTERDAM (NEW YORK), 1656

What Stuyvesant learned after it was too late

were not willing to fight for a governor who had given them so little share in governing themselves.

The commander of the fleet sent a letter to Stuyvesant offering very favorable terms of surrender. The council wanted the governor to surrender, but he grew angry, tore the letter to pieces, and declared he would never give up. The council put the pieces of the letter together and read it to the people. The minister of his own church begged the governor not to fight, and leading citizens, and mothers with their children, pleaded with Stuyvesant to surrender. Now what could the brave old Dutchman do? He could not fight a whole fleet alone. He turned sadly away, saying, "I would rather go to my grave than to surrender the city."

Brave to the last

53. The Dutch Surrender to the English. The English took possession, and the colony of New Netherland became the colony of New York, and at the same time the town of New Amsterdam became the town of New York. Fort Orange became Albany. English governors came to rule instead of Dutch governors. A few years later a Dutch fleet recaptured the colony; but, by a treaty at the close of the war, Holland returned it to England. When William and Mary came to the throne of England (1689) they gave New York a representative assembly.

New Netherland becomes New York

A DUTCH COTTAGE AND STREET SCENE IN NEW YORK, 1679

Although Dutch rule was gone forever, the Dutch people and Dutch ideas and customs remained. They were given no cause to regret the change. Peter Stuyvesant himself had become so attached to the colony that he came back from Holland and spent his last years on his great farm, or bowery, as the Dutch called it.

Dutch ideas and customs remain

A DUTCH SOLDIER

MANNERS AND CUSTOMS OF NEW NETHERLAND

54. Life in New Netherland. The Dutch colonists brought with them the quaint and simple ways of their old home in Holland—the land of dikes and windmills. Even long years after the colony had passed into the hands of the English, many places in New York remained Dutch in customs and appearance.

New Amsterdam looked for all the world like a city back in Holland. The houses were built solidly. They stood close to the street and had high, steep roofs with gable ends that were like series of steps. On the front of each house large iron numerals told the year in which it was built. On the roof were curious weathervanes.

The colonists built houses like those in Holland

About the fireplace the family gathered in the evening. The burgher would tell jovial stories to the children as he smoked his long pipe. The good wife, resting from her day's work, found some needlework to busy her fingers.

The Dutch wives were famous housekeepers and prided themselves on their spotless homes. They scoured and scrubbed from morning to night. But they also knew how to make doughnuts and crullers and to cook good dishes that made their husbands round and good-natured and their children rosy and plump.

The Dutch liked merry-making

The Dutch liked merrymaking and good times far better than did their Puritan neighbors. The big brass knocker on the door—shaped generally like the head of some animal—was kept busy in the afternoon by people coming to drink tea or coffee. A great copper kettle, hung in the fireplace, furnished enough to drink for every one, and sweet cookies were always on hand. They celebrated many holidays. At Christmas we still look for old Santa Claus, whom the Dutch first brought to this country.

In Holland the burghers had been good farmers and shrewd merchants. When they came to this country they continued to make their living chiefly in these two ways. On Long Island and along the Hudson River were fine farms with well-kept fields and large gardens. The merchants mostly lived at New Amsterdam, which soon became a busy seaport. Here many sailing vessels lay at anchor and exchanged their cargoes for the products of the Dutch farms and of the Indian trade. From the small beginnings made by these Dutch merchants has grown the largest city of the western world.

WILLIAM PENN, THE QUAKER, WHO FOUNDED THE CITY OF BROTHERLY LOVE

55. William Penn. One day Thomas Loe, a Quaker preacher, ventured into the old university town of Oxford. He talked with the students and explained to

them the beliefs of the Quakers. He declared that all men were equal, and he refused to recognize rank or title. He taught men to live and worship in simplicity.

A few students believed his teachings and resolved to become members of the hated sect of Quakers. Among them was William Penn, the son of a great naval officer, Admiral Penn. What a buzzing there was in that old college town when the news spread that William Penn, the fine scholar, the skilled oarsman, the all-round athlete, had become a Quaker!

William Penn converted

Some of his comrades would not believe it. But when they saw him put off the cap and gown of his college, which some of the greatest men in English history had worn with pride, and put on the plain garb of the Quakers, they gave up! The college officers were also convinced when Penn and other Quakers tore off the gowns of fellow students. The authorities promptly expelled these young and over-enthusiastic Friends.

Why Penn was expelled from college

What more disgraceful thing could happen to the family of Admiral Penn? To have a son expelled from Oxford was bad enough, but to have him become a Quaker was a disgrace not to be borne—so thought his family. The stern old admiral promptly drove him from home. But William resolutely refused to give up his Quaker views, and the admiral decided to try the plan of sending him to Paris, where life was as un-Quaker-like as it could be.

What Penn's family and friends thought

William Penn himself looked little like a Quaker. He was then eighteen years old, fine looking, with large eyes and long, dark, curly hair reaching to his shoulders.

Young Penn, however, did not entirely waste his time in the gay life of Paris. He attended school and traveled in Italy. At the end of two years he came back.

Penn in Paris

It was not long before the admiral again saw Quaker signs in his son and hastened him off to Ireland to cure him entirely. But who should be preaching in Ireland but Thomas Loe. William went to hear his old preacher, and this time became a Quaker forever. No suffering was great enough to cause him ever to waver again, although fines were heaped on him and at four different times he was thrown into foul jails to be the companion of criminals.

Returns more of a Quaker than ever

Penn's family now felt the disgrace very keenly, but his father promised to forgive him if he would take off his hat to the king, to the king's brother, and to his father. One day, the story goes, King Charles, the merry monarch, met William Penn and others. All hats were promptly removed except the king's and Penn's. Presently the king, too, removed his hat. Whereupon, Penn said: "Friend Charles, why dost thou remove thy hat?" The king replied: "Because, wherever I am, it is customary for but one to remain covered."

Penn refuses to lift his hat

WILLIAM PENN

At the age of 22, from a painting in the rooms of the Historical Society of Pennsylvania, presented by his grandson, Granville Penn of Stoke Poges

Penn's father

would not permit such conduct toward his royal friends. He therefore drove his son from his home a second time.

THE MEETING BETWEEN WILLIAM PENN AND KING CHARLES

But Penn's mother finally made peace between the father and the son before the admiral died. William Penn, then but twenty-six years old, came into possession of a fortune. Once more he stood "where the roads parted." He could now be a great man and play the part of a fine English gentleman who would always be welcome at court, or he could remain a Quaker.

William Penn makes a noble choice

We do not know that he even thought of forsaking his Quaker comrades. On the contrary, he resolved to devote his fortune and his life to giving them relief. Like Winthrop for the Puritans and Baltimore for the Catholics, Penn thought of America for his persecuted Friends. With other Quaker leaders, he became an owner of West Jersey, part of New Jersey.

Turns to America

56. The Founding of Pennsylvania. King Charles II

owed Penn's father about eighty thousand dollars. William Penn asked him to pay it in American land. Charles was only too glad to grant this request of the son of his old sea captain. The land he gave to Penn is the present great state of Pennsylvania. Penn wanted the colony called Sylvania, meaning woodland, but the king declared it should be called Pennsylvania in memory of Admiral Penn.

The king pays an old debt

Penn's Woods

A WEATHER VANE
Set above their mill by Penn and two partners in 1699, to show which way the wind might blow

By means of letters and pamphlets Penn sent word to the Quakers throughout England, Scotland, and Ireland. He told them of Quaker homes across the sea, where jails would not trouble them.

There was great rejoicing among them over Penn's "Holy Experiment," as his plan was called.

Penn invited all persecuted people

Penn even visited Europe, especially the country along the Rhine, and told the persecuted and oppressed about the new colony where every sort of Christian was to find a hearty welcome, and where no one was to be punished for religion's sake.

A QUAKER

Hundreds of settlers hastened to the new colony. When Penn reached Newcastle on the Delaware in the fall of 1682 he met a hearty welcome from scores of happy people who were already enjoying their long-wished-for religious freedom.

One of Penn's first acts was to call a meeting of the colonists to talk over their government. This pleased

WILLIAM PENN'S TREATY WITH THE INDIANS
After the painting by Benjamin West, which hangs in Independence Hall, Philadelphia

the people greatly, for although the land was Penn's he not only gave them land for their houses and farms, but he also gave them the right to choose their own rulers and to make their own laws.

The founding of Philadelphia

Penn next turned his attention to founding the great Quaker city to which he gave the name Philadelphia, signifying brotherly love—a name truly expressing Penn's feeling toward other men. He marked off the streets right in the midst of a great forest, and called them Walnut, Mulberry, Chestnut, and so on, after the trees that grew there. Some of the streets in Philadelphia are still so named.

Some settlers lived in caves

But the settlers came faster than houses could be built, and some families had to live in caves dug in the banks

along the river. Philadelphia grew faster than the other colonial towns, and soon led them all.

Penn visits the Indians

William Penn won the love and the respect of the Indians of Pennsylvania. He visited them in their own towns and ate with them. He even took part in their athletic games and outran them all. Like Roger Williams, he believed that the Indians should be paid for their lands. Accordingly, he made them rich gifts and entered into solemn treaties with the chiefs.

Kind treatment produced kind treatment

At a treaty under a great elm tree on the banks of the Delaware, Penn said to the Indians: "We are the same as if one man's body were divided into two parts: We are all one flesh and one blood." In return the Indians said: "We will live in love with William Penn and his children as long as the moon and the sun shall endure." If the Indians admired a white man they said: "He is like William Penn."

The coming of the "Pennsylvania Dutch"

The news of the establishment of free government and free religious worship brought crowds of settlers from Germany. Hundreds of German families in the valleys of the Rhine and the Neckar escaped to "Penn's Woods," and there their children's children are to be found to-day under the name of the "Pennsylvania Dutch." Without boasting, William Penn could say that no other one man, at his own expense, had planted so great a colony in the wilds of America as he had. Few nobler men ever lived than William Penn. He died July 30, 1718.

QUAKER WAYS IN OLD PENNSYLVANIA

57. How Quakers Differed from other Colonists. The people who formed Penn's colony were unlike those of any of the other settlements. They did not wear

gorgeous clothes and jewelry like the Virginia cavaliers. The men carried no swords or pistols. They were not stern like the Puritans. Games and social pleasures were not to be seen among them as in Dutch New Netherland.

Believed in simple things

These people wore clothes of the plainest cut, made from dull gray or brown cloth. They were gentle and soft-spoken, and did not fight or quarrel among themselves. People who did not understand or like them called them Quakers, because some of them were so carried away at religious meetings that they fell to quaking. They themselves took the name of the Society of Friends. And Friends is a much better name, for they were friends to every man.

Quakers called themselves the Society of Friends

The customs of the Quakers grew out of their religious views. Above all, they believed that every one should be free to do as his own conscience taught him. Their religious meetings were as simple as their own lives. They did not think it necessary to have ministers or priests. The men sat in one part of the church, the women in another. All was silence until some Friend felt called to speak. Some days no one spoke, and then they all sat in silence until the meeting was over. As a rule, not even a hymn was sung.

All religions welcomed by the Friends

The Quakers have always believed that war is unnecessary and wrong, and only a few of them have ever carried arms. Because Friends speak only the truth, they do not take an oath. In the courts of law their simple word is as good as an oath. They have always been quick to help the poor and oppressed. The Quakers were the first to oppose slavery, and they did much to end it both in this country and in the English colonies. It is strange

Opposed war and slavery

that these kind, gentle people should ever have been so cruelly persecuted.

The colony prospered

While the Quakers were strongly religious, they also took good heed of the things of this world. At first they cleared and planted farms in the fertile Schuylkill and Delaware valleys. Soon groups of them took up townships of five thousand acres each and built villages at their centers. The swift streams which tumbled down the mountain slopes they used to turn mills. In these they ground flour, sawed lumber, made paper, and wove woolen cloth.

The rich land and good climate of Pennsylvania and its liberal government attracted many people from outside. After a short time the Quakers were outnumbered by the other settlers, and to-day the Quakers are but a handful in that great state.

JAMES OGLETHORPE, THE FOUNDER OF GEORGIA AS A HOME FOR ENGLISH DEBTORS, AS A PLACE FOR PERSECUTED PROTESTANTS, AND AS A BARRIER AGAINST THE SPANIARDS

58. A Friend of the Unfortunate. James Oglethorpe was an Englishman. At an early age he went to Oxford to study, but he was drawn away from college by the clash of arms. Oglethorpe was a soldier for many years. Later he became a member of Parliament.

Oglethorpe a soldier

A friend of Oglethorpe's died in a debtor's prison, which aroused his sympathies for the poor. He examined English jails, and found them so dirty and dark and damp that strong-bodied men, to say nothing of women and children, soon sickened and died in them. Besides, he found that the jailers were often bad men, who whipped

English jails and jailers

the prisoners on their bare backs and stole their food.

The prison was a poor place for a man in debt, anyway. How could a man pay his debts while he was shut up in prison?

Oglethorpe, like many other noble men before him, thought of America as a place of refuge for the unfortunate. King George II gave him a charter for the land between the Savannah and the Altamaha, and made his heart glad by declaring that all Protestants should be tolerated there.

JAMES EDWARD OGLETHORPE
From an original portrait painted by Simon Francois Ravenet, from a mezzotint by Burford in the print room at the British Museum

King George II grants a charter

When the debtors heard the news that Oglethorpe was to plant a colony for them there was great excitement among them. But he carefully selected his settlers, so that no lazy man might be found among them. Arms and tools with which to work on the farms were given to the settlers.

A select body of emigrants

When the time came, thirty families were ready to sail. Oglethorpe carried them direct to Charleston, South Carolina. When they landed, in 1733, the people of Charleston were only too glad to have a colony south of them as a "buffer" against the Spaniards who occupied Florida, and who had already attacked South Carolina.

At Charleston

Therefore, the people of Charleston, to give the new

colony a good start, presented the settlers with one hundred head of cattle, a drove of hogs, and fifteen or twenty barrels of rice. Rejoicing in their new supplies, the colony sailed to the Savannah River, and not far from its mouth, on a beautiful bluff, Oglethorpe marked out the streets of the new city. The settlers went to work with a will, cutting down trees and making them into cabins. They soon had comfortable homes, although very different from what they had known in England.

Savannah laid out

Soon other colonists came to Savannah. Among these was a company of Italians who had come to raise the silkworm and to manufacture silk.

Italians

In the next year after Oglethorpe planted the settlement a band of sturdy German Protestants arrived. These settlers built their homes to the north of Savannah, and called the colony "Ebenezer," which means "the Lord hath helped us." Between these two settlements a band of pious Moravian immigrants founded a colony. Then followed the settlement of Augusta, far up the Savannah River and well out among the Indians, which served as a sort of outpost.

German Protestants

OGLETHORPE SURVEYING THE SITE OF SAVANNAH

To these were added a colony on the Altamaha River. This colony was settled by a company of brave Highlanders from Scotland.

Highlanders

In the meantime, Oglethorpe had gone to England, but

he soon returned with more than two hundred English and German immigrants, who came to Georgia to better their condition. With these immigrants came John and Charles Wesley, who were soon to awake all England with a revival of religion.

The Wesleys come

OGLETHORPE'S STRONGHOLD

Standing on a bold rocky bluff overlooking a beautiful bay, it guarded the entrance to Frederica

While in England Oglethorpe was made a colonel. He saw that trouble with Spain must soon come. From the beginning of the settlement of Georgia Oglethorpe had been careful to treat the Indians well. He had made treaties with them and had paid them for their lands. He now went to visit the Creek and the Cherokee Indians.

Oglethorpe foresees war

On an island at the mouth of the Altamaha Oglethorpe planted a town to serve as an outpost against the Spaniards. He fortified it, and made it very strong. This town was called Frederica.

Frederica fortified

In 1742 a Spanish fleet of fifty-one vessels and five thousand men attacked Frederica. Oglethorpe beat them off, and thereafter Georgia was left in peace. He went back to England and became a general. Oglethorpe lived to a good old age. He died in 1785.

INDUSTRIES, MANNERS, AND CUSTOMS OF THE SOUTHERN PLANTERS

59. The Carolina and Georgia Planters. The colonial farms south of Virginia lay mostly in a narrow strip near the sea. Inland were the "pine barrens," a poor,

Farms near the sea

sandy country grown up in pine woods. Inland also were strong and fierce tribes of Indians like the Cherokees and Creeks.

The younger colonies could not live by growing tobacco. Virginia was nearer to the English market, and supplied it with most of the tobacco needed. They did raise corn and cattle for their own use. One day a ship captain from the Orient sailed into Charleston with some rice. The story runs that he gave a few handfuls of this to the governor as a curiosity. The wise old governor heard that this rice had been grown in swamps, and he thought of the swamps all along the coast of Carolina and Georgia. He had some of it planted in this wet land, and it grew beyond all hopes. In a few years rice was produced in such quantity that it could be shipped to England, where it was thought the best on the market.

Rice becomes an important product

Some one else discovered that the low, wet land would also grow indigo, a plant used for making a brilliant and valuable blue dye. Indigo soon brought the settlers as much money as did the rice.

Indigo also grown

The great pine woods furnished lumber that was sent to Europe by the boatload. From the sap of the pine trees the colonists also learned to make turpentine and rosin. By heating or distilling the wood itself they produced tar. To this day one of the most striking sights in these states are the great sawmills and the stills, where negroes are making turpentine much as it was made a century and a half ago.

Lumber, tar, and turpentine

When Georgia was settled Oglethorpe did not permit slaves to be brought in, and the colonists had to do all their own work. But later there were as many slaves in Georgia as in the Carolinas or Virginia.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Peter Stuyvesant was sent out by the Dutch West India Company as Governor of New York. *2.* He ruled the colony in his own way and gave the people very little power. *3.* The council surrendered the colony to the English against the will of Stuyvesant. *4.* New Netherland became the colony of New York. *5.* The Dutch kept up the customs of their native country. *6.* William Penn, son of a great English naval officer, became a Quaker while a student at Oxford. *7.* He founded a colony in America on a tract of land given him in payment of the king's debt to his father. *8.* Penn gave the colonists the right to choose their own rulers and to make their own laws. *9.* He gave a free constitution and made friends with the Indians. *10.* He founded the city of Philadelphia, which grew faster than the other colonial towns. *11.* The Quakers were gentle and friendly to everybody. *12.* All religions were welcomed in the colony. *13.* When a friend of Oglethorpe's died in a debtors' prison, Oglethorpe determined to do something for the unfortunates shut up in jail for debt. *14.* He obtained a charter from the king for some land in Georgia. *15.* In his selection of settlers no lazy men were allowed. *16.* The town was built near the mouth of the Savannah River. *17.* The Savannah colony flourished, and many other settlers came to Georgia. *18.* Oglethorpe built Frederica to keep back the Spaniards. *19.* The colonies south of Virginia thrived on the production of rice, indigo, lumber, tar, and turpentine.

Study Questions. *1.* Tell the story of Peter Stuyvesant until the time he became governor. *2.* What reforms did Stuyvesant bring to the colony? *3.* How did he rule? *4.* What part did the nine men play in the government? *5.* What were they called? *6.* Why were the people glad when the English fleet came? *7.* What did William and Mary do for the colony? *8.* Tell what you know about the way the Dutch lived. *9.* Why should the students at Oxford be surprised to hear that William Penn had turned Quaker? *10.* Why did his father drive him from home? *11.* What shows that William Penn did not waste his time in Paris? *12.* Who made peace between Penn and his father? *13.* What was William Penn's noble resolution? *14.* How did Penn come into possession of Pennsylvania? *15.* Prove that Penn was a

very generous man. *16.* Why did William Penn call his town the "city of brotherly love"? *17.* Make a picture of the great treaty under the elm. *18.* Tell the story of Oglethorpe. *19.* Why did Charleston lend a helping hand to Oglethorpe's colony? *20.* Where did the settlers of Georgia come from? *21.* What did Oglethorpe build Frederica for? *22.* What did the colonists south of Virginia raise?

Suggested Readings. STUYVESANT: Williams, *Stories from Early New York History*, 21–32; Smith and Dutton, *The Colonies*, 189–202.

PENN: Pratt, *Early Colonies*, 158–165; Hart, *Colonial Children*, 144–148; Dixon, *William Penn*, 11–273.

OGLETHORPE: Smith and Dutton, *The Colonies*, 78–89; Pratt, *Early Colonies*, 173–176; Hart, *Source Book*, 71–73; Cooper, *James Oglethorpe*.

ROBERT CAVELIER DE LA SALLE, WHO FOLLOWED THE FATHER OF WATERS TO ITS MOUTH, AND ESTABLISHED NEW FRANCE FROM CANADA TO THE GULF OF MEXICO

LA SALLE PUSHED FORWARD THE WORK BEGUN BY JOLIET AND MARQUETTE

60. Robert Cavelier, Sieur de La Salle. While Joliet and Marquette were on their long journey, Frontenac was making use of another fur trader, La Salle, and of another missionary, Hennepin. La Salle belonged to a rich French family, and had left home at the age of twenty-three (1666) for the wild life in the American forests.

Fort Frontenac built

He first built a fort-like post just above Montreal and named it Lachine, because he supposed it was located on the route to China. In 1673 he helped build Fort Frontenac where the Canadian city of Kingston now stands.

La Salle returned home, and the king received him with honor and made him governor of the region around Fort Frontenac. He came back and built a great stone fort. Settlers soon came and built their cabins around the fort, making a little frontier village.

LA SALLE
Reproduced from a design based on an old engraving

Here the fur trader came each season with his pack, and here the faithful missionary said good-by before plunging into the wilds of the unknown wilderness, perhaps never to return.

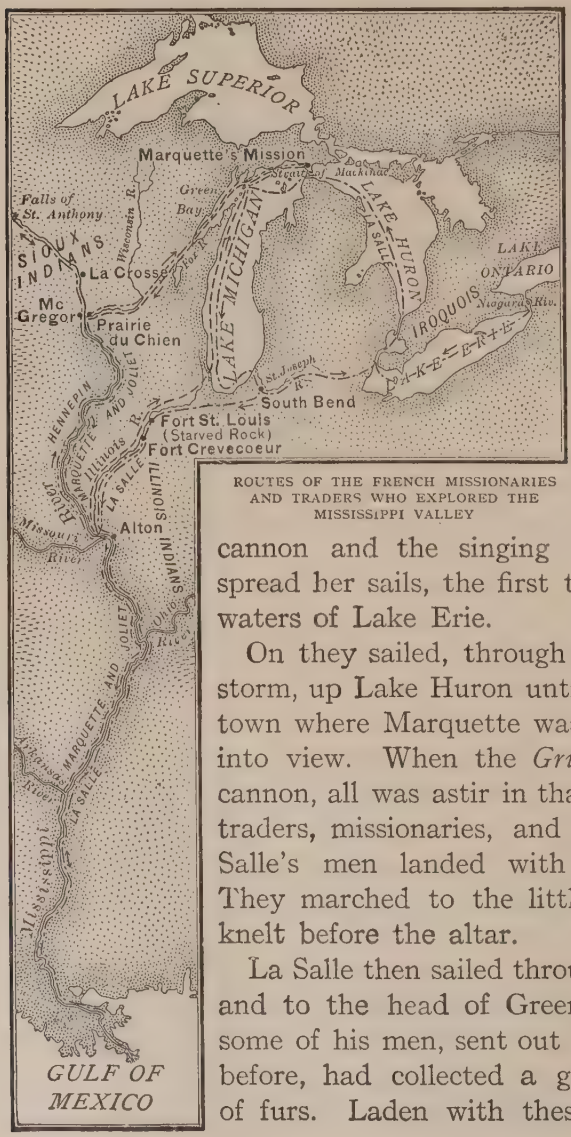
La Salle was growing rich, but he longed to make good his country's right to the richer soil and to the milder climate of the Mississippi Valley. Once more he returned to France, and the king gave him permission to explore the great valley and to build forts along the way.

La Salle not content to get rich only

La Salle came back bringing sailors, carpenters, anchors, and cables, for he intended to build a ship on the lakes. But best of all, he brought Tonti, his faithful Italian friend and helper. Hennepin, the missionary, carried an altar so made that he could strap it on his back and set it up for worship wherever he chose.

Hennepin and his altar

La Salle had resolved to build his first fort at the mouth of the Niagara River, but the Iroquois permitted him to build only a large storehouse. They were greatly displeased when he set about building a ship above Niagara to sail the Great Lakes to the west, and threatened to burn it.



ROUTES OF THE FRENCH MISSIONARIES AND TRADERS WHO EXPLORED THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY

The first ship on the Great Lakes

When the new ship, the *Griffin*, was ready to sail, they towed her up the Niagara River and then into Lake Erie. There was great rejoicing over the *Griffin*. Amid the firing of cannon and the singing of songs she spread her sails, the first to whiten the waters of Lake Erie.

The visit to Mackinac

On they sailed, through sunshine and storm, up Lake Huron until the mission town where Marquette was buried came into view. When the *Griffin* fired her cannon, all was astir in that town of fur traders, missionaries, and Indians. La Salle's men landed with great show. They marched to the little chapel and knelt before the altar.

La Salle then sailed through the straits and to the head of Green Bay, where some of his men, sent out many months before, had collected a great quantity of furs. Laden with these, the *Griffin*

sailed for the storehouse on the Niagara, but La Salle never saw again this first ship of the lakes.

The "Griffin" sails for the storehouse

61. Exploring the Mississippi Valley. With fourteen men in four large canoes, La Salle set out for the Illinois River. They passed southward along the Wisconsin shore, sometimes living only on parched corn and wild

FRENCH FUR TRADERS BARTERING WITH THE INDIANS

berries, but at other times feasting on the wild game killed by their Indian hunter.

The journey by canoe to the Illinois River

They passed the spot where Chicago stands, and reached the mouth of the St. Joseph River. Here another fort was built while waiting for the return of Tonti, who had gone to find the *Griffin*. Three months had passed since the ship sailed. Tonti finally came, but brought no word of the ill-fated *Griffin*.

Disappointed, but still brave, La Salle with a party

of thirty men and fourteen canoes paddled up the St. Joseph River to where South Bend now is. From this point the party, carrying canoes and baggage, made its way over to the headwaters of the Illinois. They were glad to reach the region near the present site of Ottawa, where Marquette had been a few years before. They saw Buffalo Rock and Starved Rock, high bluffs renowned in Indian history.

They reach Starved Rock

Just as the little fleet was passing through Peoria Lake, some one saw the smoke of an Indian camp. At once every Frenchman dropped his paddle, seized his gun, and sprang ashore. The Indians ran about in wild excitement, but La Salle talked peace to the chiefs while Hennepin tried to quiet the children.

Surprising an Indian camp

The Indians told La Salle of fierce warriors farther on

LA SALLE AND HENNEPIN SURPRISING THE INDIANS ON THE SHORES OF PEORIA LAKE

who would kill them, and of great monsters ready to eat them. These stories frightened some of La Salle's men and they ran away.

La Salle decided to build a fort on the bluff overlooking the river and remain there through the winter (1680). They named it Fort Crèvecœur, meaning that the builders had grieved until their hearts were broken.

LA SALLE AT THE MOUTH OF THE MISSISSIPPI

The fort of the broken heart

La Salle returned to Fort Frontenac. In the meantime he ordered Tonti to fortify Starved Rock, and Hennepin to explore the Illinois and the upper Mississippi rivers.

While La Salle was gone, a great army of fierce Iroquois destroyed the villages of the Illinois Indians, "the children of Count Frontenac."

Iroquois destroy villages of the Illinois

La Salle's heart was indeed full of grief when he returned and saw the awful desolation where once stood the villages of his Indian friends. But worse still, he could not find Tonti. With a sad but brave heart the great leader resolved to bring all the Illinois tribes into a union that should be a match for the Iroquois. He went from tribe to tribe, and night after night he sat around the council fires with the chiefs.

A union of Indian tribes proposed

Before he could unite them he heard that Tonti was safe at Mackinac. He hastened to meet his long-lost friend, and there he and Tonti once more planned the exploration of the lower Mississippi. He returned to Fort Frontenac, collected supplies, and was soon crossing the portage between the Chicago and Illinois rivers. On they went, till early in February their canoes floated out upon the bosom of the "Father of Waters" (1682).

La Salle journeys to the mouth of the Mississippi

Down the river they floated, passing the Missouri, the Ohio, and the Arkansas, where Joliet and Marquette had turned back. With the kindly help of new guides, they passed on until they found the Mississippi branching into three streams. La Salle divided his party, and each took a stream to the Gulf.

La Salle takes possession of new country

On shore, just above the mouth, a cross was raised and La Salle took possession of all the country he had explored "in the name of Louis the Great, King of France." The company shouted, "Long live the king!" La Salle's first great object had been accomplished.

Then the party began the slow journey up stream. La Salle finally reached Mackinac, and there again began to lay great plans. The first thing he did was to go to Starved Rock and build a fort for the protection of his union of Indian tribes.

Builds Fort St. Louis on Starved Rock

Starved Rock is a rough cliff which rises one hundred thirty-five feet high, right out of the valley. Its sides are almost perpendicular. La Salle and his men cut away the trees on top and built storehouses, log huts, and a palisade. They named it Fort St. Louis. In the valley below, hundreds of Indians came and built their wigwams that they might be safe from their enemies, the Iroquois. Tonti was put in command of the fort.

La Salle's next step was to return to France and ask the king to plant a colony of Frenchmen at the mouth of the Mississippi River. The king agreed, and La Salle set sail for the Gulf of Mexico with a fleet of four ships and a colony of more than one hundred fifty persons (1684). But he missed the Mississippi and landed at Matagorda Bay in Texas. The colonists blamed La Salle. He tried in vain to find the Mississippi.

STARVED ROCK ON THE ILLINOIS RIVER

Many interesting Indian legends are connected with this rock, which stands one hundred thirty-five feet above the river below

La Salle misses the mouth of the Mississippi

Suffering and discontent increased until a party of La Salle's men lay in ambush and shot him, and left his body in the woods. More than a year went by before the faithful Tonti at Starved Rock heard of the sad fate of the great leader.

La Salle's death

The French king refused to send aid to the starving colonists in Texas, but the brave and heroic Tonti, though saddened by the death of La Salle, resolved to rescue them. His rescuing party suffered awful hardships. They deserted Tonti on the lower Mississippi, and he was at last forced to return to Starved Rock.

The heroic Tonti

THE MEN OF NEW FRANCE

62. Life of the Trapper, Jesuit Missionary, and Soldier of New France. For more than a hundred years after

the explorations of Joliet and La Salle the French in Canada sent trappers, missionaries, and soldiers into the new territory. The trappers lived on friendly terms with the Indians. They took shelter in the Indian wigwam and sat at the Indian camp fire. Together they searched the forest for game, and paddled up and down the rivers and lakes in the Indian canoes. They joined in the Indian sports, lived as the Indians lived, and often married the Indian maidens.

Men of New France lived as the Indians lived

The lives of the missionaries who went to preach among the Indians were full of self-sacrifice. They had great difficulties to overcome. The Indians were ignorant and hard to teach, but they treated the missionaries with respect and loved them for their kind deeds.

From the mouth of the St. Lawrence to the Gulf of Mexico the soldiers of New France built many forts. Their chief danger was from the Iroquois Indians, who sided with the English in the long years of war. Many times their settlements were destroyed, their forts burned. But they were courageous and determined. They went on with their work of establishing New France in America, fighting the English and the Indians, until 1759. Then Wolfe captured Quebec and New France became English territory.

Long years of war

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* La Salle was sent to complete the exploration of the Mississippi. *2.* La Salle made his way to the Gulf of Mexico and later built the fort at Starved Rock. *3.* The French sent trappers, missionaries, and soldiers into New France to strengthen it against the English. *4.* The French trappers lived on intimate terms with the Indians. *5.* With the fall of Quebec, England won New France.

Study Questions. *1.* Why was La Salle not satisfied

merely to get rich? *2.* Describe the first voyage on the Lakes. *3.* Find on the map the places named, from Mackinac to Fort Crèvecœur. *4.* How did La Salle reach the Mississippi? *5.* Picture Tonti's fort on Starved Rock. *6.* Tell the story of the fate of La Salle. *7.* What Indian tribe sided with the English? *8.* What was the effect of the fall of Quebec?

Suggested Readings. La Salle: Wright, *Children's Stories in American History*, 316–330; Pratt, *Later Colonial Period*, 1–28.

GEORGE WASHINGTON, THE FIRST GENERAL AND FIRST PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES

THE "FATHER OF HIS COUNTRY"

63. George Washington as a Boy. When Washington was born, February 22, 1732, in the old colony of Virginia, the early settlements had grown into towns, and planters had prospered. His father's house stood upon a gentle hill slope which ran down to the lazily flowing Potomac. Across the river one could see the wooded Maryland shore, broken with a few great farms and plantations.

Washington's birthday and birthplace

Washington's father owned more than one plantation, and had many negro slaves. He was also a partner in some iron mines, and once had been captain of a ship carrying iron ore to London. It was in London that he had fallen in love with Mary Ball, called, on account of her beauty, the "Rose of Epping Forest." She, too, was a Virginian, and she married Augustine Washington, and became the greatly revered mother of George.

The mother of Washington

When George was but three years old his parents moved to the plantation on the Rappahannock. Across the river, in the old town of Fredericksburg, George went to a school taught by the church sexton. Both teachers

School in Fredericksburg

and schools were scarce in Virginia then because the people lived miles apart on their great plantations.

THE BOYHOOD HOME OF WASHINGTON

Here on the site of the farmhouse, a slope on the river bank, stands the first monument erected to Washington, the bricks from the great chimney forming its foundation

In Washington's day the plantations were usually located on the rivers or bays. The rivers were the best roadways in those old times. Besides, the planter was glad to have the yearly ship from London stop at his door.

The yearly ship from London

The coming of the ship brought happy days to the young people, for it often brought furniture for the house and fine clothes for the family. Sometimes, too, it brought back some long-absent son or daughter, or letters from relatives in the old English home. Then there were the stories such as only sailors can tell.

When all the stores of tobacco and grain had been loaded, once more the great ship spread her wings and sailed away. Then many a Virginia boy longed to go on board and sail away, too.

Mary Washington

George's father died and left him, at the age of eleven, to the care of his mother. Mary Washington was a wise, firm mother, and always held the love and admiration of her children.

The eldest son in Virginia

According to the custom of those old Virginia days, the eldest son, Lawrence Washington, received the beautiful plantation on the Potomac, which he named Mount Vernon in honor of Admiral Vernon, an English naval

officer under whom he had fought in the West Indies.

To George fell a smaller plantation on the Rappahannock. He could hardly hope to go to England to study, but went to a school near his birthplace. Here he studied hard, mastering mathematics, and business papers of all sorts. The book into which he copied business letters, deeds, wills, and bills of sale and exchange shows how careful he was and how he mastered everything he undertook.

George studied hard and played hard

At school, George was a spirited leader in all outdoor sports. He outran, outjumped, as well as outwrestled all his comrades. He could throw farther than any of them. The story is told that he once threw a stone across the Rappahannock, and that at another time he threw a stone from the valley below to the top of the Natural Bridge, a distance of more than two hundred feet.

Playing war

Washington was captain when the boys played at war. Every boy among them expected to be a soldier some day. George listened to the stories told by his brother Lawrence, who had been a captain in the West Indies.

WASHINGTON DREAMING OF A SEAMAN'S LIFE

As a boy George Washington also learned many useful things outside of school. He became a skillful horseback rider, for every Virginia

A horseback rider

plantation had fine riding horses. People lived so far apart that they had to ride horseback when they visited each other and when they went to church or to town. Whether George rode a wild colt to "break" it, or whether he rode with his neighbors through woods and fields, jumping fences or swimming streams, or in a wild chase after the fox, he always kept his seat.

WASHINGTON'S SURVEYING INSTRUMENTS

A woodsman

Even while a boy Washington was learning the ways of a woodsman. With only a gun and a dog for companions, he made long trips into the deep, dark Virginia forests, where no road or path showed the way. He could cross rivers without bridge or boat, could build a shelter at night, could trap, and shoot, and cook over the fire by the side of which he slept. All this knowledge was soon put to use by Washington.

Washington wanted to be a sailor

WASHINGTON AS A WOODSMAN

When George was fourteen it was decided that he might "go to sea." No doubt he dreamed of the time when he should be a seaman, or perhaps an officer on one of the king's great war ships. But when all was ready, he gave up his plans to please his mother and went back to school. He now studied surveying, and was soon able to mark off the boundaries of farms and lay out roads.

George was now more and more at Mount Vernon, where he met many fine people. Among these visitors he admired most an old English nobleman, Lord Fairfax, who had come to spend the rest of his days beyond the Blue Ridge in the beautiful valley of the Shenandoah.

Lord Fairfax

64. Washington as Surveyor. Lord Fairfax was pleased with Washington, who was then tall, strong, active, and manly looking, although but sixteen years old. Accordingly, one spring Washington, with a number of companions, started over the mountains to survey the wild lands of Lord Fairfax.

A surveyor at sixteen

The trip was full of danger. There were no roads, bridges, or houses after the party reached the mountains; but deep rivers, wild animals, and savage Indians were plentiful. Some nights they slept in rude huts, other nights in tents, but more often under the stars and around the camp fire. One night they saw a party of Indians dance their wild war dance to the music of a rude drum, made by stretching a hide over a pot, and to the noise of a rattle, made by putting shot in a gourd.

Life in the Shenandoah in 1748

THE SURVEYING PARTY AT AN INDIAN WAR DANCE

Within a month Washington was back with maps and figures showing what lands

Work well done

belonged to Lord Fairfax. Few men could have done better, and a warm friendship grew up between this white-haired English nobleman and the young Virginian. Lord Fairfax immediately built a great hunting lodge in the Shenandoah, near where Winchester is, and named it Greenway Court. It became a favorite visiting place for many Virginians.

WASHINGTON SURVEYING LORD FAIRFAX'S LANDS

Washington had done his work so well that Lord Fairfax had him made a public surveyor, and invited him to make Greenway Court his headquarters.

A public surveyor

For three years Washington was hard at work in that western wilderness marking out the lands of settlers. It was a rough but health-giving life and made his bones and muscles strong. He had to take many risks and face many dangers.

Once he wrote to a friend: "Since you received my letter in October I have not slept above three or four nights in a bed; but, after walking a great deal all the day, I have lain down upon a little hay, straw, fodder, or a bear skin, whichever was to be had, with man, wife, and children, like dogs and cats, and happy is he who gets the berth nearest the fire."

At Greenway Court

But the young surveyor was often at Greenway Court taking part in its pastimes, or spending his time in sober

conversation with Lord Fairfax, or in reading the books on history which were found in his friend's library.

65. Washington as a Soldier against the French. Suddenly Washington's whole life was changed. His brother Lawrence died and left to George the care of his only daughter, and the beautiful Mount Vernon home. At the age of twenty Washington found himself at the head of two large plantations. But he had hardly begun his new duties before he was called to serve his governor and the king.

Heavy responsibility at twenty

The French in Canada were building a chain of outposts from Lake Erie into Pennsylvania to the headwaters of the Ohio River so that they might have a shorter route to their trading posts on the Mississippi. Governor Dinwiddie of Virginia had sent orders for them to get out of the country, but his messenger did not get within a hundred miles of the French soldiers.

GREENWAY COURT, THE VIRGINIA HOME OF LORD FAIRFAX

Surmounting the broad, sweeping roof, pierced by dormer windows, were two belfries, doubtless designed for bells to call the settlers together when an Indian uprising was feared

It was probably Lord Fairfax who said to the govenor: "Here is the very man for you; young and daring, but sober minded and responsible, who only lacks opportunity to show the stuff that is in him."

George Washington sent to order the French out of Virginia territory

In October, 1753, Washington, not then twenty-two, set out with servants, horses, and two companions for the French posts. One companion was the old Dutch soldier who had taught Washington to use the sword, and the other was the famous backwoodsman, Christopher Gist. They pushed on through deep forests, over the mountains, across swift rivers, to the Indian village near where Pittsburgh now stands. From there Washington hurried on to the fort on French Creek.

The French commander received him with great politeness, and tried to keep him many days. But Washington saw that the French were really preparing to fight to hold this "gateway to the West."

The trip back to Virginia

The Frenchmen very politely said that they intended to hold that region at all hazard. Washington and his party at once started back with the answer.

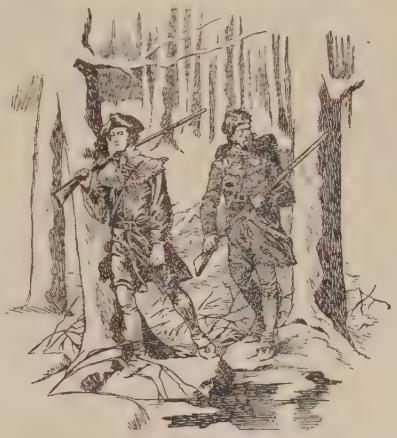
Washington's party traveled through rain and snow, hurrying through dense forests where savages lurked ready to scalp them. An Indian shot at Washington, but missed him. Their horses gave out, and Washington and Gist plunged into the forest alone, on foot, anxious to lose no time. At last they reached Williamsburg.

Washington cuts a road over the mountains

War now seemed certain, and the governor hurried Washington forward with about one hundred fifty men to cut a road through the forests and over the mountains. But the French had already reached and built Fort Duquesne, where the Ohio is formed, and were then hurrying forward a party to look for the English. Just

after Washington's men crossed the mountains they surprised the French scouts, killed their commander, and took the rest prisoners. Young Washington wrote home that he had heard the whistle of bullets and liked the music.

He wins one battle, and loses another



WASHINGTON ON HIS WAY BACK FROM THE FRENCH POSTS

Although Washington's company soon grew to three hundred fifty men, he built Fort Necessity, for a French force numbering four times his own was now close upon him. A battle followed. Standing knee deep in mud and water, the English fired all day at the hidden foe. Their ammunition was about gone, and their men were falling. Washington surrendered the fort, and the little army, with sad hearts, started home along their newly made road.

66. Washington and Braddock. But these were stirring times in Virginia, for an English general, Braddock, had come up the Potomac; and soldiers, cannon, and supplies were passing right by the doors of Mount Vernon. Every day Washington looked upon the king's soldiers, and saw the flash of sword and bayonet. How could he keep out of it? General Braddock liked the young Virginian, and made him an officer on his staff.

Washington joins Braddock's army

Braddock was a brave man, but he had never made war in the woods, or against Indians. One day Washington suggested that a long train of heavily loaded wagons would make the march very, very slow. He was thinking

of Indians. Braddock only smiled, as if to say that a young backwoodsman could not teach him how to fight.

Braddock too vain to take good advice

Benjamin Franklin, a very wise man from Philadelphia, was also troubled when he thought of how the Indians and French would cut to pieces that long line of troops as they marched through the deep, dark forests. Braddock smiled again, and said: "These savages may be dangerous to the raw American militia, but it is impossible that they should make any impression on the king's troops."

The army, over two thousand strong, slowly crossed the mountains, and by July had almost reached Fort Duquesne. One day nearly one thousand French and Indians swarmed on both sides of the road, and from behind the safe cover of trees poured a deadly fire upon Braddock's men. "God save the king!" cried the British soldiers, as they formed in line of battle.

A VIRGINIA RIFLEMAN

A great defeat

Washington urged Braddock to permit the English to take to the trees and fight Indian fashion, as the Virginians were doing, but Braddock forced his men to stand and be shot down by the unseen foe. Braddock himself was mortally wounded. Washington had two horses shot under him and his clothes pierced by four bullets. The British regulars soon ran madly back upon the soldiers in the rear. They threw away guns and left their cannon and wagons, while the

Virginians under Washington kept the Indians back. The British army retreated to Philadelphia, but Wash-

WASHINGTON AND THE VIRGINIANS SAVE BRADDOCK'S ARMY

Washington thanked for his bravery by the Burgesses

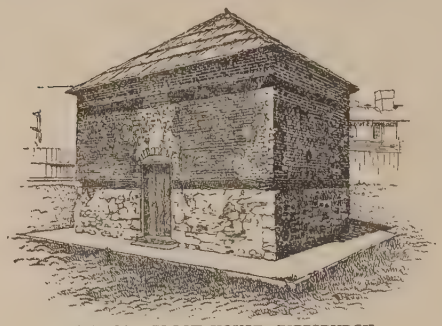
ington returned to Virginia, where he received the thanks of the Burgesses. He at once collected troops, and hastened into the Shenandoah Valley to protect the settlers from the French and Indians.

Colonel Washington visits Boston

The next year (1756) Washington journeyed on horseback to Boston. He wore his colonel's uniform of buff and blue, with a white and scarlet cloak over his shoulders. At his side hung a fine sword. With him rode two aids in uniform, besides two servants. Many an admiring eye was turned toward this stately young cavalier. After this journey he returned to the frontier, near Greenway Court, and remained there a year or two more.

67. Washington Meets his Future Wife. One day while on his way to Williamsburg with war dispatches, Washington halted at a plantation to take dinner with a friend. There he was introduced to Mrs. Martha Custis, a charming young widow of his own age.

Washington introduced to Martha Custis



THE OLD BLOCK HOUSE, PITTSBURGH
Still standing to-day in the heart of the city, formed part of Fort Pitt

After dinner the conversation with her was too interesting for the young officer to see the horses being led back and forth near the window. The horses were stabled again. After supper Washington was not yet ready to mount. Not until late in the afternoon next day did he mount and ride away with all speed for the capital. On his return he visited Mrs. Custis at her own beautiful plantation, and did not leave until he had her promise of marriage.

Great armies were already gathering. William Pitt, who sent Wolfe to capture Quebec, also ordered General Forbes to march against Fort Duquesne. But it was November before the army reached the Ohio. The French and Indians had nearly all gone to fight on the St. Lawrence, and the place was easily captured. It is said that Washington himself ran up the English flag. The fort's name was changed to Fort Pitt.

Wolfe made it easy to capture Fort Duquesne

68. Old Days in Virginia. Washington now hastened home to claim his bride. To the wedding came the new royal governor in scarlet and gold, and the king's officers in bright uniforms. There, too, came the great planters

A Virginia wedding

with their wives dressed in the best that the yearly ship could bring from London. The bride rode home in a coach drawn by six beautiful horses, while Washington, well mounted, rode by the side of the coach, attended by many friends on horseback.

Elected to the House of Burgesses

The hardy settlers of the frontier, grateful to their brave defender, had already elected him to represent them in the House of Burgesses. He was proud to take his young wife to the meeting of the Burgesses when the old capital town was at its gayest, and when the planters came pouring in to attend the governor's reception.

Washington had already taken his seat among the Burgesses when the speaker arose and, in a very eloquent speech, praised him and presented him the thanks of the

A RECEPTION AT THE GOVERNOR'S

At these receptions gay cavaliers and high-born ladies trod the stately minuet or danced the famous Virginia reel

Too confused to make a speech

House for his gallant deeds as a soldier. Washington was so confused to hear himself so highly praised that, when he arose to reply, he could not say a word. "Sit down, Mr. Washington," said the speaker, "your modesty is equal to your valor, and that surpasses any language that I possess."

Washington took his young bride to Mount Vernon, and there began the life that he enjoyed far more than the life of a soldier. He felt a deep interest in everything on the plantation. Early every morning he visited his stables and his kennel, for he liked horses and dogs very much. He then mounted a spirited horse and rode over his plantation to look at the growing fields of tobacco or wheat, or at the work of his slaves.

When the king's inspectors in the West Indies and in London saw barrels of flour marked "George Washington, Mount Vernon," they let them pass without examining them, for they were always good. He looked after his own and his wife's plantations so well that in a few years he was one of the richest men in America.

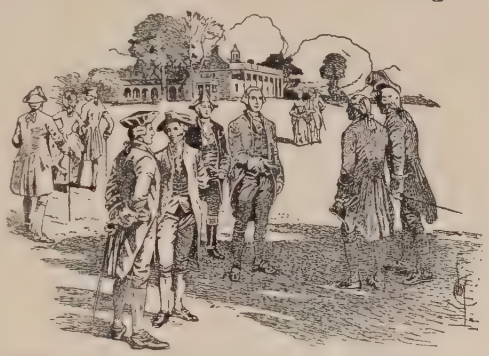
Old Mount Vernon days

FOX HUNTING IN VIRGINIA

In some sections of our country this popular sport of the Virginia colonists is still followed as in the days of George and Martha Washington

But besides such duties, there were many simple pleasures to be enjoyed at Mount Vernon. Here his soldier friends always found a warm welcome. Lord Fairfax

and other Virginia gentlemen went often to Mount Vernon to enjoy a fox chase. Sometimes Mrs. Washington and the ladies rode with dash and courage after the hounds. Now and then boating parties on the wide Potomac were the order of the day. Many times the halls and grounds of Mount Vernon rang with the shouts and laughter of younger people, guests, who had come from miles around, for George and Martha Washington were young in spirit.



SCENE AT MOUNT VERNON IN THE DAYS OF WASHINGTON

69. The Mutterings of War. One day in June, 1765, Washington came back from Williamsburg and told his family and neighbors about the bold resolutions and fiery speech of a rustic-looking member named Patrick Henry. He said that many of the older members opposed Henry. Washington took Henry's side, but his friends, the Fairfaxes, took the king's side in favor of the Stamp Act.

Washington took sides with Patrick Henry

When the king put a tax on tea, Washington and many of his neighbors signed an agreement not to buy any more tea of England until the tax was taken off. When he heard that Samuel Adams and the "Mohawks" had thrown the tea into Boston Harbor, he knew that exciting times would soon be at hand.

The very next year the king ordered more soldiers to go to Boston and put in force the Boston Port Bill and other unjust laws. The colonies saw the danger, and

Sent to the Continental Congress

sent their best men to hold the first Continental Congress at Philadelphia. Virginia sent George Washington, Patrick Henry, Richard Henry Lee, and other great men. Washington, however, was not an orator, and made no speech in the Congress, as others did. He was a man of deeds. His time had not yet come.

A youthful colonel

Many persons were surprised to find him so young, for twenty years before they had heard of his deeds against the French, and how he had saved the broken pieces of Braddock's army. A member of Congress declared that "if you speak of solid information, and of sound judgment, Colonel Washington is unquestionably the greatest man on the floor."

WASHINGTON DRILLING HIS VIRGINIANS

The Congress, among other things, resolved to stand by Boston, if General Gage should make war on that town. Washington knew what that meant. He was not at home many months before he was busy drilling his brave Virginians, many of whom had been with him in the French and Indian War.

In Congress again

70. Washington Made Commander of the American Armies. In the last days of April, 1775, the news of the fight at Lexington and Concord was spreading rapidly southward. Washington, dressed in the buff and blue uniform of a Virginia colonel, hurried to Philadelphia to the meeting of the second Continental Congress. His

day had come. It was now a time for deeds. The American army that surrounded Gage in Boston must have a head. John Adams arose in Congress and said that for the place of commander he had "but one gentleman in mind—a gentleman from Virginia—whose skill and experience as an officer, whose independent fortune, great talents, and excellent universal character would command the approbation of all America, and unite the colonies better than any other person in the Union."

What John Adams said

Before all these words were spoken, Washington, much moved, had left the room. Congress elected him unanimously to be commander in chief of its armies. When he accepted the honor, he said: "I beg it may be remembered by every gentleman in this room, that I this day declare, with the utmost sincerity, I do not think myself equal to the command I am honored with."

What Washington said to Congress and wrote to his wife

Washington wrote immediately to his wife: "You may believe me, my dear Patsey, that so far from seeking this appointment, I have used every endeavor in my power to avoid it, not only from my own unwillingness to part from you and the family, but from the consciousness of its being a trust too great for my capacity." Great men are often the most modest.

Washington was soon on the way to Boston by the very route he had gone nearly twenty years before. But how different the journey! Then he was a Virginia colonel. Now he was the honored commander of all the American armies. Then only a few friends were with him. Now congressmen, citizens of Philadelphia, and great crowds cheered him on the way. Only twenty

On the way to take command

News from Bunker Hill

miles out from Philadelphia, they met the news from Bunker Hill. When Washington heard how the Americans faced the British bayonets, and twice forced the Redcoats to retreat, he exclaimed: "The liberties of the country are safe!"

Through New Jersey he was hailed by the people with delight. A military procession escorted him through New York City, where he appointed that noble general, Philip Schuyler, to take command in New York. The students at Yale gave him a real college welcome—a parade with a band and student songs.

Took command of the army, July 3, 1775

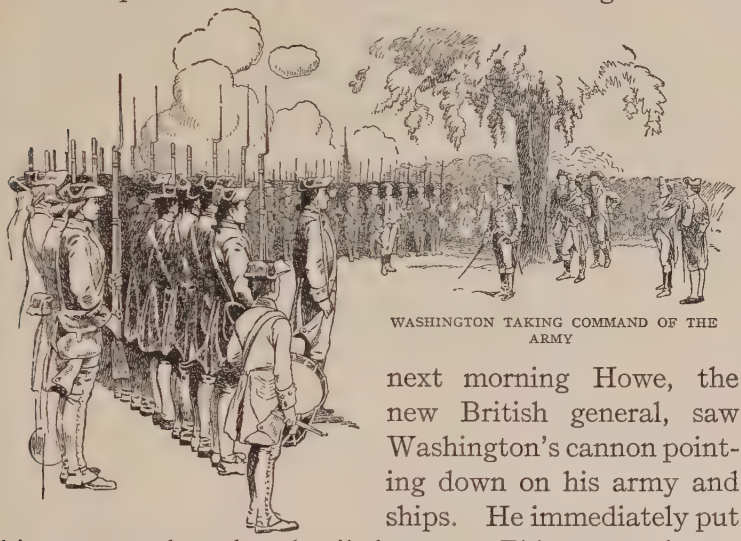
On Cambridge Common, under the famous Harvard Elm, on July 3, 1775, Washington drew his sword and took command of the Continental army. There was a great task before him. He had to drill the troops, collect cannon from Ticonderoga, which Americans had cap-

A COLLEGE WELCOME AT YALE

tured, and get ready to drive the British out of Boston.

It took all winter to do these things. One night in

March, 1776, Washington secretly sent some of his best troops to build a fort on Dorchester Heights. The



WASHINGTON TAKING COMMAND OF THE ARMY

next morning Howe, the new British general, saw Washington's cannon pointing down on his army and ships. He immediately put his army on board and sailed away. This was a victory without a fight.

A bloodless victory

Washington took his army to New York, and built a fort on Long Island to protect the city. He was none too quick, for Howe came with thirty thousand men and many war ships.

Washington outwits Howe

In the battle on Long Island a part of Washington's army was defeated. General Howe planned to capture the defeated troops next day, but Washington was too shrewd. In the night he collected all the boats in that region and rowed his army over to New York before the British knew what he was doing.

The great British army and fleet took the city, but by the help of a patriotic lady, Mrs. Murray, who entertained General Howe and his officers too long for their

New York captured

own good, all of Washington's regiments got away safely up the Hudson. During the fall of 1776, General Howe tried to get above Washington's army and capture it. But he did neither, for Washington's troops defeated the British both at Harlem Heights and at White Plains.

ENTERTAINING GENERAL HOWE AND HIS OFFICERS

At Murray Hill, then a great farmstead, now the heart of New York City, Mrs. Murray entertained them so delightfully two hours slipped away, and the Americans were out of reach

While at Harlem Heights Washington felt that he must learn some secrets about the enemy. Nathan Hale, a young officer, volunteered to bring General Washington the information he wanted; but Hale was caught by the British and hanged. "I only regret," he said, "that I have but one life to lose for my country."

Heroic Nathan Hale

Howe then turned back as if to march against Philadelphia and capture Congress. Washington quickly threw a part of his army across the Hudson into New Jersey, but he had to retreat. The British followed in a hot chase across New Jersey. Washington crossed the Delaware, and took with him all the boats for many miles up and down the river. The British decided to wait till they could cross on the ice. Some of their generals thought the war was about over, and hastened back to New York to spend the Christmas holidays.

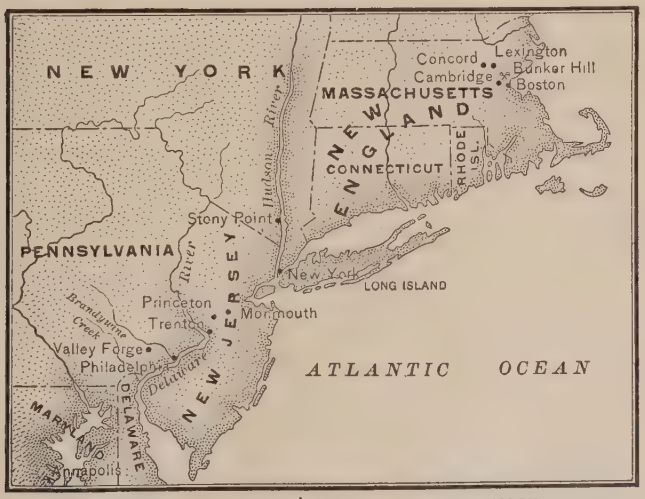
Washington retreats, but fights

71. The People Did Not Know Washington. Those were, indeed, dark days for the Americans. Hundreds of Washington's soldiers had gone home discouraged, and many other faint-hearted Americans thought the cause lost, and were again promising obedience to George III. But the people did not yet know Washington.

Americans discouraged

On Christmas night, with two thousand five hundred picked men, Washington took to his boats, and crossed the Delaware in spite of the floating ice. Nine miles away, in Trenton, lay the Hessians, those soldiers from Hesse-Cassel, in Europe, whom George III had hired to fight his American subjects, because Englishmen refused to fight Americans.

On went the little army in spite of the biting cold and



SCENE OF WASHINGTON'S CAMPAIGNS IN THE NORTH

the blinding snow. During this fearful night two men froze to death and many others were numb with cold.

"Our guns are wet," said an officer. "Then use the bayonet!" replied Washington. There was a sudden

WASHINGTON ON THE MARCH TO TRENTON

All night, thinly clad, many without shoes and with bleeding feet, over the frozen ground, on marched the shivering men, bringing at daybreak disaster to the Hessians asleep after their Christmas revels

An early morning surprise

rush of tramping feet and the roar of cannon in the streets. The Hessian general was killed, and one thousand of his men surrendered.

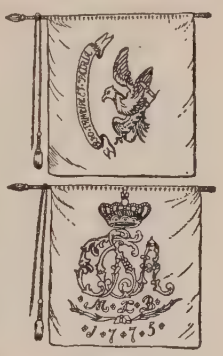
These were a strange lot of prisoners. Not one could speak a word of English or cared a thing for George III. No doubt they wished themselves at home on that morning. But the Hessians were not more surprised than the British generals in New York.

Washington outwits another English general

Cornwallis, the British commander, hurried forward with troops to capture Washington, but rested his army at Trenton. That night Washington's army stole away, and Cornwallis awoke in the morning to hear the booming of Washington's cannon at Princeton, where

Washington was defeating another part of the British army. Cornwallis hastened to Princeton. It was too late. Washington was safe among the heights of Morristown, where Cornwallis did not dare attack him.

These two victories turned the tide and aroused the Americans. Reënforcements and supplies made Washington's army stronger and more comfortable.



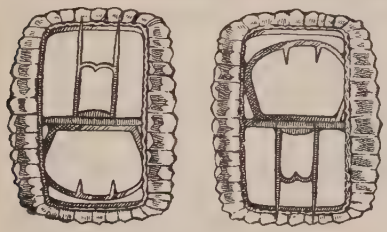
HESSIAN FLAG

From a photo of the flag taken by Washington from the Hessians at Trenton and now in the museum at Alexandria

The next spring (1777) General Howe decided to capture Philadelphia. But Washington boldly moved his army across Howe's line of march. Howe did not want to fight, so he put his army on board his ships, sailed around into the Chesapeake, landed, and marched for the "rebel capital," as the British called Philadelphia.

Washington and Howe meet at the Brandywine

At Brandywine Creek, south of Philadelphia, Washington faced him. A severe battle was fought. Each side lost about one thousand men. The Americans slowly retreated. In this battle Lafayette, a young French nobleman, was wounded. Lafayette had heard in France how the American farmers had beaten the king's regulars at Lexington, and he had made up his mind to go to help them. On his arrival Congress had made Lafayette a general in the Continental army.



KNEE BUCKLES WORN BY GENERAL WASHINGTON

72. The Winter at Valley Forge. After the battle at Brandywine Creek the British slowly made their way to

Valley Forge

Philadelphia. Washington took post for the winter at Valley Forge, on the Schuylkill River, twenty miles northwest of Philadelphia. There, in the deep woods among the hills, and in log huts built by their own hands, the American forces passed a winter so full of suffering that it makes one shudder to read the story.

What the soldiers suffered for independence

When the army marched into Valley Forge, "their route could be traced on the snow by the blood that oozed from their bare, frost-bitten feet." Washington wrote to Congress that nearly three thousand of his men were "barefoot or otherwise naked."

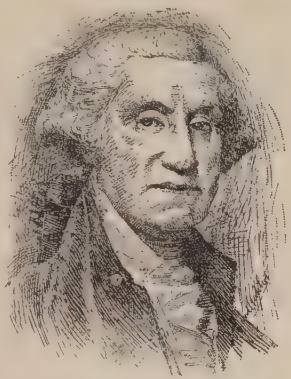
A part of the army had no bread for three days, and for two days no meat. Hundreds had no beds, and gladly slept on piles of straw. Others had no blankets, and sat up nights before the fire to keep from freezing. Many sickened and died. But in Philadelphia the well-fed British soldiers had a gay season, with balls and banquets.

Washington grieved over the suffering of his men, but never lost heart. All the long winter through, with the aid of General Steuben, a noble German officer, he drilled his men. In the spring when the British started back to New York, he gave them such a bayonet charge at Monmouth, New Jersey (1778), they were glad to escape that night, instead of stopping to rest and bury their dead.

Steuben helps drill the men

CAMP AT VALLEY FORGE

73. The Crowning Victory at Yorktown. For the next three years the British army remained in New York, not daring to come out and attack Washington.



GEORGE WASHINGTON

From the Gibbs-Channing portrait painted by Gilbert Stuart, the first portrait of Washington, now in the possession of Samuel P. Avery, of New York

Finally, in the summer of 1781, General Lafayette, who had now recovered from his wound, and had fought with the Americans at Monmouth, was sent to Virginia by Washington to watch the British army there. Lafayette sent Washington word that Cornwallis had come up from the Carolinas, and had taken post at Yorktown. After receiving more soldiers, Lafayette followed Cornwallis to Yorktown and stationed his army near that place. Washington also got word that a large French war fleet was coming to the coast of Virginia to aid the Americans. This fleet had been sent to aid the Americans by the King of France. Washington also had six thousand fine French troops under the command of General Rochambeau. This aid had been secured through the influence of Lafayette, who had visited his home in France in 1779.

Good news from Lafayette

Washington now saw his chance. He ordered Lafayette to watch Cornwallis while he himself took two thousand ragged Continentals and four thousand French troops in bright uniforms, and slipped away from New York. He was almost in Philadelphia before the British or his own soldiers could guess where he was going.

Washington again outwits Cornwallis

At Yorktown, Washington and his army found both

Lafayette and the French fleet keeping watch. Day and night the siege went on amid the roar of cannon. When all was ready, then came the wild charge of the Americans and the French in the face of British cannon and over British breastworks. The outer works were won, and Cornwallis saw that he must surrender. Seven

THE SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS

After the painting by John Trumbull which hangs in the rotunda of the Capitol at Washington

thousand of the king's troops marched out and gave up their arms.

Cornwallis surrenders

The victory at Yorktown made all Americans happy, and they rang bells, fired cannon, built bonfires, and praised Washington and Lafayette. But England was now tired of war, and many of her great men declared in favor of peace, which was soon made, in 1783.

74. Washington Bids Farewell to his Officers and to Congress. Washington bade farewell to his brave soldiers, with whom he had fought so long. The parting with his officers in Fraunces' Tavern, New York, was

A touching scene

a touching scene. With tears in his eyes, and with a voice full of tenderness, he embraced each one as he bade him good-by. It was like the parting of a father from his sons.

WASHINGTON'S RESIGNATION
After the painting by Trumbull in the Capitol at Washington

Washington now journeyed to Annapolis, Maryland, where Congress was then held, to give back the authority of commander in chief which Congress had bestowed on him eight years before. How unselfish had been the conduct of Washington in refusing pay for his services! How noble was the act of giving up his power over an army which idolized him, and which he might have used to make himself king! But he did not think of these things as he hastened to his beautiful Mount Vernon to enjoy Christmas time once more with his loved ones.

A noble act

MOUNT VERNON, THE HOME OF WASHINGTON

But what a change had come to Virginia! Eight years before George III was king over all the Thirteen Colonies, and Virginia was ruled by one of his governors. Now the people were ruling themselves, and

How the war had changed things

had elected one of Washington's neighbors, Benjamin Harrison, to be their governor. He missed some old friends. Some had died on the field of battle; others, like Lord Fairfax, had gone back to England, where they could be ruled by George III. Soon visitors began to come—old soldiers, beloved generals, and great statesmen from America, as well as distinguished people from Europe. They all wanted the honor of visiting the man who had led the American armies to victory, but who again, was only a Virginia planter.

Many people visit Washington

75. Lafayette Visits Washington. The year after peace was made Lafayette came back to America to visit General Washington. There were great times at Mount Vernon. Washington, Lafayette, and other noble men sat around the table and there told stories of their struggles and of their triumphs.

LAFAYETTE AT MOUNT VERNON
After a painting by Rossiter and Mignot

Lafayette visited many other places and received a warm welcome wherever he went; he had taken active part in many battles of the Revolution; his blood had flowed for the American cause. At Monmouth he had saved the Americans from retreat by sending for Washington. He had had an important part in the crowning victory at Yorktown. The Americans loved and admired him, and did all in their power to show their gratitude. Many years after, on another visit to America, Congress voted him two hundred thousand dollars and twenty-four thousand acres of land as a reward for his great services.

76. Washington Elected First President. The American people would not let Washington long enjoy Mount Vernon, for when they met to make a new constitution, or plan of government, he was chairman of the meeting, and when that government was to go into operation they would have no other man for their first president than George Washington.

Another call to duty

In 1789 he once more bade Mount Vernon and his aged mother good-by, and began the journey to New York, which was at that time the capital of the new nation. What a journey! It was almost one continual procession and celebration! At every town and roadside the people came to show their love for Washington, whom they rightly called the "Father of his Country." School children scattered flowers in his way and beautiful young women sang patriotic songs as he passed under decorated arches. When he reached New York Harbor the bay was white with the sails of many nations. Crowds thronged the streets, cannon boomed, and flags were thrown to the breeze to welcome him.

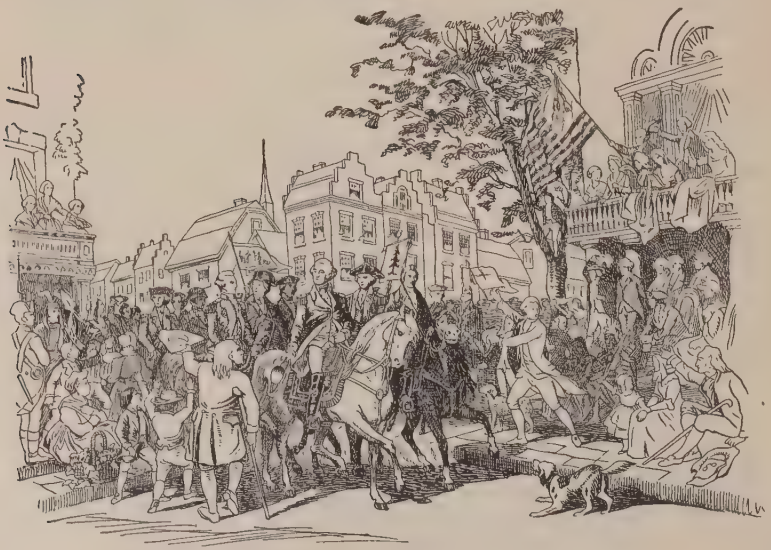
A triumphal procession from Mount Vernon to New York

On April 30, 1789, standing on the balcony of Federal

Washington takes the oath as first president

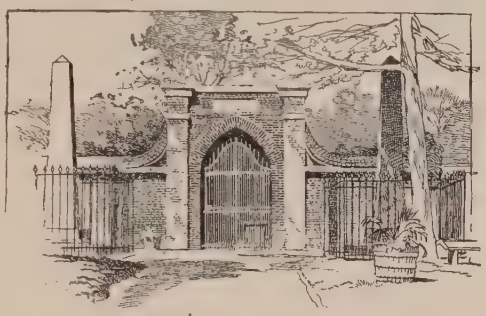
Hall in Wall Street, Washington took the oath of office, and pledged himself to govern the people according to the Constitution they had just made. He reverently bent and kissed the Bible, and became the first President of the United States. From the street, from doors and windows and from the housetops, the people cried out: "Long live George Washington, President of the United States!"

His new office was almost as hard a task as the Revolution had been. He was now in charge of the affairs of the country. He had to see to it that laws were made to protect the rights of every one. Then he had to see that these laws were carried out. He could not guide himself by what another president had done, for there had been none before him.



WASHINGTON'S GRAND ENTRY INTO NEW YORK CITY, 1789
From a chromo-lithograph after an original drawing by Alphonse Bigot

But Washington directed the new ship of state so that it suffered no harm. When it looked as though we would have another war with England, he wisely preserved peace. So well were the people satisfied that they made him president a second time. When they offered him the office for a third term he refused. Thousands gathered to see him leave the capital. As he gave them his final farewell, tears rolled down his cheeks, and men cried like children.



WASHINGTON'S TOMB, MOUNT VERNON

He was glad to get back to Mount Vernon, for he had grown old and weary in serving his country. He spent his remaining years among the scenes he loved so well. There he died in 1799, mourned as a father by the whole people.

Death in 1799

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Washington was born on the Potomac, spent his early days on the Rappahannock, and went to school at Fredericksburg. *2.* He learned many things outside of school, such as horseback riding, fox hunting, and how to find his way in the deep forests. *3.* He became a surveyor in the Shenandoah for Lord Fairfax. *4.* Governor Dinwiddie sent Washington to order the French to leave the Ohio. *5.* Washington joined Braddock's campaign against the French, and in the battle tried to save the army. *6.* Washington married young Mrs. Martha Custis, and was elected to the House of Burgesses. *7.* Heard Patrick Henry's fiery speech, went to first Continental Congress, and the second Congress made him commander over the Continental army.

8. Washington drove the British out of Boston, outwitted them around New York, retreated across the Jerseys, and then beat them at Trenton and Princeton. *9.* He fought at Brandywine, suffered at Valley Forge, penned the British up in New York, and finally captured Cornwallis at Yorktown. *10.* Washington gave up his command and retired to Mount Vernon, but was called to be the first president of the new republic.

Study Questions. *1.* Who was Washington's father and where did he meet Washington's mother? *2.* What was a plantation and why so large? *3.* What things did Washington love to do besides study? *4.* Why did George make a good captain? *5.* Picture the yearly ship from London at Mount Vernon. *6.* Who was Lord Fairfax and what did he engage Washington to do? *7.* What did Washington do at Greenway Court? *8.* Why was Washington chosen for the mission to the French, and what was the result? *9.* What were the preliminary events before the great war? *10.* Picture Braddock's defeat. *11.* How old was Washington when he first visited Boston? *12.* How did he become so rich? *13.* What news did Washington bring back to Mount Vernon in 1765? *14.* Who went to Congress with George Washington, and how did a member speak of him? *15.* What did he learn at Congress? *16.* Picture the scene in the second Congress. *17.* Describe the trip to Boston. *18.* What task did he set before himself, and how did he accomplish it? *19.* How did Washington outwit Howe? *20.* Who was Nathan Hale? *21.* What discouraged the Americans? *22.* Picture the surprise and capture of the Hessians. *23.* How did Washington outwit Cornwallis? *24.* What effect did these victories have? *25.* What sort of a time did the soldiers spend at Valley Forge? *26.* Who was Steuben, and what did he do? *27.* How did Lafayette aid Washington? *28.* Picture the surrounding and capture of Cornwallis. *29.* What changes had the war made in Virginia? *30.* In what way did Congress honor Lafayette? *31.* Picture Washington's journey to New York.

Suggested Readings. WASHINGTON: Cooke, *Stories of the Old Dominion*, 94–139; Blaisdell and Ball, *Hero Stories from American History*, 62–76, 123–155; Hart, *Camps and Firesides of the Revolution*, 239–255, 261–266, 307–309; Glascock, *Stories*

of Columbia, 101–113; Baldwin, *Four Great Americans*, 9–68; Hart, *How our Grandfathers Lived*, 45–47; Mabie, *Heroes Every Child Should Know*, 274–288; Hawthorne, *Grandfather's Chair*, 186–191; Magell, *Stories from Virginia History*, 56–78, 79–94; Brooks, *True Story of Lafayette;* Wister, *The Seven Ages of Washington;* Mace, *George Washington: A Virginia Cavalier.*

THE MAN WHO HELPED WIN INDEPENDENCE BY WINNING THE HEARTS OF FRENCHMEN FOR AMERICA

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, THE WISEST AMERICAN OF HIS TIME

77. Benjamin Franklin, the Boy Printer. When Franklin was born in Boston (1706) there were men still living who had seen John Winthrop, the first governor of Massachusetts, and Roger Williams, the founder of Rhode Island.

Born in colonial times

Franklin's father was a poor but hard-working man. He made soap and candles. Benjamin's nine brothers had learned trades, but his parents had decided that he should be the "scholar of the family." At eight he went to school to prepare for college and was soon at the head of his class.

The scholar of the family

But it was hard to feed and clothe a family of seventeen, and Benjamin was sent to another school where he could fit himself for business. But he did poorly in arithmetic, and at ten was taken out of school and put to work with his father.

Put to work

In the port of Boston Franklin saw the ships and sailors of all nations, and longed to go to sea, but his father took him to visit the shops, where he saw men busy at work with all kinds of tools. Although Benjamin liked to

Longs for the sea

work with tools, he liked to read better, and spent all his little earnings in buying books. He borrowed books when he could not buy them.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN
From the original portrait by Joseph Siffrein Duplessis, in the Museum of Fine Arts, Boston

Finally Franklin's parents decided that since he loved books so well he might be a printer, and put him to learn the trade with an older brother. Benjamin was to serve his brother for his board and clothes until he was twenty-one. He worked hard at his trade, and read more books than before. He improved his own language by writing out in his own words what he had read, and then comparing his account with the author's.

How he improved his language

He now offered to take half the money that his board cost, and board himself. His brother agreed to this plan, and Benjamin saved money and bought more books.

He longed to write something for his brother's paper. He did so, and put it at night under the door, but he did not dare sign his name to what he had written. His brother showed it to his friends. They praised it, and it was printed. It was fun for Benjamin to hear people guessing that the writer must be some great man in Boston. Franklin wrote several other articles, and called them the "Dogood Papers," but his brother was angry when he learned who wrote them.

Writes for his brother's paper

Franklin was now only seventeen, but because of his

brother's cruelty he sold his books and took a boat for New York without saying good-by to his parents. He afterwards said that leaving home in this way was a great mistake.

Leaves home

No one in New York wanted a printer, so young Franklin took a boat for Perth-Amboy, New Jersey, on his way to Philadelphia. His ship was caught in a storm, and the passengers were wet and hungry when they landed.

From New York to Philadelphia

Franklin set out on foot across the state for Burlington. For nearly three days he walked in the rain along muddy roads, looking so rough people thought he was a runaway servant. He was tired and homesick. But he took boat again, and reached Philadelphia on Sunday morning, landing at the foot of Market Street.

He was so hungry, he thought more of something to eat than of dressing up for Sunday. He was in a sorry plight. With his pockets stuffed with soiled shirts and stockings, and a roll of bread under each arm and one in his hand, Franklin walked up Market Street, and passed the home of his future wife, Deborah Reed. No wonder she laughed at him. She would have laughed more if some one had said: "There goes a boy who will some day become

His sorry plight

FRANKLIN AND DEBORAH REED
The first meeting of Franklin and the young girl who was to be his wife

your husband and the greatest man in Philadelphia."

Good books and good company

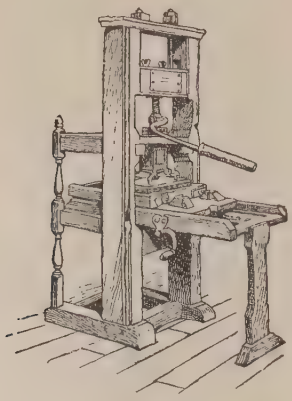
Franklin found work in a printing office, saved his money, and bought books to study. He got acquainted with other young people who also loved books, and he often spent his evenings with them.

A call from the governor

To the surprise of Franklin and his brother printers, one day Sir William Keith, the governor of Pennsylvania, called at the shop to see Franklin. Governors did not then pay much attention to poor printers. The governor, who was dissatisfied with Philadelphia printers, promised to send him to England to buy a printing press.

Returns home before going to London

Franklin, with the governor's letter in his pocket, hastened back to Boston in order to get his father's help to go to London. How happy were parents, brothers, and sisters to see the long-absent son and brother! But his father could give him no aid, and the young printer returned to Philadelphia. The governor, however, promised to pay his expenses, and Benjamin took ship for England.



PRINTING PRESS

From a photo of the press used by Franklin when in London, and now in the National Museum, Washington, D.C.

The governor had not even given him letters of introduction, to say nothing of money, and Franklin found himself a stranger in one of the largest cities in the world.

In a London printing office

He did not whine or spend his time grumbling, but went bravely to work in a printing office. He set a good example to his beer-drinking comrades by

drinking only water and proving he was stronger and able to do more work and do it better than any of them.

Returns to Philadelphia and marries

The next year a Philadelphia merchant persuaded Franklin to return to America to become his clerk. But in a few years he went to work again at his old trade as printer, and in a short time became the editor of the *Pennsylvania Gazette*.

Franklin had already married Miss Reed, the young lady who had laughed at him for making a show of himself on his first day in Philadelphia.

A FRANKLIN STOVE

After a model in the rooms of the American Philosophical Society, Philadelphia

78. A Rising Young Man. He was now a rising young man in the old Quaker city. From year to year he did many things to help others. He started a circulating library, the first in America, out of which has grown the Philadelphia Public Library. He founded a school which has become the great University of Pennsylvania, and a society, called the American Philosophical Society, which still holds important meetings.

Founds three great institutions

Franklin improved the heating of houses by inventing the "Franklin stove," but refused to take out a patent and thus make himself rich at other people's expense. He also formed the first "fire department" in any American town.

Invents a stove

Forms the first fire department

Who has not heard of *Poor Richard's Almanac?* Franklin printed it, and the people liked it so well that he sometimes printed ten thousand copies. Here are a few of the quaint and true sayings: "A word to the wise

Poor Richard's sayings

is enough." "God helps those who help themselves."

"Early to bed and early to rise,
Makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise."

Economy is the road to wealth

Franklin and his young wife kept these rules faithfully. She worked in the printing office as well as in the house. They hired no servants. Their furniture, dress, and food were plain. He ate his breakfast of bread and milk out of a wooden bowl with a pewter spoon. Mrs. Franklin surprised him one day by giving him a china bowl and a silver spoon. She said her husband deserved such things as well as other men.

The people of Philadelphia admired Benjamin Franklin more and more. At the age of thirty he was chosen clerk of the Assembly of Pennsylvania, and afterward

Elected to office

was elected a lawmaker in the Assembly. Every year for ten years his neighbors elected him to help make the laws of the colony.

In a few years Franklin was made deputy postmaster-general for all the colonies by the king. He surprised the people by declaring that the mail should be carried from Philadelphia to Boston every week! He was postmaster-general for more than twenty years.

Deputy postmaster-general

MILESTONE, LYME, CONN.

This milestone, still standing at Lyme, marks the distance on a road surveyed by Franklin

In 1754 Franklin was sent by the colony of Pennsylvania to Albany, New York, to meet men from other colonies to make a treaty with the Iroquois, and to

plan a union of the Thirteen Colonies. While George Washington was still a surveyor, before Wolfe captured Quebec, and when Patrick Henry was yet a boy, Franklin wrote out a plan of union which pointed the way toward that greater Union, the United States of America.

Franklin plans a union of the colonies

Franklin was now becoming famous outside of Pennsylvania. Yale College honored him with the degree of Master of Arts. The old University of Cambridge, England, gave him the same degree.

Fame begins to come

All the wise men in England and France were excited by news of an experiment made by Benjamin Franklin. He had made electricity by using glass tubes, and he had seen the lightning flash in the storm cloud. He decided to prove, if he could, that lightning and electricity are the same. No one had yet done this.

He made a kite out of silk, to which he fastened a small iron rod. Then he tied a hempen string to the kite and the rod. To the lower end of the string he tied a silken cord to protect his hand from the electricity. On the string he tied a key.

Proves that lightning and electricity are the same

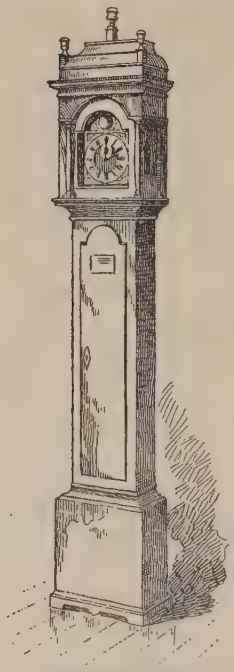
One day when the storm clouds came rolling up, Franklin sent his kite high up among them, while he waited. Soon the loose fibers on the hempen string moved. Franklin placed his knuckles close to the key, and sparks came flying at his hand.

When the news of this experiment was published some very wise men smiled; others said it was a trick. The great universities of Oxford and Edinburgh, however, gave him the doctor's degree, and societies of wise men in England, France, and Spain elected him a member. He was now the most famous American.

More honors

79. Franklin's Part in the Revolution. Already we have seen that England and her colonies were beginning to quarrel. What wiser man could be sent to England to defend the colonies by tongue and pen than Benjamin Franklin? He made friends for America among the great men of England.

Sent to England to defend the colonies



FRANKLIN'S CLOCK

When the Stamp Act was passed the members of Parliament asked him nearly two hundred questions about the effects of the Stamp Act on America. He wrote many letters to great men, and long articles to the English newspapers, explaining how the Stamp Act injured America. Both England and America rejoiced when the king and Parliament repealed the Stamp Act, and Franklin sent his wife a fine London gown in honor of the event.

How Franklin helped the English understand the Stamp Act

For eight years more, while America was busy opposing the tax on tea, Franklin was in England trying to get Parliament and the king to give the Americans better treatment. But it was all in vain. He often talked with William Pitt, the great friend of America, who introduced into Parliament a plan for making friends between the two countries. But the plan was defeated.

Franklin and Pitt

Franklin saw that war would come, and hastened back to his beloved America, where he arrived just after the battle at Lexington and Concord (1775).

Hastens home

Pennsylvania sent him to the Congress of 1775, which,

sitting in Philadelphia, made George Washington general of the Continental army. Franklin saw that if the thirteen scattered colonies were to defeat Great Britain they must unite. So he introduced into Congress a plan of union, but the other members were not ready for it.

Franklin plans union

Helps write the Declaration of Independence

Franklin was one of five men who were named by Congress to write the Declaration of Independence (1776).

Soon after, Congress sent him to France to influence the king and the people of that country to aid America in winning independence. The French hated the English, but admired Benjamin Franklin. The king gave money secretly, and many French officers came to serve in the American army.

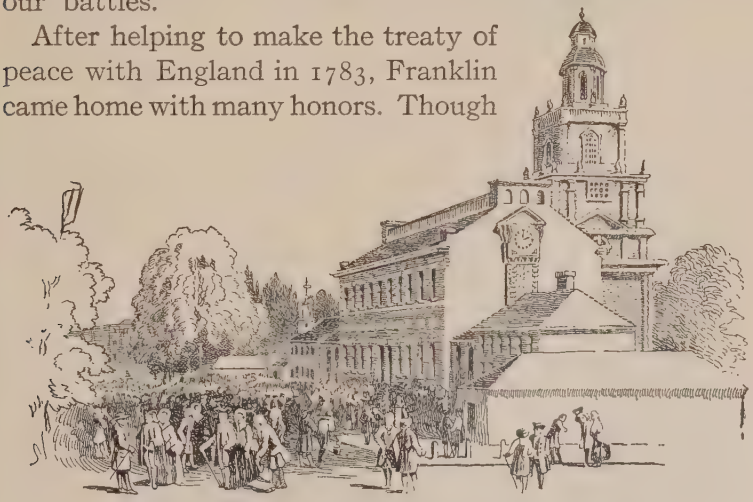
Franklin in France

In 1778 Franklin influenced the King of France to take sides openly with the Americans. French warships and French soldiers by thousands now came to help fight our battles.

France sends aid

After helping to make the treaty of peace with England in 1783, Franklin came home with many honors. Though

Treaty with England



INDEPENDENCE HALL, PHILADELPHIA, IN THE DAYS OF FRANKLIN
From an old print

nearly eighty years old, the people of Pennsylvania immediately elected him governor.

FRANKLIN AT THE COURT OF FRANCE

Franklin did one more great work for his country. In 1787 the states sent their wisest men to Philadelphia to make a constitution, or plan of government. Pennsylvania chose Franklin, with others, to meet with these men in Independence Hall.

George Washington, as we have seen, was the president of this meeting. Many speeches were made, and there was debating for many weeks. The meeting was always glad to hear Franklin speak, for he was a very wise man. As he had helped to make, and had signed, the Declaration of Independence, so now, after helping make the Constitution, he signed it. Many persons did not like the

Helps make our Constitution

Constitution. Franklin said there were some things in the new plan which he did not like, but declared that he signed it because of the good things it did contain. He showed his wisdom, for it is one of the best plans of government ever made.

Franklin signs the Constitution

Franklin spent his last days with his daughter, and, surrounded by his grandchildren, died in 1790, at the age of eighty-four.

Died in 1790

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Franklin's parents were poor, had seventeen children; hence Benjamin, though a studious fellow, was put to the printer's trade. *2.* Franklin wrote the "Dogood Papers." Left home for New York, but went on to Philadelphia. *3.* Persuaded to go to London. He returned and married. *4.* Franklin started a circulating library, a school which became the University of Pennsylvania, and a society called the American Philosophical Society. *5.* He invented a stove, founded the first fire department in America, and printed *Poor Richard's Almanac*. *6.* Wrote the first plan of an American Union, and won degrees from English and Scotch universities. *7.* Franklin was one of the committee to write the Declaration of Independence. *8.* Was sent to France, where he won the help of France in the War of the Revolution. *9.* Franklin was governor of the state of Pennsylvania, was a delegate to help make the Constitution, and died at the age of 84.

Study Questions. *1.* How long ago was Franklin born? *2.* Tell of his school experiences. *3.* Why did Franklin not go to sea? *4.* Tell the story of his bargain with his brother. *5.* What did Franklin hear about the "Dogood Papers"? *6.* Tell the story of the "runaway printer." *7.* How did he save his time in Philadelphia? *8.* How did he happen to go to London the first time? *9.* What good example did he set to London printers? *10.* Why did he return to Philadelphia? *11.* What three great institutions did he found? *12.* Why did the people like *Poor Richard's Almanac?* *13.* What public offices did he hold? *14.* Picture Franklin proving that electricity and lightning are the same. *15.* What

did he go to England a second time for? *16.* How did Franklin aid in the repeal of the Stamp Act? *17.* In what great events did he have a part? *18.* What was his work in France? *19.* What was his last great work? *20.* How did he spend his last days? *21.* Point out the obstacles he overcame all along in his career.

Suggested Readings. FRANKLIN: Baldwin, *Four Great Americans*, 71–122; Hart, *Camps and Firesides of the Revolution*, 158–162; Hart, *Colonial Children*, 197–199, 210–214; Wright, *Children's Stories of Great Scientists*, 71–89; Bolton, *Famous American Statesmen*, 38–66; Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 65–76.

PATRICK HENRY AND SAMUEL ADAMS, FAMOUS MEN OF THE REVOLUTION, WHO DEFENDED AMERICA WITH TONGUE AND PEN

PATRICK HENRY, THE ORATOR OF THE REVOLUTION

80. The Stamp Act. The surrender of Quebec and the fall of New France caused great rejoicing among the thirteen colonies. But the long, hard war had left both England and her colonies deeply in debt. King George III, however, thinking only of England's debt, decided that England ought to tax the colonies to pay for an army which he wished to keep in America.

Why the king wished to tax America

PATRICK HENRY
After the painting by Thomas Sully, owned by William Wirt Henry, the orator's grandson, Richmond, Virginia

So the Parliament of England passed a law that all

licenses to marry, all deeds to property, licenses to trade, newspapers, almanacs, and other pamphlets had to be printed on stamped paper. This paper ranged in value from a few cents to many dollars.

What the Stamp Act was

PATRICK HENRY SPEAKING IN THE HOUSE OF BURGESSES

From an engraving after the original painting by Rothermal

Leading men in every one of the thirteen colonies spoke and wrote against the Stamp Act. Of all the men who did so, Patrick Henry, of Virginia, was the most eloquent and fiery. He had been elected by the people of his county to go up to Williamsburg, the capital of Virginia, to help make the laws. There were many able men in that old House of Burgesses, but none of them wished to take the lead in opposing the king's plan of a stamp tax.

Patrick Henry in the House of Burgesses

One day young Henry, although a new member, snatched a blank leaf from a law book and wrote down a set of resolutions declaring that only the Virginia Assembly could tax Virginians, and that any one who asserted the contrary was an enemy of the colony.

He backed up these resolutions with a speech that stirred the Burgesses. He was so fiery and bold that men almost held their breath while they listened to the young orator. He closed by declaring that George III was acting like a tyrant, and that "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles the First his Cromwell, and George the Third—"

"Treason! treason!" shouted the Speaker of the House. Waiting a moment till the noise ceased, the orator, with a calm and steady voice, added, "may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it."

Patrick Henry's famous speech

Henry's resolutions were passed, and were printed in almost every newspaper in the colonies. They made the people more determined than ever not to buy stamped paper.

Who was this young lawyer that stirred these dignified Virginia gentlemen in powdered hair, knee breeches, and silver buckles?

81. The Orator of the Revolution. Patrick Henry was born in Virginia (1736). His father was a well-educated Scotchman, who taught school and became a lawyer. His mother was of Welsh blood. Young Patrick went to school, but he liked to hunt and fish far better than to study. He was a puzzle to his parents.

Patrick as a boy

By the time he was eighteen he had failed as a student, as a clerk, and as a storekeeper. He then married. The parents on both sides helped them to start farming with a few slaves. In two years Patrick Henry was forced to sell. Once more he tried keeping a country store. In three years the store closed its doors and Patrick Henry, aged twenty-three, was without an occupation.

Early failures

He now turned to the study of law. Although not in love with school when a boy, he loved to read the Bible. He also had a strong liking for history, and, in his youth, read the histories of Greece, of Rome, of England, and of the colonies. By a few months of hard study of the law he passed the examination. He succeeded from the first, and in less than four years had been engaged in more than one thousand cases.

Liked to study history and law

82. The Parsons' Case. In 1763 Patrick Henry set all Virginia to talking about him as a lawyer. This colony had paid its clergymen from the beginning. Each one received a certain number of pounds of tobacco for his salary. But the price was now high and now low. A dispute arose because of this and was taken into court. But no great lawyer would take the people's side. Patrick Henry did. The courthouse was filled with people, many clergymen among them. In the judge's chair sat Patrick's own father.

Succeeded as a lawyer

Patrick's father the judge

Henry began his speech in an awkward way. The clergymen felt encouraged, while his friends and father felt uneasy. Soon he began to warm up. His words came more freely, and his gestures grew more graceful. The people began to listen, and then to lean forward spellbound by the charm of his eloquence and the power of his argument. The clergy grew angry and left the room. His father, forgetting that he was judge, cried for joy. When Henry finished, the people seized him and carried him on their shoulders from the court room and around the yard, shouting and cheering all the while.

Henry's first great speech

PEOPLE OF THE COURT CARRYING PATRICK HENRY ON THEIR SHOULDERS AROUND THE GREEN

The people overjoyed

Patrick Henry was now the people's hero. At the election the following year his friends chose him to go to

Elected a lawmaker

the House of Burgesses, and there, in 1765, he made his stirring speech against the Stamp Act.

ON THE WAY TO THE GREAT CONGRESS AT PHILADELPHIA

The Stamp Act repealed

Many great Englishmen, such as William Pitt and Edmund Burke, opposed the Stamp Tax. Finally, King George and his Parliament repealed the unpopular act. The Americans were happy when they heard of its repeal.

83. New Taxes. As if the king and Parliament could learn nothing, they passed a Tea Tax the very next year, placing a tax on all the tea imported into the colonies. Then the Americans everywhere refused to buy the tea and pay the tax. When the tea ships came to America the people of New York and Philadelphia sent them back, and the "Sons of Liberty" at Annapolis burned a ship full of tea. The king's governor at Boston refused to permit the ships to carry the

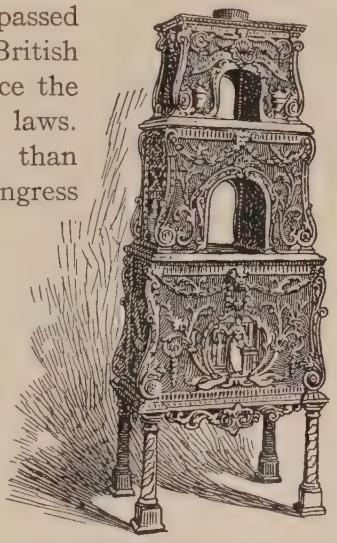
The Americans angry over the Tea Tax

ST. JOHN'S CHURCH, RICHMOND

tea back to England, but the people, one night, threw the tea into the sea. King George grew angry at such "tea parties," and had laws passed to punish Boston. More British soldiers were sent there to force the people to obey these detested laws.

The colonies, more excited than ever, decided to hold a great Congress in Philadelphia (1774). Virginia, like the others, sent her best men. There in Carpenter's Hall, a building still standing, Henry made friends of leading men of other colonies. There he met Samuel Adams, who was doing with his pen what Henry was doing with his tongue, and they became life-long friends.

Patrick Henry meets Samuel Adams at the great Congress



THE STOVE IN THE HOUSE OF THE BURGESSES
This stove is now in the State Library of Virginia

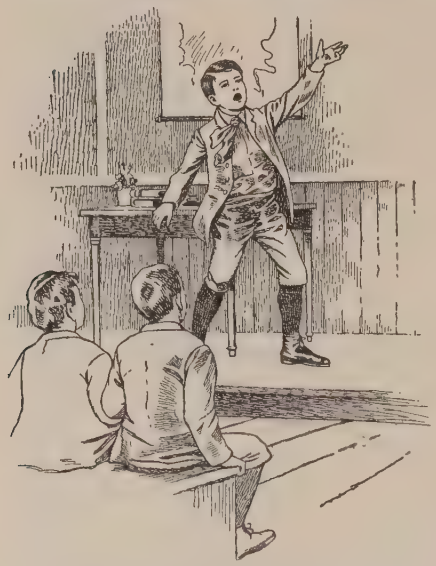
One day, when speaking in favor of united action, Patrick Henry declared: "The distinctions between Virginians, Pennsylvanians, New Yorkers, and New Englanders are no more. I am not a Virginian, but an American."

A new sentiment

As Patrick Henry talked with men from other colonies and heard how the king's troops were acting at Boston, he was convinced that war must come. He went home and urged the people of Virginia to arm for the coming struggle. The king's governor refused to permit meetings in the old capitol at Williamsburg, so they were held in St. John's Church, Richmond, a church still standing.

Here Patrick Henry offered resolutions declaring that Virginia should arm herself for the coming war. It was a serious time, and these were serious resolutions. Should the thirteen colonies go to war with one of the greatest nations in the world? Would it not be wise to send more petitions to the king? Some of the ablest men in Virginia opposed Henry's resolutions.

Patrick Henry's new resolutions

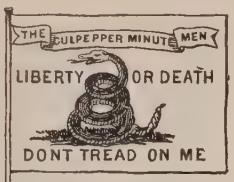


DECLAIMING PATRICK HENRY'S FAMOUS SPEECH
As a favorite declamation this great speech still rouses the spirit of patriotism in America

84. Patrick Henry Defends his Resolutions. Patrick Henry listened to the speeches with smothered excitement. When he rose to defend his resolutions his face was pale and his voice was trembling. But soon his audience forgot what other men had said. They leaned forward and listened as if no other man had spoken. He stirred their deepest feelings when he declared: "We must fight! I repeat it, Sir, we must fight! An appeal to arms and the God of Hosts is all that is left to us. They tell us, Sir, that we are weak; unable to cope with so formidable an adversary. But when shall we be stronger? Will it be the next week or the next year? Sir, we are not weak, if we make a proper use of the means which the God of Nature hath placed in our

Patrick Henry's greatest speech

power. There is no retreat but in submission and slavery. Our chains are forged! Their clanking may be heard on the plains of Boston! The war is inevitable, and let it come! I repeat it, Sir: Let it come!—The war is actually begun! The next gale that sweeps from the north will bring to our ears the clash of resounding arms. Our brothers are already in the field! Why stand we here idle! Is life so dear, or peace so sweet, as to be purchased at the price of chains and slavery? Forbid it, Almighty God! I know not what course others may take; but as for me, give me liberty, or give me death."



THE FLAG OF THE VIRGINIA MINUTEMEN

War is inevitable

One who heard this speech says that when the orator spoke the words "chains and slavery," he stood like a slave with his body bent, his wrists crossed, as if bound by chains, and that his face looked like that of a hopeless slave. After a solemn pause he raised his eyes and chained hands toward heaven, and said, as if in prayer: "Forbid it, Almighty God!" He then slowly bent his body still nearer the floor, looking like a man oppressed, heart-broken, and helpless, and said: "I know not what course others may take." Then, rising grandly and proudly, with every muscle strained, as if he would break his imaginary chains, he exclaimed: "Give me liberty, or give me death!"

What a listener in St. John's Church saw and heard

OLD POWDER HOUSE, WILLIAMSBURG

The removal of the powder from this house to a British man-of-war caused the first uprising of the Virginians

The men who heard this great speech never forgot it. The people of

What Washington saw in Boston in 1775

Virginia now pushed forward the work of arming her men. And when her own Washington went to take command of the army at Boston he found Virginia soldiers there wearing on their hunting shirts the words "Liberty or death!"

PATRICK HENRY
From the bronze figure of the Washington monument by Crawford at Richmond

Patrick Henry loved by Virginians

From this time on Patrick Henry was in the forefront of the struggle with England. Virginia sent him to Congress, then she made him an officer in the army, and finally not only made him the first governor after independence was declared, but elected him to that office three times in succession, and offered him the same office three times more.

After independence was won Patrick Henry opposed the adoption of our constitution, although Washington, Madison, and many of his friends were in favor of it. When, however, he saw that the new constitution was a good one, he gave his support to his friend, President Washington.

Patrick Henry in his old age

Patrick Henry finally retired to his plantation and refused all offers of office. Many old friends and many great strangers went to visit him in his old age as one of the great men of the American Revolution. In the year of his death (1799), when some danger threatened Virginia, Patrick Henry came forth at Washington's request, old and feeble as he was, and aroused the people once

more with his burning words. They elected him to the House of Burgesses by a great majority, but he did not live to take office.

SAMUEL ADAMS, THE FIREBRAND OF THE REVOLUTION

Samuel Adams the pen of the Revolution

85. Samuel Adams. While Patrick Henry was stirring the feelings of the people by his fiery eloquence, Samuel Adams was stirring them by strong arguments in his writings, to oppose the acts of king and of Parliament.

A student

Samuel Adams was born in Massachusetts (1722). While he loved school and books he cared very little for spending his time in outdoor amusements. At eighteen Samuel was graduated from Harvard College. His parents hoped that he would be a minister, but he began to study law. His mother was so opposed to his becoming a lawyer that he gave up the study and turned to business. He set up in business for himself, but, like Patrick Henry, soon lost all. He next went into business with his father, but in that, too, he failed. Finally Samuel Adams turned to politics.

SAMUEL ADAMS

From the original painting by John Singleton Copley, representing Adams in 1771, now hanging in the Museum of Fine Arts, Boston

Early love for politics

While a student in Harvard he had debated the question whether it was right to resist the king to save the country from ruin. He took an active part in debating clubs and very soon began to write for the newspapers, encouraging resistance.

He never hesitated to take what he thought the right side of any question.

Why Adams opposed the Stamp Act

Speaking before a meeting of Boston people, Samuel Adams boldly declared that if England could tax the business of the colonies, then, "why not tax our lands and everything we possess or make use of?" Such taxes, he said, would make the colonists slaves.

In a short time the people of Boston were reading in the papers the fiery resolutions and the still more fiery speech of Patrick Henry. Samuel Adams seized his pen and also began to pour hot shot into the Stamp Act.

The Boston people elected him to be their representative in the Massachusetts Assembly. More and more he took the lead in the movement against the Stamp Act.

How he opposed the Stamp Act

He went about the shops, into the stores, wherever he found people to listen to him.

He helped them form a society, called the Sons of Liberty, which destroyed the hated stamps as soon as they arrived. He talked with the merchants, and they signed a pledge not to buy any more goods from England until the Stamp Act was repealed. At this the British merchants felt the loss of trade and joined in the cry against the Stamp Act.

86. The Tea Tax. We have seen that Parliament, after the Stamp Act was repealed, passed the famous Tea Act. The Americans were angry again, and the Sons of Liberty declared that no tea should be landed. The merchants took the pledge again to buy no more English goods, and patriotic women began to make tea out of the leaves of other plants.

Samuel Adams again sharpened his pen, and wrote the famous old "Circular Letter," which urged all the

colonies to unite and stand firm in opposing the tax on tea. This letter made King George very angry, but Samuel Adams only wrote the more.

Samuel Adams writes the "Circular Letter"

Night after night as the people passed his window they saw by his lamp that he was busy with his pen, and said to one another: "Samuel Adams is hard at work writing against the Tories." People in England and America who took the king's side in these disputes were called Tories.

SAMUEL ADAMS WRITING THE FAMOUS CIRCULAR LETTER

The king now sent two regiments of soldiers to Boston to force the people to pay the Tea Tax. There were frequent quarrels between the soldiers and the people. One evening in a street quarrel the soldiers killed three men and wounded eight others (1770). Immediately the fire bells rang and great crowds of angry people filled the streets. The next day they filled to overflowing Faneuil Hall, the "Cradle of Liberty." A still larger meeting in the Old South Church cried out that both regiments of soldiers must leave town.

Conflicts between people and soldiers

Adams and other leaders were sent to the king's officers to tell them what the people had said. Before the governor and the general, backed by the king's authority and by two regiments, stood plain Samuel Adams, with only the voice of the people to help him.

Samuel Adams and the people drive the soldiers out of Boston

The governor, unwilling to obey the demand of the people, said he would send one regiment away. But Samuel Adams stood firm, and said: "Both regiments or none!" The governor finally gave up, and Samuel Adams, the man of the people, was a greater leader than ever before.

The king now tried to trick the Americans into paying the tax by making tea cheaper in America than in England, but leaving on the tax. But the people everywhere declared that they did not object to the price, but to the tax.

The tea ships guarded while town meetings are held

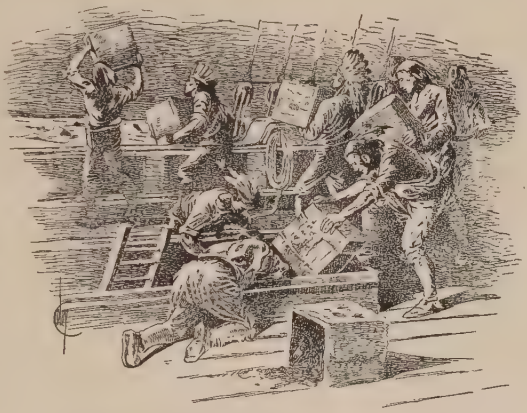
87. The Boston Tea Party. When the ships carrying this cheaper tea arrived in Boston, Samuel Adams set a guard of armed men to keep the tea from being landed. Town meeting followed town meeting. On December

THE BOSTON MASSACRE

16, 1773, the greatest one of all was held. Early that morning hundreds of country people started for Boston.

They found the shops and stores closed and people standing on the street corners talking earnestly.

At ten o'clock the people met in the Old South Church, and voted that the tea should never be landed. They also sent the owner of the ships to the governor for permission to take the tea ships out of the harbor.



THE BOSTON TEA PARTY ABOARD THE TEA SHIP IN THE HARBOR

In the afternoon still greater crowds pushed and jammed into the seats, aisles, and galleries of that famous church. Samuel Adams was chairman. He made a speech. Other leaders spoke. One stirred the audience by asking "how tea would mix with salt water." Evening came, and candles were lighted. The owner of the tea vessels returned and said the governor would not give him the permission.

Permission to return tea denied

Immediately Samuel Adams arose and said: "This meeting can do nothing to save the country!" In a moment the war whoop of the "Mohawks" sounded outside. The crowd rushed out and found the people following a band of men disguised as Indians down where the tea ships lay at anchor. The "Mohawks" went on board, brought up the boxes of tea, broke them open, and threw the tea into the sea.

The Boston Tea Party

That very night Samuel Adams sent fast riders to carry the news to the country towns. The next day, with letters to the leaders in other colonies in his saddlebags, Paul Revere, the great courier of the Revolution, started on his long ride to New York and Philadelphia. As he went from town to town and told the story of the Tea Party the people cheered him, spread dinners for him, built bonfires, and fired cannon. He saw thousands of people gather in New York and Philadelphia, and heard them declare that they would stand by Boston.

Paul Revere's first ride

Boston soon needed help, for the king and Parliament passed a law that no ship could enter or leave Boston Harbor, and another which forbade town meetings. Other hard laws were also passed, and an army was sent to Boston to force the people to obey them.

Boston Port Bill

88. The First Continental Congress. We have seen a call go forth for a Congress at Philadelphia (1774). The Massachusetts legislature chose Samuel Adams and his cousin, John Adams, with two others to go to the Congress.

But Samuel Adams was very poor and could not afford to dress in a style suited to meet the rich merchants of New York and Philadelphia and the great planters of the southern colonies. One evening while the family was at tea, in came the most fashionable tailor of the town to take

ASSEMBLY ROOM IN CARPENTER'S HALL
Here met the first Continental Congress of the colonies

his measure. Next came a hatter, and then a shoemaker. In a few days a new trunk at his door told the story, for in it were a suit of clothes, two pairs of shoes, silver shoe buckles, gold knee buckles, a cocked hat, a gold-headed cane, and a fashionable red cloak. What proof of the people's love for their neighbor!

Strange visitors

CARPENTER'S HALL, PHILADELPHIA

Although Samuel Adams was a very poor man, George III did not have offices enough to bribe him or gold enough to buy his pen. Several times the king's officers had tried to do both, but they did not succeed.

Poor but loyal

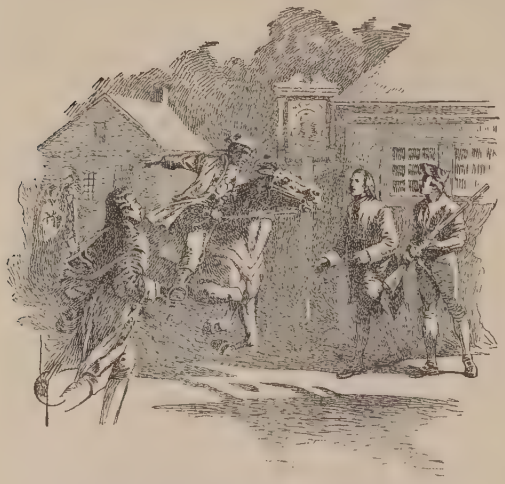
In a carriage drawn by four horses, the delegates to Congress were escorted by their friends right by the king's soldiers. The people of the large towns met them, escorted them, rang bells, fired cannon, feasted them at banquets, and talked of the Congress.

What Samuel and John Adams saw on the way to Philadelphia

At New York Samuel Adams and his friends were kept nearly a week. Many persons in carriages and on horseback came out to welcome them to Philadelphia, the city of William Penn. People were anxious to see the man who had written the "Circular Letter," who had driven the king's regiments out of Boston, who had planned the Tea Party, and whom the king could not bribe. Here, in Carpenter's Hall, for the first time, he met George Washington, Patrick Henry, and Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, Christopher Gadsden, who was called the "Samuel Adams of South Carolina," and many other noble men who became his life-long friends.

New and noble friends

Soon Paul Revere came riding into Philadelphia with the news that the patriots of Boston were in danger of being attacked by the British. The Congress immediately declared that if the British made war on Boston, it was the duty of every colony to help her people fight. It now looked as if war might come at any moment.



PAUL REVERE ALARMING THE MINUTEMEN
The old Hancock House, where, guarded by the minutemen, Samuel Adams and John Hancock lay sleeping when Paul Revere rode by, still stands in Lexington

Other colonies to help Boston

When Congress was over, Samuel Adams hastened home to help form, in all the Massachusetts towns, companies of minutemen ready to fight at a moment's warning. The next spring the news got out that British soldiers were going to Concord to destroy the powder and provisions collected there by the minutemen, and also to capture Samuel Adams and John Hancock and send them to England to be tried for treason. Paul Revere agreed to alarm the minutemen the moment the soldiers left Boston.

Minutemen

89. Paul Revere's Midnight Ride. Standing by his horse across the river from Boston, one April evening, waiting for signals, Paul Revere saw two lanterns flash their light from the tower of the Old North Church. He mounted and rode in hot haste toward Lexington,

arousing the sleeping villages as he cried out: "Up and arm, the regulars are coming!" Soon he heard the alarm gun of the minutemen and the excited ringing of the church bells. He knew the country was rising.

Alarming the minute-men

At Lexington minutemen who guarded the house where Samuel Adams and John Hancock were sleeping ordered Revere not to make so much noise. "You will soon have noise enough," he shouted. "The regulars are coming!" And he rode on toward Concord.

90. The Battle at Lexington and at Concord Bridge. As the British soldiers reached Lexington at sunrise, April 19, 1775, the captain of the minutemen gave the command: "Stand your ground. Don't fire unless fired upon. But if they mean to have war, let it begin here!" A bold speech for a captain of only about sixty men when facing as brave soldiers as Europe had ever seen! The minutemen stood their ground till seven were killed and nine wounded—nearly one third of their number. Then they retreated.

The first conflict of the minute-men

The British pushed on to Concord. But the minute-men, now coming from every direction, made a stand at Concord Bridge. Their musket fire was so deadly that the British started back, running at times to escape with their lives. At Lexington they fell upon the ground, tired out with the chase the minutemen gave them, and were met by fresh troops from Boston.

The retreat of the British

Soon the British soldiers were forced to run again, for minutemen by hundreds were gathering, and they seldom missed their aim. From behind rocks, trees, fences, and houses they cut down the tired redcoats. Nearly three hundred British soldiers were killed or wounded before Boston was reached that night

Many redcoats fall

91. The Battle of Bunker Hill. Day and night for weeks minutemen from other New England colonies, and even from as far south as Virginia, marched in hot haste to Boston. The British general soon found his army in Boston entirely cut off from the mainland. He resolved to fortify Bunker Hill, but what was his surprise to wake one morning (June 17) and find the Americans under Colonel Prescott already building breastworks on the hill.

Bunker Hill, June 17, 1775

That afternoon three thousand picked troops, in solid columns and with bayonets gleaming, marched up the hill to storm that breastwork. "Don't fire till you can see the whites of their eyes!" said the commander of the minutemen. On came the lines of red, with banners

THE BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL

flying and drums beating. From the breastworks there ran a flame of fire which mowed the redcoats down like

grass. They reeled, broke, and ran. They rested. Again they charged; again they broke and ran. They were brave men, and, although hundreds of their companions had fallen, a third time the British charged, and won, for the Americans had used up their powder, and they had no bayonets. More than one thousand British soldiers fell that day. The Americans did not lose half that number. But among the killed was brave General Joseph Warren.

Three fierce charges

92. The Second Continental Congress. Just as the British were marching into Lexington on that famous April morning, Samuel Adams, with John Hancock, was leaving for Philadelphia, where Congress was to meet again. As he heard the guns of the minutemen answer the guns of the regulars, Adams said to Hancock: "What a glorious morning is this!"

Adams and Hancock on the way to the second Congress

The members from Massachusetts, Connecticut, and New York were escorted across the Hudson to Newark, New Jersey, and entertained at a great dinner, with speeches. Near Philadelphia a large procession of armed men and carriages met and escorted them into the city, where bells told of their coming.

When this Congress met, Samuel Adams seconded the motion of his cousin, John Adams, that George Washington, of Virginia, be made the general of all the American troops. He saw his own neighbor, John Hancock, made president of the Congress.

93. The Declaration of Independence. For more than a year Samuel Adams worked hard to get the Congress to make a Declaration of Independence. Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, introduced a motion into the Congress for independence. The Declaration

Samuel Adams among the first to favor independence

was made, July 4, 1776, and Samuel Adams, as a great leader of the Revolution, had done his work.

AN OLD QUILL PEN

But, with other noble men, he still labored with all his powers, in Congress and at home, to help America win her independence.

Governor of Massachusetts

After independence had been won, Samuel Adams still served his state, and was elected governor of Massachusetts only a few years before his death, which occurred in 1803, at the age of eighty-one.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* The French and Indian War put both England and her colonies in debt, but the king thought only of England's debt. *2.* Great opposition to the Stamp Act in all the colonies. *3.* Patrick Henry made a great speech against the Virginia parsons, and a second on the Stamp Act. *4.* He went to the first Continental Congress and made many friends; came home and made a great speech saying that war would come. *5.* Made governor of Virginia many times. *6.* Samuel Adams studied hard, failed in several occupations, and went into politics. *7.* Led the patriots against the soldiers, the Stamp Act, and planned the Tea Party. *8.* Samuel Adams sent to Continental Congress, where he made many friends. *9.* Urged a Declaration of Independence in 1776. *10.* Made governor of Massachusetts.

Study Questions. *1.* Why were the colonists happy because England defeated France? *2.* What was the Stamp Act, and why did men in America oppose this act? *3.* What did Patrick Henry say in his resolution and in his speech? *4.* Picture the scene while Patrick Henry spoke and afterwards. *5.* Why did not the Americans like the Tea Tax? *6.* Why did not the king like the American "Tea Parties"? *7.* What is a Congress; and why should Patrick Henry and Samuel Adams become good friends? *8.* Commit to memory a part of Henry's famous "liberty or death" speech. *9.* How did

the people trust Patrick Henry? *10.* What did Samuel Adams do against the Stamp Act? *11.* What was the Circular Letter and why should the king be angry about it? *12.* Tell how Samuel Adams drove two regiments out of Boston. *13.* What caused a Congress? *14.* Tell what Samuel and John Adams saw and did on their way to Philadelphia. *15.* Why were people glad to see Samuel Adams? *16.* What made war seem likely to happen at any time? *17.* Read Longfellow's poem, "The Midnight Ride of Paul Revere." *18.* Give an account of the Battle of Lexington. *19.* Picture the retreat from Concord to Boston. *20.* Picture the charge of the British soldiers at Bunker Hill. *21.* What did Samuel Adams see on his way to the second Continental Congress? *22.* Who introduced the motion for independence into the Congress?

Suggested Readings. PATRICK HENRY: Cooke, *Stories of the Old Dominion*, 158–180; Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 93–101; Magill, *Stories from Virginia History*, 116–128. SAMUEL ADAMS: Dawes, *Colonial Massachusetts*, 42–72; Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 10–30; Hart, *Camps and Firesides of the Revolution*, 162–166; Hawthorne, *Grandfather's Chair*, 153–189, 205, 206.

THE MEN WHO FOUGHT FOR AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE WITH GUN AND SWORD

NATHAN HALE

94. Nathan Hale, the Martyred Patriot. Nathan Hale was born in Connecticut in 1755. He was brought up by his Puritan parents in the fear of God and in obedience to duty. At the age of sixteen Nathan left his native farm to enter Yale University. Here he soon became well liked for his gentle nature, lively spirit, and studious habits. In spite of his youth he was a leader in the affairs of his class and in all athletic sports. He graduated from college with honor and then taught school for almost two years. These were quiet days for the active young man.

Hale a leader in class affairs and athletic sports

At this time the people were talking a great deal about their troubles with Great Britain. In secret, bands of young men were even forming companies of militia. Suddenly the news of the fight at Lexington came to the place where Nathan Hale was teaching. The citizens gathered in meeting and he made a speech, in which he said: "Let us march immediately and never lay down our arms until we obtain our independence." The next day he and many others enrolled to fight for liberty.

Enrolled to fight for liberty

Washington was in command of the Continental army at Boston and soon sent for Hale's company. None worked harder than he at drills, or did more to keep the men cheerful in hardships. On New Year's day, 1776, Congress made him captain for his bravery and faithfulness.

NATHAN HALE
From the statue by William Ordway Partridge

In the following spring Washington moved his army to New York. One night Nathan Hale and a small band of men slipped out into the harbor where a British sloop lay. They boarded the ship gently, locked the sailors in before these knew what had happened, then they sailed their prize past a British man-of-war and over to the American side. It was a brave feat, well carried out.

Captures a British war vessel

Soon after, the American troops were badly defeated in the battle of Long Island. The army was half starved and losing hope. The British general, Howe, was preparing to attack again. If Howe should win, the American cause would be lost. Washington saw that it was necessary to find out the British plans, or he would be caught and his army destroyed. A brave man was needed to go into the British camp to spy out their plans. No one was willing to go. Hale had been sick, but when he heard of his country's need he offered himself. Friends pleaded with him in vain.

Offers to find out the British plans

The young officer took off his uniform and put on the clothes of a schoolmaster. Under cover of night he was rowed to a place near the British camp. This was the last his friends saw of him. He spent several days with the British troops and got the needed information. On his return he passed safely through the whole British army. He went to the spot where the boat was to come for him. There he waited until the boat came into view and then walked down to the water's edge to meet it. A dozen muskets were leveled at him; instead of fellow-soldiers he found himself in the hands of the British!

Passes the British lines safely

Hale was sent to New York immediately and placed before General Howe, to whom he said frankly that he was a spy. The British general wrote out his death warrant, "to be hanged to-morrow morning at sunrise." Not even the death of a soldier was to be his. His brutal guard refused to let him send a last letter to his people. Alone he spent the night, without the comfort of friend or minister. At daybreak he was dragged forth to execution. A crowd of strange people had gathered to see him die. It is said that the officer asked

Hale sentenced to death

Gives his life for his country

him if there was anything he wished to say. Brave to the last, Nathan Hale answered: "I only regret that I have but one life to lose for my country." Thus, at the age of twenty-two, died Nathan Hale, who held his country dearer than his own life.

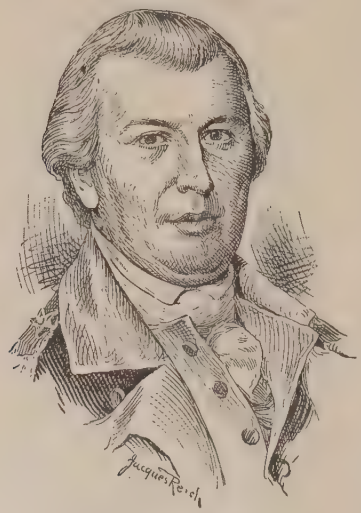
GENERALS GREENE, MORGAN, AND MARION, THE MEN WHO HELPED WIN THE SOUTH FROM THE BRITISH

Moultrie repulses attack on Charleston

95. The War in the South. Early in the Revolutionary War British vessels made an attack on Charleston, South Carolina (1776). But Colonel Moultrie, from his rude fort of palmetto logs, gave them such a welcome that they were glad to get away, and for two years the British gave the southern colonies little trouble.

Charleston surrenders to Cornwallis

But in 1778 another British army captured Savannah, Georgia. In 1780 the city of Charleston, South Carolina, with General Lincoln's entire army, surrendered to Cornwallis. Congress hastened General Gates to the South to check the British, but Cornwallis surprised Gates and cut his army to pieces near Camden.



NATHANAEL GREENE
From a painting by Charles Wilson Peale, once owned by Mrs. William Brenton Greene, Jr., Princeton, New Jersey, and now in Independence Hall, Philadelphia

Greene goes south to watch Cornwallis

96. Nathanael Greene, the Quaker General. Washington now chose Nathanael Greene, the "Quaker general," to go south, take command of the American army,

and to watch Cornwallis, who had just defeated Gates. Greene was born in Roger Williams' old colony, and was ten years younger than Washington. His father was a farmer, a miner, and a blacksmith on week days, and a Quaker preacher on Sundays.

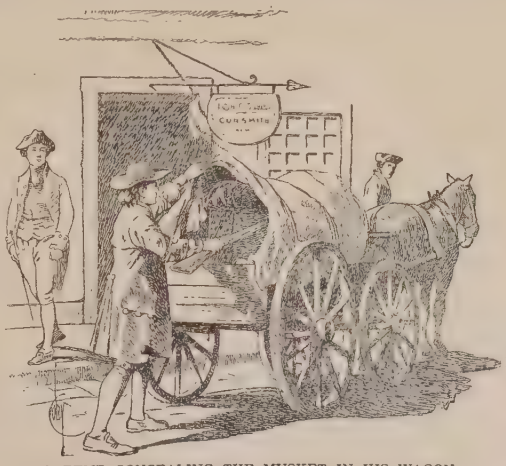
GREENE'S GUN
Now in the possession of the Rhode Island Historical Association

As a boy Nathanael had plenty of hard work to do, and at thirteen could "only read, write, and cipher." But he was hungry for more knowledge, and began to study Latin, mathematics, philosophy, and history. Besides, he made iron toys, and sold them to buy books. His family got into a lawsuit, and Nathanael took up the study of law. He was called the "learned blacksmith."

The "learned blacksmith"

When Greene saw that King George was likely to force the Americans to fight, he joined the militia and went to Boston to buy a musket, a very unusual thing for a man in Quaker dress to do. He hid the gun in his wagon. There he watched General Gage drilling British soldiers. He persuaded one of them to go with him to drill his company of minutemen.

He buys a musket



GREENE CONCEALING THE MUSKET IN HIS WAGON

When the stirring news from Lexington reached him, Greene was

News from Lexington sends Greene to Boston

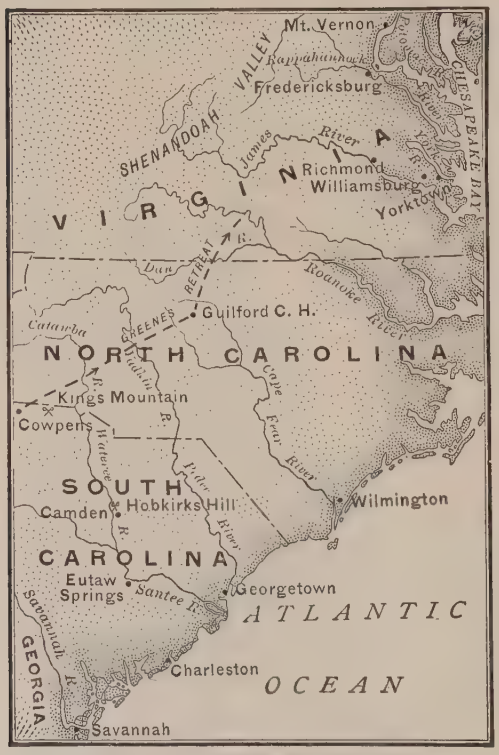
among the first to start for Boston, and there Washington found him when he arrived to take command of the army.

Greene was made one of Washington's generals, and followed his great commander till Washington sent him to the South to win back that part of the country from Cornwallis.

He found only a small army in North Carolina, but he knew the southern men would fight if they had a chance, for the backwoodsmen had just killed or captured one thousand British soldiers at Kings Mountain.

Men who helped Greene in the South

Besides, he had some of the bravest and ablest leaders in America to help him, among them Daniel Morgan, Francis Marion, William Washington (a cousin of General Washington), Henry Lee (called "Light Horse Harry"), and Thomas Sumter.



SCENE OF THE CAMPAIGNS IN THE SOUTH

Greene divides his army

Greene divided his army into two parts. He took one thousand men and marched into northeastern South Carolina, where Marion and Lee, with

small bands of cavalry, stole upon the British outposts. In broad daylight they charged pellmell into Georgetown, captured the officer in command there, and got safely away before the British were over their fright.

MORGAN'S ESCAPE FROM THE INDIANS

Morgan goes to northwestern South Carolina

Greene sent General Morgan and Colonel William Washington with nine hundred men into northwestern South Carolina to threaten some British posts, and to encourage the patriots in the mountains. Very shortly after this, Washington and his cavalry swooped down on a party of British soldiers and captured two hundred fifty of them.

Tarleton sent to capture him

Cornwallis was now thoroughly roused, and resolved to put an end to such events. He therefore ordered his favorite cavalry officer, Colonel Tarleton, to take eleven hundred picked soldiers and capture Morgan and his men.

97. General Morgan. But Morgan was not the kind of man to be caught napping. When a young man, he had fought the French and Indians on the Virginia frontier.

Morgan's training

He was at Braddock's defeat. He had once knocked a British officer down for striking him. In an Indian fight he had been shot through the neck and thought himself dying, but, to escape being scalped, locked his arms tightly around his horse's neck, while the horse ran wildly through the woods.

At the head of a company of ninety-six Virginia backwoodsmen, Morgan had marched six hundred miles in twenty-one days, and joined Washington at Boston.

DANIEL MORGAN
From a miniature painted by John Trumbull now in the Art Gallery of Yale University

Burgoyne's compliment

Later, Washington sent him to join in the capture of Burgoyne, at Saratoga. His men did such splendid fighting that Burgoyne said to Morgan: "Sir, you command the finest regiment in the world!" Fighting in the woods of America, such a man was likely to be a match for any British officer.

When Morgan heard of Tarleton's approach he retreated to a good place for fighting, called the Cowpens. On the top of a long, rising slope he placed the Continental troops—men trained to fight. In the rear he hid Colonel Washington and his cavalrymen.

Morgan places his men

Some distance in front of the Continentals he placed the militia with orders not to retreat till they had fired twice. In front of the militia Morgan hid a company of deadly sharpshooters in the woods on the right and another company in the woods on the left.

As soon as Tarleton's men came in sight they charged pellmell, thinking victory an easy matter. The militia and sharpshooters poured in their fire not twice, but several times, and retreated behind the Continentals, who now poured deadly volleys into the ranks of the on-coming British, and then made at them with their bayonets.

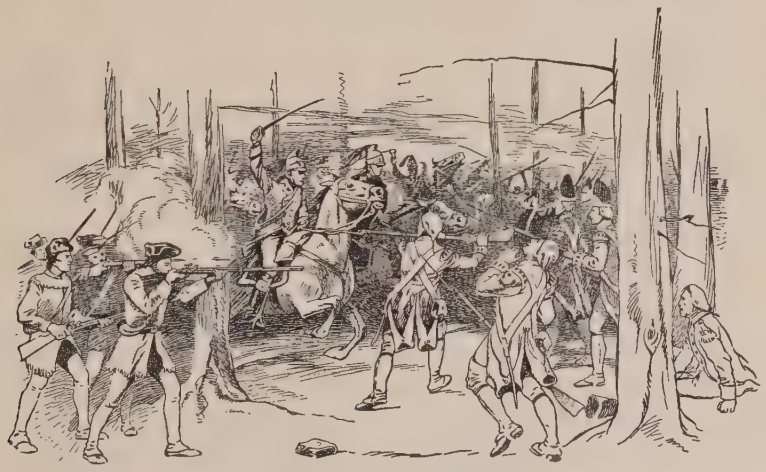
Just at this moment, Colonel Washington's cavalry dashed out and struck the right flank of the redcoats. In another moment the militia, which had reformed and reloaded, rushed out and struck their left flank. Most of Tarleton's men threw down their guns and surrendered on the spot. Only two hundred seventy redcoats got away. Tarleton barely escaped after being wounded in a hand-to-hand sword fight with Colonel Washington.

A brilliant victory

Tarleton was not permitted to forget his defeat. In conversation one day he remarked that he had never seen Colonel Washington. A patriotic lady present replied: "If you had only looked behind you at the battle of Cowpens, you would have had that pleasure."

Stories of Tarleton

On another occasion it is told that Tarleton said to a lady, in a sneering way, that he understood Colonel Washington was so ignorant he could not even write his



THE BATTLE OF THE COWPENS

When General Morgan, in one of the most brilliant battles of the war, defeated the brave but overconfident General Tarleton, destroying the famous legion Tarleton boasted could not be defeated

own name. This lady looked at Tarleton's wounded hand, and said: "You certainly carry proof that he can at least 'make his mark.'"

THE LAST SALUTE TO MORGAN

The defeat of Tarleton at the Cowpens roused Cornwallis. He destroyed all his heavy baggage, and started in hot haste after Morgan. But Morgan knew a thing or two, and marched for the fords of the Catawba River as soon as the battle was over.

Greene's great march

There Greene joined him, and away the armies went for the Yadkin River. Greene had brought along boats on light wheels, and had no trouble in crossing, but Cornwallis had to march up the river until his army could wade across. Greene was already on his way to the Dan, which he crossed into southern Virginia.

General Morgan retires

General Morgan, now broken in health by long years of hard fighting, retired to his home, "Soldiers' Rest," in the Shenandoah Valley. After the war was over his neighbors elected him to Congress, where he gave hearty support to President Washington.

A touching scene

When Daniel Morgan died he was followed to the grave by the largest procession that the valley had yet seen. The people, who had come from near and far, witnessed a touching sight. They saw seven gray-haired veterans, with old rifles in their hands, stand beside the grave of the hero, and fire a military salute. They

were the last of that hardy band of ninety-six which had marched with Morgan to Boston to join Washington, nearly thirty years before. This was their last military farewell!

98. The Battle of Guilford Court House. General Greene won a great victory by retreating. He and his army were still among friends, and his army was growing. Cornwallis was hundreds of miles from his supplies and from reënforcements. After a few weeks, Greene crossed back into North Carolina and fiercely attacked Cornwallis at Guilford Court House, and killed or wounded one fourth of his army.

Greene's "victory"

Cornwallis claimed the victory, but instead of attacking Greene he marched his army rapidly to Wilmington, on the seacoast, and from there marched into Virginia, where Washington and Lafayette caught him in a trap at Yorktown.

Greene turned back to South Carolina, where the British still held Charleston and a few other towns. The British lost so many men at Hobkirks Hill and at Eutaw Springs, their last important battles in the South, that they were compelled to retreat to Charleston, where they were when the news from Yorktown put an end to serious fighting.

Greene drives the British to Charleston

General Greene's work as a soldier was done. Besides the medal presented to him by Congress for the battle of Eutaw Springs, South Carolina, as a token of affection, gave him a large sum of money, and the state of Georgia a beautiful plantation on the Savannah River, where he died in 1786. Greene's fame as a soldier of the Revolution stands next to that of Washington.

Congress, South Carolina, and Georgia honor Greene

99. Francis Marion. Of all the brave men who

The "Swamp Fox"

helped Greene win back the South, none was braver than General Francis Marion, whom the British named the "Swamp Fox." Marion was born in the same year as Washington. He was of French parentage. He was so very small in size that people wondered how he could be so great a soldier.

Marion's "Brigade"

Marion's "Brigade," as his company was called, was made up of only a handful of men, usually less than one hundred. But they owned and rode the swiftest horses, carried their own guns, and wore their own swords, hammered out of old saws by country blacksmiths.

Marion and his men seldom were two successive nights in the same place. The night was their time for work. At sundown they swung into their saddles, and were soon riding for the enemy's camp. When near, they quietly surrounded the camp, took aim by the light of the fires, fired, and then rushed upon the frightened British or Tories, and cut them down with their terrible broadswords.

FRANCIS MARION
After the portrait in the painting by T. Stothard, R.A.

How they escaped

Before daybreak, Marion and his men were hiding safely in some distant swamp or other safe place. If the British chased him too closely his men scattered in different directions, but always made their way to the common hiding place. In a few days they were ready to strike again.

Just after Cornwallis defeated Gates, near Camden,

Marion pounced upon a guard of British soldiers that was taking one hundred fifty prisoners to Charleston, captured them all, and set the prisoners free.

One hundred fifty prisoners set free

ONE OF MARION'S MEN

At last Cornwallis ordered Colonel Tarleton to get "Mr. Marion," as he called him. But before Tarleton could act Marion had fallen on a large party of Tories going to join Cornwallis, and killed, captured, or scattered the entire party. Tarleton chased Marion for twenty-five miles, only to find a large swamp through which he could see neither road nor path. He gave up the chase in disgust, declaring he would pursue the "Swamp Fox" no farther.

Tarleton cannot catch Marion

When Greene returned to the last campaign in South Carolina he found no better, bolder, or more vigilant helpers than Marion and his "Brigade." Greene gave Marion high praise, and Congress gave him a vote of thanks.

Congress gives Marion a vote of thanks

Marion was the true soldier of liberty. He cared nothing for display, only for the success of the patriot cause. Marion thought of his men before himself. He was watchful, patient, and silent. He always struck his foes where and when they did not look for him. If they were too strong for him he vanished like smoke in a brisk breeze.

Marion was as true and gentle as he was bold and brave. He was never cruel to prisoners, and was greatly opposed

After the war

to punishing the Tories after the war was over. Marion's neighbors often elected him to high office and in many

"MARION AND HIS MEN" SURPRISE THE BRITISH

Dashing out of the swamp, Marion fell upon the guard of a band of patriot prisoners, killed or captured the British, then set the prisoners to guarding the redcoats

other ways showed that they admired him, even if some did not agree with him.

During the war a British officer was invited to take dinner with Marion. What was his surprise to see only sweet potatoes, baked in the ashes, set before him. After this feast the officer resigned, saying it was useless trying to defeat such soldiers.

A potato feast

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* When Hale heard the news of the fight at Lexington he hastened to the front. *2.* He went inside the British lines to learn their plans, was caught, and

executed. *3.* Greene went to Boston, saw the British army, returned home and prepared his minutemen. *4.* Washington sent him to the Carolinas after the defeat of Gates. *5.* In the retreat of the American army after the battle of Cowpens, Greene turned and fought the battles of Guilford Court House, Hobkirks Hill, and Eutaw Springs. *6.* Daniel Morgan with ninety-six men marched from the Shenandoah Valley to Boston to join Washington. *7.* He won the battle of Cowpens against Colonel Tarleton. *8.* Francis Marion's "Brigade" was made up of a small number, mounted on their own horses, and armed with their own guns and swords. *9.* He was called the "Swamp Fox," because his men, attacking after nightfall, usually escaped to a swamp before daylight.

Study Questions. *1.* What was Hale doing when war broke out? *2.* Why did he go within the British lines? *3.* Where was Greene born, and why was he called "the learned blacksmith"? *4.* How did he get his company of minutemen drilled? *5.* What leaders did Greene have to help him? *6.* Who was General Morgan? *7.* What did Burgoyne say to Morgan? *8.* Explain how Morgan prepared for the battle of Cowpens. *9.* Picture the battle. *10.* What anecdotes are told of Tarleton? *11.* Picture the scene at General Morgan's burial. *12.* How did Greene win a victory by retreating? *13.* What became of Cornwallis after the battle of Guilford Court House? *14.* What other battles did Greene fight? *15.* What proofs of affection did South Carolina and Georgia give? *16.* What is the rank of Greene as a general? *17.* How many were in Marion's "Brigade," how were they armed, and how did they fight? *18.* Why did Tarleton call Marion the "Swamp Fox"? *19.* Who praised General Marion? *20.* Read *The Song of Marion's Men*, by William Cullen Bryant.

Suggested Readings. NATHAN HALE: Brown, *Nathan Hale, the Martyr Spy.*

NATHANAEL GREENE: Fiske, Irving's *Washington*, 430–456; Francis V. Greene, *General Greene*, 1–22, 94–105, 160–262; Frost, *Heroes of the Revolution*, 27–75.

DANIEL MORGAN: Blaisdell and Ball, *Hero Stories from American History*, 105–122; Brooks, *Century Book of the American Revolution*, 168–173; Frost, *Heroes of the Revolution*, 76–89.

FRANCIS MARION: McCrady, *South Carolina in the Revolution*, 568–572, 577–652, 660–672, 748–752, 816–881.

THE MEN WHO HELPED WIN INDEPENDENCE BY FIGHTING ENGLAND ON THE SEA

JOHN PAUL JONES, A SCOTCHMAN, WHO WON THE GREAT VICTORY IN THE FRENCH SHIP, "BON HOMME RICHARD"

100. John Paul. In 1747, in far-away Scotland, on the arm of the sea called Solway Firth, a great sailor was born. John Paul played along the seashore, saw tall ships, and heard wonderful stories of a new land called America, whose ships filled with tobacco came into the firth.

John Paul born in Scotland

John Paul did not get much schooling, and at the age of thirteen he went as a sailor lad on the *Friendship* to America. The ship sailed into Chesapeake Bay and up the Rappahannock River to the town of Fredericksburg, where he found his brother William living on a plantation. In the very same town where George Washington had just been to school, John Paul also went to school. He studied hard to make up for lost time, and left a great name among the boys.

Sails on the "Friendship" to America

He afterward returned to Scotland, and at the age of nineteen sailed as an officer on a slave-trading ship to Africa, and carried a load of negroes away from their native land. Many people did not then think it wrong to do this, but John Paul hated the cruel business, and left the slave ship as soon as he reached Jamaica.

Returns and sails for Africa

On his way back to Scotland the officers of the ship died, and John Paul, although but twenty years old, had to take charge. The owners of the vessel were so pleased with the way he handled it that they made him captain, and he went on many voyages to different countries.

Made captain

After a time John Paul went to Virginia to take care

of his dead brother's plantation. While he was living in Virginia he watched the quarrel between England and her colonies break out in open war.

In Virginia again

101. John Paul Jones Enters the American Navy. He hastened to Philadelphia and offered his services to Congress. He knew England would send thousands of soldiers to America; and that she would send her war ships along our seacoasts and up and down our bays and rivers, to capture and burn our towns. He also knew that the Congress did not own a single war ship when the war began.

Offers his services to Congress

JOHN PAUL JONES
From a painting by Charles Wilson Peale in Independence Hall, Philadelphia

Congress ordered war ships to be built. While these were being made, Congress ordered trading vessels to be fitted with cannon and sent out to capture British ships.

When John Paul went to Philadelphia he gave his name as Paul Jones, probably in honor of Willie Jones, a friend who lived in North Carolina. Some have thought that he did not want the British to know him, if they should capture him in a sea fight.

Changes his name

Although Paul Jones really knew more about war ships than most of the men in Philadelphia, Congress gave him a very low office. But that made no difference to him, for he really wanted to get into a sea fight. In 1775 he

Really wants to fight

was made a lieutenant, and joined an expedition to capture cannon and powder from the British in the West Indies. He did so well that Congress made him captain and gave him a ship. He then went on a cruise to the West Indies, where in six weeks he captured sixteen prizes and destroyed a number of small vessels.

What he could do

THE FIRST AMERICAN ENSIGN

This, the first flag to float above an American man-of-war, was raised by John Paul Jones

Sent to France

Congress afterward gave him command of the ship *Ranger*, and sent him to carry letters to Benjamin Franklin, who was in France trying to get the king to take sides with the Americans.

With the "Ranger" at Whitehaven

Franklin planned for Jones to take the *Ranger* to the coast of England, and show that American as well as English ships could burn, destroy, and fight. He captured two vessels, made straight for his old town of Whitehaven, "spiked" the cannon in the fort, set some ships on fire, and escaped without harm.

Near by this place, his sailors took all the silver from the home of a rich lady. This robbery troubled him so much that, afterward, at great expense to himself, he returned the silver to its owner.

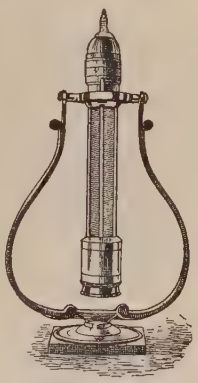
"Paul, the Pirate"

"Look out for Paul Jones, the pirate!" the people said; and the *Drake*, carrying two more cannon than the *Ranger*, was sent to capture her. Five boatloads of people went to see the pirate captured. The fight lasted more than an hour. When the *Drake* surrendered, her captain and forty-two men had been killed.

The *Ranger* had lost only two men. After this fight the English towns were still more afraid of Paul Jones.

There was great joy in France when Paul Jones sailed into port. The king, who was now making war on England, promised him a larger fleet of war vessels. So, in 1779, he found himself captain of a large ship armed with fifty cannon. He called the ship the *Bon Homme Richard* in honor of Franklin's Almanac, the "Poor Richard." Three smaller vessels joined him, and he again set sail for the English coast. The news of his coming caused great alarm.

The "Good Man Richard"



MARINE CANDLESTICK
From man-of-war "Constitution"

102. A Great Sea Fight and a Great Victory. As Paul Jones sailed along the British coasts he captured many trading ships and frightened the people. At last he came upon two British war ships. Just at dark the *Richard* attacked a larger English ship, the *Serapis*. At the first fire two of Jones' cannon burst, tearing up the deck and killing a dozen of his own men.

The "Richard" and the "Serapis"

The fight went on for an hour, when the *Serapis* came near, and Jones ran the *Richard* into her. "Have you struck your colors?" called out the English captain. "I have not yet begun to fight!" replied Captain Jones. When the ships came together again Paul Jones himself seized a great rope and tied them together. Now the fighting was terrific. The cannon tore huge holes in the sides of the ships.

The great sea fight

NAVAL PITCHER
This was made in commemoration of the American Navy, 1795

A great explosion on the *Serapis*

killed twenty of her men. Both ships were on fire, and the *Richard* began to fill with water. The men on each ship had to fight fire. It was ten o'clock at night.

THE CAPTURE OF THE SERAPIS

Because of this victory three nations, France, Russia, and Denmark, bestowed special honors upon John Paul Jones as "the valiant assertor of the freedom of the sea"

The British prisoners on the *Richard* had to help pump out water to keep the ship from sinking.

Only a few cannon on each ship could be fired. The decks of both ships were covered with dead and wounded, but neither captain would give up. Finally Paul Jones, with his own hands, pointed two cannon at the great mast of the *Serapis*. Just as it was about to fall, the English captain surrendered.

A great victory

All night Jones and his men were kept busy fighting fire and pumping water, while the wounded were removed to the *Serapis*. The *Good Man Richard* sank the next day at ten o'clock. Paul Jones sailed to France with his two English ships, where he was praised and rewarded by the King of France. He was a great hero in the eyes of the French people, and in the eyes of the Americans, too.

A great naval hero

After the war Paul Jones was an officer in the Russian navy. He died in France in 1792. His grave was forgotten for many years, but was discovered in 1905, and his bones were brought to America with great honor, and buried at Annapolis, Maryland.

Finally buried in America

JOHN BARRY, WHO WON MORE SEA FIGHTS IN THE REVOLUTION THAN ANY OTHER CAPTAIN

103. John Barry. Although born on a farm in Ireland (1745), John Barry wanted to be a sailor lad. While still young he was put to service on board a merchant ship. Here young Barry learned more than being a mere sailor. Between voyages he studied hard, and soon gained a useful education. At the age of fifteen he came to Philadelphia, and was so pleased with the country and the people that he resolved to make America his home.

Barry visits America

He rose rapidly as a sailor and, when the news of the first bloodshed between England and her colonies came, he offered his services to Congress.

Offers his services to Congress

In 1776 Congress made him captain of the ship *Lexington*, the first Continental vessel to sail from William Penn's old city. Barry immediately put to sea, and met and captured the *Edward* after a fierce fight. Thus the *Lexington* was the first ship to bear the American flag to victory.

Made captain of the "Lexington"

Congress, pleased with the result, put him in charge of a larger ship, called the *Effingham*. The British, however, bottled up the *Effingham* in the Delaware.

But Barry was not idle. Arming four boatloads of men, with muffled oars he rowed down the Delaware at night.

JOHN BARRY

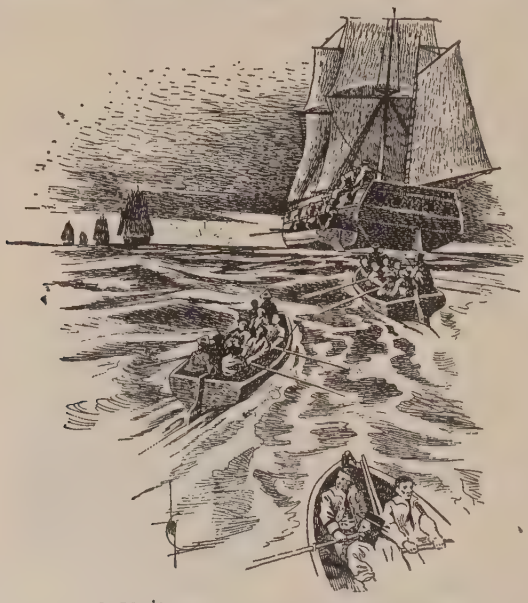
From the portrait painted by Colin Campbell Cooper after the Stuart painting, now in Independence Hall, Philadelphia

Just as the sun was rising Barry saw a British vessel of ten guns. With this ship were four transports loaded with forage for the British army. Barry's boats made for the British ship. His men climbed on board with guns and swords in hand. The British soldiers threw down their arms and ran below. Barry fastened down the hatchways, and then turned his attention to the four transports, which quickly surrendered. Barry then took his five prizes across the river to an American fort.

He captures a British vessel and four transports

In 1778 Congress promoted John Barry to the command of the *Raleigh*. He set sail for Boston, and on his way met a British ship carrying thirty-two guns. His sailors had taken an oath never to surrender. They fought bravely, and had every hope of winning, when a British 64-gun ship came in sight. To keep their oaths, they ran the *Raleigh* ashore, and set her on fire. The British put out the fire and saved the ship.

He takes command of the "Raleigh"



BARRY'S BOATS ATTACKING THE BRITISH

104. Barry Given Command of the "Alliance." In 1781 Barry was placed in command of the *Alliance*, a

ship whose name was given in honor of France's helping America in this war. In May the *Alliance* met two British ships, and a hard battle followed. Barry was badly wounded, but would not surrender. He fought on and forced the British ships to strike their colors.

Wounded, but forces the British to strike their colors

In 1783 Barry, in the *Alliance*, sailed on his last voyage of the Revolution. His companion ship was the *Luzerne*. Three British ships discovered the Americans and quickly gave chase. The *Luzerne* was slow and threw her guns overboard.

Another vessel came into view; it was a French ship of fifty guns. With her aid Barry immediately decided to fight. He made a speech urging the men not to fire until ordered. A terrific battle with the foremost British ship followed. After fifty minutes' fighting, the British showed signals of distress. The remaining British ships now came up to rescue her, and the *Alliance* sailed away. The French ships took no part in the battle.

On his last voyage of the Revolution

After the war was over, Congress provided for a navy, and General Knox, Washington's Secretary of War and of the Navy, named John Barry as first commodore. He served as the senior commander of the American navy until his death, in 1803. The people of Philadelphia have erected a monument to his memory (1907).

Named first commander of a navy

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* John Paul was born a sailor in Scotland and went to America. *2.* He was in America when war broke out; offered his service and was made lieutenant. *3.* Congress sent him to France, and Franklin sent him to prey on English commerce. *4.* Paul Jones won the great sea fight in the *Bon Homme Richard*. *5.* John Barry was born in Ireland, and went to sea early. *6.* Congress made him captain in 1776, in charge of the *Lexington*. *7.* Barry set

the country talking by capturing a war vessel and four transports. *8.* John Barry won more naval victories in the Revolutionary War than any other officer. *9.* Named first commodore in 1794 by the Secretary of the Navy.

Study Questions. *1.* Give an account of John Paul's boyhood. *2.* What of his first visit to America? *3.* How did Paul happen, at so early an age, to have full charge of a vessel? *4.* Why did he go to Virginia a second time? *5.* Why did he hasten to Congress as soon as war began? *6.* How did Paul Jones prove his right to be captain? *7.* Tell the story of the battle between the *Drake* and the *Ranger*. *8.* Picture the battle between the *Bon Homme Richard* and the *Serapis*. *9.* What rewards came to Paul Jones? *10.* Where is he buried? *11.* Give an account of John Barry's youth. *12.* When the war came, what was Barry's action? *13.* What was the first victory on the part of the navy? *14.* What was the outcome of the battle on the *Raleigh?* *15.* What were Barry's experiences in the *Alliance?* Picture Barry's last battle.

Suggested Readings. PAUL JONES: Beebe, *Four American Naval Heroes*, 17–68; Abbot, *Blue Jackets of '76*, 83–154; Frothingham, *Sea Fighters*, 226–266; Hart, *Camps and Firesides of the American Revolution*, 285–289; Hart, *How Our Grandfathers Lived*, 217–219; Seawell, *Paul Jones*.

JOHN BARRY: Griffin, *Commodore John Barry*, 1–96.

THE MEN WHO CROSSED THE MOUNTAINS, DEFEATED THE INDIANS AND BRITISH, AND MADE THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER THE FIRST WESTERN BOUNDARY OF THE UNITED STATES

DANIEL BOONE, THE HUNTER AND PIONEER OF KENTUCKY

Boone born in Pennsylvania

105. A Famous Frontier Hero. Daniel Boone was born in Pennsylvania in 1735. He was only three years younger than Washington. While yet a boy he loved the woods, and often spent days deep in the forest with no companion but his rifle and dog.

Boone's parents moved to North Carolina, and settled on the Yadkin River. There he married at the early age of twenty, and, pioneer-like, moved farther into the forest, where people were scarcer and game more plentiful. He built a log cabin for his bride, and made a "clearing" for raising corn and vegetables. But his trusty rifle furnished their table with all kinds of wild meat, such as bear, deer, squirrel, and turkey.

Moved to the Yadkin

In 1760 Boone with a friend crossed the mountains to the Watauga in east Tennessee, on a hunting expedition, where he killed a bear, and cut the date of the event on a beech tree, which still stands on Boone's Creek in east Tennessee.

Crossed the mountains in 1760

One of Boone's hunter friends came back from a journey across the Cumberland Mountains and told of the beauty of the land beyond—its hills and valleys, its forests and canebrakes, full of game. Boone was anxious to go. Too many people were settling near him. But Kentucky was a dangerous country, even if beautiful. It was called "No-man's-land," because not even Indians lived there, and also the "dark and bloody ground," because the tribes from the

BOONE AND HIS BEAR TREE

News from across the Cumberland

north and from the south met there in deadly conflict.

Boone and companions go to Kentucky

106. Boone Goes to the Land of Canebrakes and Blue Grass. While the people along the seacoast were disputing with the king, Boone and five companions, after climbing over mountains, fording rivers, and making their way through pathless forests, reached Kentucky, the land of salt springs, canebrakes, and blue grass.

They built a log camp and spent several months enjoying the wild life so dear to the hunter. But it was

Danger from animals

full of danger. Sometimes it was a battle with a father and a mother bear fighting for their little ones. The sneaking panther or the lurking wildcat threatened their lives. Now and then, hundreds of buffaloes came rushing through the canebrakes.

Danger from Indians ever present

But danger from the Indians was present every moment. Day and night, sleeping in their camp or tramping through the woods, the hunters had to be ready for the death grapple. One day Boone and a companion named Stewart were off their guard. The Indians rushed upon them and captured them.

Captured but escapes

Boone and his companion understood the ways of the Indians, and won their confidence. One night, as the savages slept around the camp fire, Boone arose and quietly awoke Stewart. They stole silently from the camp and hastened by night and day back to their old camp, only to find it destroyed and their comrades gone.

News from the old home

One day Daniel Boone saw his brother coming through the woods. What a happy meeting five hundred miles from home! The brother brought good news from kindred and friends.

Stewart was shot by the Indians, but Boone and his brother remained all winter in Kentucky. Powder, lead,

and salt were growing scarce. What should be done? Boone's brother returned home for supplies, but Daniel remained without even a dog for a companion. He very seldom slept twice in the same place for fear of the Indians.

His brother returns home for supplies

BOONE FIGHTING OVER THE BODY OF HIS SON

He wandered to the banks of the Ohio, and was charmed with all he saw. He then decided that some day he would make Kentucky his home.

Boone's brother returned in the spring, bringing supplies on two pack horses. After further explorations the two brothers returned to their home on the Yadkin and told their neighbors of the wonders of the new land.

Brings supplies and both go home

In the fall of 1773 several families, with cattle and horses, bade farewell to their friends and started for Kentucky, a "second Paradise," as Boone called it. Before they reached the new land Indians fell upon them and killed six. Among the killed was Boone's eldest son. The party returned for a time to a settlement in Virginia.

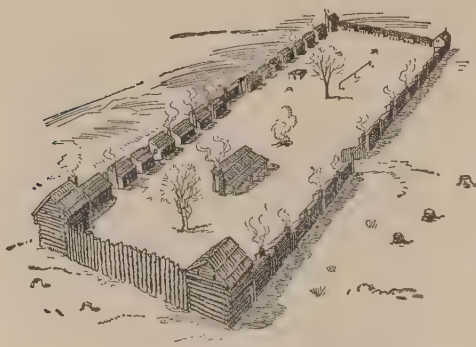
An Indian attack

Richard Henderson, a rich planter, claimed a great tract of land in Kentucky, and put Boone at the head of thirty brave men to cut and blaze a road from the Holston River over the mountains, through Cumberland Gap to the Kentucky River. The result was the famous "Wilderness Road," the first road across the

Making the "Wilderness Road"

mountains, and over which hundreds of pack horses and thousands of settlers made their way.

Fort Boonesboro



FORT BOONESBORO IN WINTER
After the plan by Colonel Henderson in Collins' "Historical Collections of Kentucky"

When the road was finished to the banks of the Kentucky River, Daniel Boone built Fort Boonesboro. The fort was about two hundred sixty feet long, and one hundred fifty feet wide. At each corner of it stood a two-story blockhouse with loopholes, through which the settlers could shoot at Indians. Cabins with loopholes were built along the sides of the fort. Between the cabins a high fence was made by sinking log posts into the ground. Two heavy gates were built on opposite sides of the fort. Every night the horses and cattle were driven inside the fort.

His family in the "second Paradise"

107. Boone Takes His Family to Kentucky. When the fort was finished Boone brought his family, and several others, over the mountains to his "second Paradise." Other settlers came, and Boonesboro began to grow. Some of the bolder settlers built cabins outside of the fort, where they cut away and burned the trees to raise corn and vegetables.

Three girl prisoners

To the Indian all this seemed to threaten his hunting ground. The red men were anxious, therefore, to kill and scalp these brave pioneers. One day Boone's daughter and two girl friends were out late in a boat

near the shore opposite the fort when the Indians suddenly seized the girls and hastened away with them. The people heard their screams for help, but too late to risk crossing the river.

What sorrow in the fort that night! Had the Indians scalped the girls, or were they hastening to cross the Ohio with them? The next day Boone with eight men seized their guns, found the Indian trail, and marched with all speed. What if the Indians should see the white men first! On the second day Boone's party came upon the Indians building a fire, and fired before they were seen. Two of the Indians fell, and the others ran away, leaving the girls behind, unharmed, but badly frightened.

The chase and the capture

The War of the Revolution was already raging east of the mountains, and the Indians were taking the side of the British. In April, 1777, a small army of Indians crossed the Ohio and attacked Boonesboro. The little fort made a bold fight. The Indians retreated, but returned on the Fourth of July in large numbers, to destroy the fort and scalp the settlers. For two days and nights the battle went on. The fierce war cry of the

BOONE AND HIS MEN TRAILING THE INDIANS

Kentucky in the War of the Revolution

Indians filled the woods around the fort. The white men took deadly aim. The women aided by melting lead into bullets. The Indians again failed, and finally retreated.

The prize prisoner

While making salt at the "Blue Licks," Boone and twenty-seven of his men were captured by the Indians and marched all the way to Detroit, the headquarters of the British army in the Northwest. The British offered the Indians five hundred dollars for Boone, but the savages were too proud of their great prisoner, and marched him back to their towns in what is now Ohio.

Adopted by an Indian family

Here he was adopted by an Indian chief. They plucked out all of Boone's hair except a "scalp lock," which they ornamented with feathers. They painted and dressed him like an Indian. His new parents were quite proud of their son. Sometimes he went hunting alone, but the Indians counted his bullets and measured his powder. But Boone was too shrewd for them. He cut the bullets in two, and used half charges of powder.

Steals away to Boonesboro

One day he saw four hundred fifty painted warriors getting ready to march against Boonesboro. He went hunting that day, but he did not come back. What excitement in that Indian town! Soon the woods were full of Indians hunting for Boone. In five days—with but one meal—he reached Boonesboro.

All hands fell to repairing the fort. The horses, cattle, and provisions were brought inside the fort, and water was brought from the river.

The Indians came, and Boone's Indian "father" called on him to surrender. Boone asked for two days to think about it, but he used this time in getting ready to fight. At the end of the two days Boone told him that his men would fight to the last.

An Indian trick spoiled

The Indians then proposed that twelve from each side meet to make a treaty of peace. Boone took his strongest men. While parleying, each Indian suddenly seized a white man. The white men broke away, and ran for the fort. Boone's riflemen were ready, and poured a hot fire into the Indians.

The Indians cannot capture Boone's fort

The Indians climbed into trees to shoot down into the fort. They tried to set the fort on fire, but failed. They then tried to dig a tunnel under the fort, but failed in that also.

After nine days of failure, and after losing many warriors, the Indians gave up the fight and recrossed the Ohio. Although the settlers had to keep a daily watch for Indians, and had to fight them in other parts of Kentucky, they never attacked Boonesboro again.

DANIEL BOONE

From a portrait made in 1819 when Boone was 85 years old, painted by Chester Harding, and now in possession of the Massachusetts Historical Society, Boston, Massachusetts

During the Revolutionary War other brave men came as pioneers into Kentucky, and built forts, and defended their settlements against the Indians. As the settlements grew thicker, game grew scarcer. Boone resolved once more to move farther west. When asked why, he replied: "Too much crowded. I want more elbow room."

Boone's reason for again moving west

At the age of sixty, while Washington was still president, and after he had seen Kentucky become a state, Daniel Boone and his faithful wife made the long journey to the region beyond the Mississippi, into what is now

Moves to Missouri

Missouri. There he lived and hunted. He saw this region pass from Spain to France, and from France to the United States (1803). He was still a hunter at eighty-two, and saw Missouri preparing to enter the Union as the twenty-fourth state.

Died in 1820

He died in 1820 at the age of eighty-six. Years afterward, remembering the noble deeds of the great pioneer, Kentucky brought his body to the capital city and buried it with great honors.

108. Life in the Mississippi Valley. When Boone led his brave men into Kentucky, white men had been living for years in the Mississippi Valley, farther west. These were the French of Louisiana, as they called their country. Their chief settlement was St. Louis.

The Louisiana country and the French

These people came at first to dig lead from the old Indian mines of southern Missouri and to trade for furs. They were a quiet people who knew little and cared less about the rest of the world. They did not work hard, and they loved good times. A traveler who visited them says they were "the happiest people on the globe."

JOHN SEVIER, "NOLICHUCKY JACK"

Sevier born in Virginia

109. A Famous Indian Fighter. John Sevier was born in the Shenandoah Valley in 1745. His mother taught him to read, but he obtained most of his schooling in Washington's old school town, Fredericksburg. He quit school at sixteen. He built a storehouse on the Shenandoah and called it Newmarket. He lived there, selling goods and fighting Indians, until, at the early age of twenty-six, he was a wealthy man. He had already made such a name as an Indian fighter that the governor made him captain in the militia of which George Washington was then colonel.

Early life in the Shenandoah

Fine looking

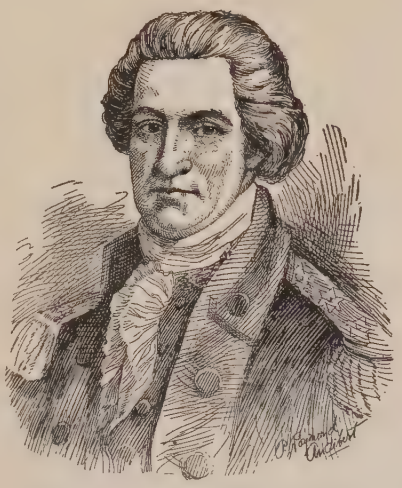
Sevier was a fine-looking man. He was tall, slender, erect, graceful in action, fair skinned, blue eyed, and had pleasing manners, which had come to him from his French parents. He charmed everybody who met him, from backwoodsmen up to the king's governor at Williamsburg.

He goes to the Watauga

A most promising future opened before him in Virginia. But hearing of a band of pioneers on the Watauga, he rode over one day to see them and resolved to cast in his lot with them.

Tennessee in the Revolution

During the Revolutionary War, British agents went among the Cherokee Indians and gave them guns and ammunition. Indian-like, they planned to take Fort Watauga by surprise. They came creeping up to the fort one morning just at daybreak. Forty deadly rifles suddenly blazed from portholes and drove them back to the woods. During the siege of three weeks, food grew scarce at the fort, and the men became tired of being cooped up so long. Some of them ventured out and were shot or had very narrow escapes from death.



JOHN SEVIER

After an engraving from a miniature now in possession of one of his descendants at New York

The story of Jack Sevier and Kate Sherrill

The story is told that Sevier, during the siege, fell in love with the beautiful, tall, brown-haired Kate Sherrill. One day

she ventured out of the fort. It was a daring act, for four men had lost their lives in this way. The Indians tried to catch the girl, for they did not want to kill her. But she could run like a deer, and almost flew to the fort. Sevier was watching, and shot the Indian nearest her. The gate was closed, but she jumped with all her might, seized the top of the stockade, drew herself up, and sprang over into the arms of Sevier. Not long after she became his wife.

KATE SHERRILL RACING FOR LIFE

Sevier acts quickly

In 1778 Sevier heard that the Indians were coming again. He quickly called his men together, took boats, and paddled rapidly down the Tennessee to the Indian towns. He burned the towns, captured their store of hides, and marched home on foot. How surprised the Indians were when they returned!

110. Nolichucky Jack. The Watauga Settlement was growing in numbers, and Sevier went to live on the Nolichucky, a branch of the French Broad River. There he built a large log house, or rather two houses, and joined them by a covered porch. Outside were large verandas, while inside were great stone fireplaces.

Moves to the Nolichucky

Welcomes rich and poor

Here Sevier gave hearty welcome to friend and stranger, no matter how poor, if they were honest. The settlers far and wide, and new settlers from over the mountains, partook of his cider, hominy, corn bread, and of wild

meat of many kinds. Sometimes he invited them with their families to a barbecue. Whether people came for advice or to call him to arms against the Indians, no one was turned away. "Nolichucky Jack," as his neighbors loved to call him, held a warm place in every settler's heart.

In 1780 Cornwallis, then victorious in South Carolina, sent Colonel Ferguson with one thousand British soldiers into western North Carolina to punish the backwoodsmen. Ferguson grew bold, and sent word across the mountains, threatening to punish Sevier and his brave riflemen. This was enough. Colonel Shelby of Kentucky and Sevier resolved to rouse the frontiersmen, cross the mountains, and teach Colonel Ferguson a lesson. Colonel Campbell with his men from the Holston, in Virginia, joined them. A thousand well-mounted backwoodsmen, with their long rifles, fringed hunting shirts, and coonskin caps, began the march from the Watauga across the mountains. Once across they were joined by several hundred Carolinians. Ferguson retreated to Kings Mountain, too steep on one side to be climbed. He felt safe behind his thousand gleaming bayonets.

British challenge

The backwoodsmen picked nine hundred men to make the charge up the mountain in face of the bayonets, although among themselves there was not a bayonet. Three divisions, one for each side, marched up the mountain. Down the mountain side came the flashing bayonets. The backwoodsmen in the center retreated from tree to tree, firing steadily all the time. The British, now shot at from both sides as well as in front, turned and charged at one side. Then one division fired into their backs and the other on their side. What could bayonets do in the midst of trees?

The plan of battle

Battle of Kings Mountain

The result

The backwoodsmen kept to the trees and their rifles seldom missed their aim. The British retreated to the top of the mountain. Colonel Ferguson was killed and his entire army was killed or captured. This victory caused great rejoicing among the Americans and prepared the way for the work of Greene and Morgan.

Sevier and Campbell hastened back over the mountains, for the Indians were scalping and burning again. With seven hundred riflemen, they marched against the Indian towns and burned a thousand cabins and fifty thousand bushels of corn. This was a hard blow, but the Indians kept fighting several years longer.

A deadly blow

Sevier, in all, fought thirty-five battles. He was the most famous Indian fighter of his time.

THE BATTLE OF KING'S MOUNTAIN

Where 900 frontiersmen attacked and totally destroyed 1,000 British soldiers entrenched and better armed

When Tennessee became a state the people elected him governor. They reëlected him till he had held the office for twelve years. The people of Tennessee almost worshiped the bold pioneer. He had spent all his time and all his wealth in their service. And while he was governor, and living in Knoxville, the early capital, one or more of his old riflemen were always living at his home. Even the Indian chiefs often came to visit him. When the people of Tennessee were debating questions of great importance, they always asked: "What says the good old governor?"

Governor of Tennessee many times

"NOLICHUCKY JACK'S A-COMING"
Sevier welcomed by the congregation of the country church

Indians trusted him

One Sunday, when all the people of a backwoods settlement were at the country church, a bareheaded runner rushed in and shouted, "Nolichucky Jack's a-coming!" The people rushed out to see their governor. As he came near, he greeted one of his old riflemen, put his hand upon the head of the old soldier's son, spoke a kindly word, and rode on. The boy looked up at his father and said: "Why, father, 'Chucky Jack' is only a man!"

The boy's disappointment

Sevier died in 1815, while acting as an officer in marking the boundary line between Georgia and the Indian lands. Only a few soldiers and Indians were present. There he lies, with only the name "John Sevier" cut on a simple

Died in 1815

slab. But for generations the children of the pioneers went on repeating to their children the story of the courage and goodness of "Nolichucky Jack." His name is yet a household word among the people of eastern Tennessee. Their children are taught the story of his life. In the courthouse yard at Knoxville stands a monument erected to his memory.

GEORGE ROGERS CLARK, THE HERO OF VINCENNES

Clark born in Virginia

A surveyor

111. A Successful Leader against the Indians and the British. George Rogers Clark was born in Virginia in 1752. From childhood Clark liked to roam the woods. He became a surveyor and an Indian fighter at the age of twenty-one. Like Washington, with chain and compass, and with ax and rifle, he made his way far into the wild and lonely forests of the upper Ohio.

A scout

INDIANS ATTACKING A FORT
Again and again, when a surprise was not possible, the Indians from safe hiding places picked off the men in a garrison

Clark was a scout for the governor of Virginia in the expedition which defeated the great Shawnee chief Cornstalk at the mouth of the Kanawha.

Two years later Clark made his way alone over the mountains and became a leader in Kentucky, along with Boone. The Kentucky hunters chose Clark to go to Virginia as their lawmaker.

He told Governor Patrick Henry that if Kentucky was not worth defending against the Indians, it was not worth having. At this the Virginian lawmakers made Kentucky into a Virginia county and gave Clark five hundred pounds of powder, which he carried down the Ohio River to Kentucky.

In Kentucky

Clark lived at Harrodsburg where, for more than a year, he was kept busy helping the settlers fight off the Indians. This was the very time when Boonesboro and other settlements were so often surrounded by Indians who had been aroused by the British officers at Detroit. These officers paid a certain sum for each scalp of an American the Indians brought them.

Life at Harrodsburg

GEORGE ROGERS CLARK
From a painting on wood by John Wesley Jarvis, now in the State Library at Richmond, Virginia

After having seen brave men and women scalped by the Indians, Clark decided to strike a blow at the British across the Ohio. But where could he find money and men for an army? Kentucky did not have men enough. Clark thought of that noble patriot across the mountains, Patrick Henry. He mounted his horse and guided some settlers back to Virginia, but kept his secret. In Virginia he heard the good news that Burgoyne had surrendered.

Turns to Patrick Henry in time of need

Governor Henry was heart and soul for Clark's plan.

He made Clark a colonel, gave him six thousand dollars in paper money, and ordered him to raise an army to defend Kentucky.

112. The Campaign against Old Vincennes. In May, 1778, Clark's little army of about one hundred fifty backwoodsmen, with several families, took their flatboats and floated down the Monongahela to Fort Pitt. Clark did not dare tell the riflemen where they were going, for fear the British might get the word. Here they took on supplies and a few small cannon.

A colonel with a secret

On they floated, in the middle of the river to keep away from the Indians who might be hiding in the deep, dark forests on the river banks. At the falls of the Ohio, on Corn Island, Clark landed his party. He built a blockhouse and cabins, and drilled the riflemen into soldiers while the settlers planted corn. This was the beginning of the city of Louisville.

Floating down the beautiful Ohio

One day Clark called his men together and told them the secret—he was really leading them against the British forts on the Illinois and the Wabash rivers.

Clark tells his secret

A few of the men refused to go so far from home—a thousand miles—but the rest were willing to follow their leader.

In June, Clark's boats "shot the falls" and were soon at the mouth of the Tennessee, where a band of hunters joined the party. There Clark hid the boats and began the long march through tangled forests and over grand prairies. But they did not know what minute the Indians might attack, or some British scout discover them and carry the news to General Hamilton at Detroit.

A long march begun

They reached the old French town of Kaskaskia at dusk on July 4. They did not dare give a shout or fire

Kaskaskia, July 4, 1778

a gun, for the British officer had more men than Clark.

Clark sent part of his men silently to surround the town, while he led the others to the fort, where they heard the merry music of the violin and the voices of the dancers.

Surrounds the town

Clark himself slipped into the great hall, folded his arms, and looked in silence on the dimly lighted scene.

CLARK'S SURPRISE AT KASKASKIA

An Indian lying on the floor saw Clark's face by the light of the torches. He sprang to his feet, and gave the terrible war whoop. Instantly the dancing ceased, the women screamed, and the men rushed toward Clark. But Clark simply said: "Go on with your dance, but remember that you dance under Virginia and not under Great Britain!" The British general surrendered, and the French inhabitants trembled, when they learned that the backwoodsmen had captured the town. They

Virginia, not Great Britain

The French settlers alarmed

sent their priest, Father Gibault, and other chief men to beg for their lives. Imagine their surprise and joy when Clark told them that not only were their lives safe, but that the new republic made war on no church, and protected all from insult.

The treaty with France

He also told them that the King of France had made a treaty with the United States and was sending his great war ships and soldiers to help America. The town of Cahokia also surrendered.

Vincennes surrenders

Father Gibault went to Vincennes to tell the French settlers about the doings of Clark and to give them the news that France had taken sides with the Americans. The people rejoiced, and ran up the American flag. Clark sent Captain Helm to command the fort.

General Hamilton at Detroit was busy planning to attack Fort Pitt and to encourage the Ohio Indians to kill and scalp Kentuckians.

General Hamilton stirred up

How astonished he was when he heard that the forts on the Illinois and the Wabash had fallen! He gathered a mixed army of British, Canadians, and Indians, crossed Lake Erie to the mouth of the Maumee, and "poled" and paddled up that river to the portage. Down the Wabash they floated, five hundred strong. Vincennes surrendered without a blow. Hamilton decided to stay there for the winter and march against Clark in the spring. This was a blunder. He did not yet know Clark and his backwoodsmen.

Stays in Vincennes until spring

"I must take Hamilton or Hamilton will take me," said Clark, when he heard the news. He immediately set to work to build a rude sort of gunboat, which he fitted out with his cannon and about forty men. He sent the *Willing*, as it was called, down the Mississippi,

around into the Ohio, and up the Wabash to meet him at Vincennes.

Clark begins the march

All was excitement in the French towns. Forty or fifty French joined Clark's riflemen. Father Gibault gave them his blessing, and the march overland to Vincennes began.

Clark divided his men into parties. Each, in its turn,

CLARK'S MEN ON THEIR WAY THROUGH THE DROWNED LANDS OF THE WABASH VALLEY

On the march

did the hunting, and at night invited the others to sit around great camp fires to feast on "bear ham, buffalo hump, elk saddle, and venison haunch." They ate, sang, danced, and told stories. No doubt they often talked of their loved ones far away in the cabins of Virginia and Kentucky.

The drowned lands

On they pushed till they came to the "drowned lands of the Wabash," and there they saw miles and miles of muddy water. They made a rude boat to carry

them over the deepest parts. The horses had to swim.

Soon they were near enough Vincennes to hear the "morning gun" at the fort, but they did not dare fire a gun themselves for fear of being discovered by parties of hunters. Food grew scarce, game was hard to find, and starvation threatened them.

The morning gun

THE BIG TROOPER CARRIED THE DRUMMER BOY

Sometimes, after wading all day, they could hardly find a dry spot to camp for the night. Some grew too weak to wade and were carried in boats. The stronger sang songs to keep up the courage of the weak. When they finally reached the opposite shore of the Wabash many fell, worn out—some lying partly in the water.

Terrible suffering

Those who were well built great fires and warmed and fed the faint ones on hot deer broth. But these brave men soon forgot their hardships and again were full of fight.

Clark now decided to take a bold course. He sent a letter to the people of Vincennes telling them that he was about to attack the town. He advised all friends of America to remain quietly in their homes, and asked all friends of the British to go to the fort and join the "hair buyer," as the backwoodsmen called Hamilton.

Clark's letter

At dark, Clark's men charged into the town and attacked the fort. The fight went on all night. As soon as it was daylight the backwoodsmen fired through

The attack

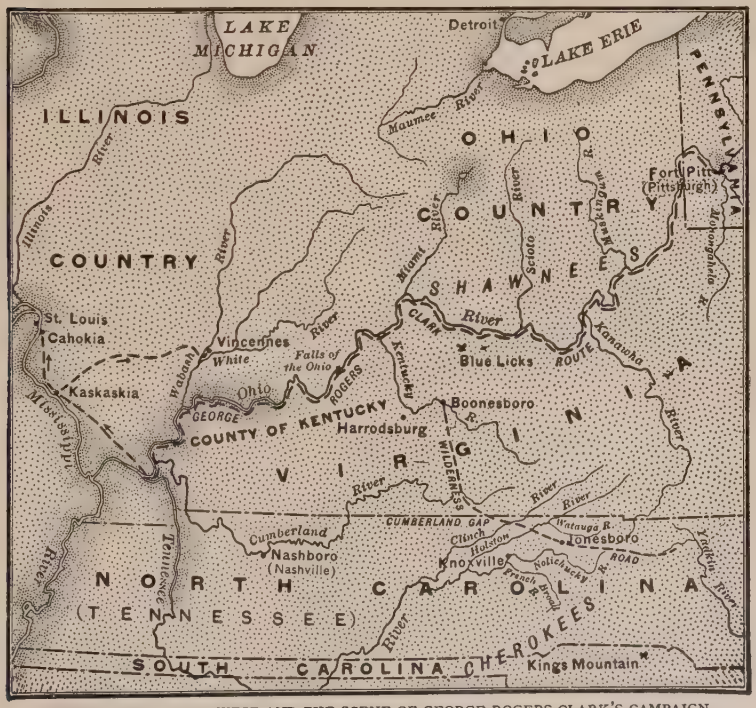
the portholes and drove the gunners from the cannon.

Clark's men begged to storm the fort. Only one American had been wounded, but several British soldiers had been killed and others wounded. In the afternoon Hamilton surrendered and once more the Stars and Stripes floated over "old Vincennes."

Hamilton surrenders

The *Willing* appeared in a few days. Her men were deeply disappointed because they were too late to take part in the fight.

Clark put men in the forts at Kaskaskia, Cahokia, and Vincennes, and made peace with the Indians round



EXPEDITIONS TO THE WEST AND THE SCENE OF GEORGE ROGERS CLARK'S CAMPAIGN

about. But he was never able to march against Detroit, as once he had planned to do.

Virginia rewarded the brave men who had followed Clark by giving to each three hundred acres of land in southern Indiana. The land was surveyed and is known to-day as "Clark's Grant."

Clark's Grant

Clark and his men had performed one of the greatest deeds of the Revolutionary War. They made it possible for the United States to have the Mississippi River for her western boundary when England acknowledged our independence.

George Rogers Clark was never properly rewarded. He spent his last days in poverty at the falls of the Ohio, on Corn Island, and died in 1818. In 1895 a monument was erected in honor of his memory in the city of Indianapolis, Indiana.

Clark unrewarded

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Boone loved the woods, crossed the mountains into east Tennessee, and later went to Kentucky. *2.* He wintered alone in Kentucky; his brother returned home for supplies. *3.* Boone built the "Wilderness Road," and also built Fort Boonesboro. *4.* Boone took part in the War of the Revolution, was captured by the Indians, carried to Detroit, but escaped. *5.* Years after his death his remains were taken to Frankfort, Kentucky.

6. John Sevier studied at Fredericksburg; fought Indians in the Shenandoah. *7.* He went over to the settlement on the Watauga; helped defend it against the Indians. *8.* Sevier helped win the great victory at Kings Mountain. *9.* He was many times governor of Tennessee.

10. George Rogers Clark loved the woods; was a surveyor and an Indian fighter at twenty-one. *11.* Moved to Kentucky, saw men and women scalped, and resolved to capture the British posts north of the Ohio. *12.* Clark received permission from Patrick Henry, collected his little army, and

floated down the Ohio to the falls. *13.* He drilled his men; set out for Kaskaskia, which he captured. *14.* Clark marched for Vincennes through the drowned lands; attacked and captured Vincennes. *15.* Clark was not rewarded by the government, but the state of Indiana has erected a great monument to his memory.

Study Questions. *1.* What did Boone do that was pioneerlike? *2.* What was the country doing in 1760? *3.* Why did Boone wish to leave North Carolina? *4.* What were the early names of Kentucky, and what did these names mean? *5.* Tell the story of Boone's first visit to Kentucky. *6.* Picture the capture and escape of Boone and Stewart. *7.* Find the places on the map which are named on Boone's Wilderness Road. *8.* Picture the scene in Boonesboro the night of the capture of the girls and also their rescue and return home. *9.* Go with Boone to Blue Licks and help make salt. *10.* Be captured, and tell of the long journey to Detroit, what you saw there, and how and why Boone made his escape. *11.* Tell the story of the last attack on Boonesboro. *12.* Why did Boone move to Missouri?

13. What famous men went to school at Fredericksburg? *14.* What famous men have lived a part of their time in the Shenandoah? *15.* What changed Sevier's career? *16.* Tell what happened to Sevier at the siege of Fort Watauga. *17.* Why did Sevier leave Watauga, and what sort of life did he lead on the Nolichucky? *18.* Tell of the gathering of the clans, and picture the battle of Kings Mountain. *19.* Why did the people of Tennessee love Sevier? *20.* Why was the boy disappointed?

21. What were Clark's surroundings in boyhood? *22.* When was he a scout? a leader in Kentucky? *23.* What made Clark learn to hate the British? *24.* Tell the story of his secret. *25.* Picture the voyage to the falls of the Ohio. *26.* What did Clark do here? *27.* Tell the story of events from the falls of the Ohio till he reached Kaskaskia. *28.* Picture the scene of the dance at Kaskaskia. *29.* What news did Clark give Father Gibault? *30.* Where were the British, and what did they do? *31.* Picture Clark's march to Vincennes. *32.* Be one of the soldiers of Clark and tell what was seen, heard, and done the night of the attack on Vincennes and the next day. *33.* Where was Clark's Grant? *34.* Why do we call Clark's conquest of Kaskaskia and Vincennes one of

the greatest events in American history? *35.* Where is a monument erected to his memory? *36.* Find on the map the places mentioned in the campaign.

Suggested Readings. DANIEL BOONE: Wright, *Children's Stories of American Progress*, 1–40; Glascock, *Stories of Columbia*, 138–147; Hart, *Camps and Firesides of the Revolution*, 101–116; McMurry, *Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley*, 68–83.

JOHN SEVIER: Blaisdell and Ball, *Hero Stories from American History*, 90–104; McMurry, *Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley*, 104–123; Phelan, *History of Tennessee*, 57–66, 241–257.

GEORGE ROGERS CLARK: McMurry, *Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley*, 124–149; Blaisdell and Ball, *Hero Stories from American History*, 1–17; Eggleston, *Tecumseh and the Shawnee Prophet*, 41–51; Roosevelt, *The Winning of the West*, II, 31–85.

DEVELOPMENT OF THE NEW REPUBLIC

ELI WHITNEY, WHO INVENTED THE COTTON GIN AND CHANGED THE HISTORY OF THE SOUTH

113. What a Boy's Love of Tools Led to. Before the Revolution there lived in a Massachusetts village a boy named Eli Whitney. His father had a farm, on which there was also a tool shop. This was the most wonderful place in the world to young Eli. Whenever he had a moment to spare, he was sure to be working away with his father's lathe or cabinet tools. At the age of twelve he made a good violin. After that people with broken violins came to him to have them mended.

Eli at work in his father's tool shop

One day, when his father had gone to church, Eli got Mr. Whitney's fine watch and took it all apart. He then showed his wonderful mechanical ability by putting it together again, and it ran as smoothly as before. During the war he made quite a bit of money as a nail-smith. At college he helped pay his expenses by mending things and doing a carpenter's work.

If Eli Whitney were living to-day he would surely have been an engineer. But there were no engineers in those days, so he decided to teach. He found a position in far-off Georgia, and took passage on a ship to Savannah. On board ship he found the widow of the old war hero, General Nathanael Greene, whom he had met a short time before. She liked the young man for his friendly nature and his intelligence. He had a very pleasant voyage. But sad was his disappointment when he arrived at Savannah! The people who had asked him to come had engaged another tutor, and he was left without a position.

Goes to Georgia to teach

He was in a strange place, without money, and did not know what to do. Just then came an invitation to visit at Mulberry Grove, where Mrs. Greene lived. He went gladly and was treated very kindly. He made many new friends. The men liked the interest he took in their farms and their work. The children were his friends because he made for them wonderful toys of all sorts.

Invited to Mulberry Grove

One day some visitors were talking with Mrs. Greene about cotton. This plant was little grown at that time. People knew that it had a fine soft fiber which could be made into excellent cloth. But the fiber had to be separated from the seed before it could be spun. In those days the seeds were taken out by hand, and even a skillful slave could clean only about a pound a day. Think of working a whole day for a handful of cotton! Because of this difficulty, cotton was very expensive, more so even than wool or linen. Only well-to-do people could wear cotton clothes.

Cotton fiber separated from seed by hand

114. The Cotton Gin Invented. One of the visitors said that a machine ought to be invented which would

clean the cotton. Mrs. Greene thought of Whitney. She had seen him make many wonderful things. She believed he could make such a machine, and asked him to try. He thought about it, and believed he could make iron fingers do the work that the fingers of the slaves had done.

ELI WHITNEY WORKING ON HIS COTTON GIN

Whitney got a basketful of cotton and fixed up a shop. Then he went to work. He had a good deal of trouble, but he kept on. One day he called in Mrs. Greene and her overseer and proudly showed them his little machine, made of rollers and wires and brushes. Into this he poured the cotton just as it came from the field. When he turned a crank the soft, clean cotton came tumbling out of one side and the seeds out of another. This was the cotton gin, which in a few years was to change the entire life of the South.

Whitney sets to work

Invents cotton gin

A few years before Whitney made the cotton gin a vessel came to Liverpool with cotton from the United States. The people in Liverpool were astonished. They did not know that cotton grew in America! As soon as Whitney began to sell his new machines, all the South became a great cotton field. In 1825, the year of Whitney's death, the South shipped abroad thirty-seven million dollars' worth of cotton, more than that of all other goods exported from this country!

Before this time many planters had thought that

slavery was unnecessary. But when Whitney's gin made cotton growing so profitable, they had to have many more laborers to raise this new crop. Thousands of black slaves were sold to the cotton-growing parts of the South. The planters then believed they could not grow cotton without slaves, and it took a terrible war to settle the great question of slave labor.

More slaves brought into the South

THOMAS JEFFERSON, WHO WROTE THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE, FOUNDED THE DEMOCRATIC PARTY, AND PURCHASED THE LOUISIANA TERRITORY

115. The Early Years of Jefferson. The author of the Declaration of Independence was born in 1743, near Charlottesville, Virginia. Like most other Virginia boys, Thomas Jefferson lived on a large plantation, and spent much time in hunting, fishing, and horseback riding. While yet a boy, and throughout his long life, Jefferson loved books and studied hard every subject that came before his mind.

Jefferson born in Virginia

WHERE JEFFERSON WENT TO SCHOOL BEFORE HE WENT TO WILLIAM AND MARY COLLEGE

A lover of books from boyhood

When seventeen years old he rode away to Williamsburg to attend the College of William and Mary, the second oldest college in America.

Goes to William and Mary College

Although Williamsburg was the capital of the largest and oldest of all the colonies, it had scarcely more than two hundred houses, and not more than a thousand people. But it was a wonderful town in Jefferson's eyes, although it had but one main street. The capitol stood at one end of the street and the college at the other. It was the first town Thomas Jefferson had ever seen.

A wonderful old town

THE OLD CAPITOL, WILLIAMSBURG
Here Jefferson heard Patrick Henry make his famous Cæsar-Charles the First speech

At the opening of the House of Burgesses, Jefferson saw the best people in the Old Colony come pouring in. The planters came in fine coaches drawn by beautiful horses. The wives and daughters came to attend the governor's reception, and to enjoy meeting their old friends.

He knew great men

Jefferson became acquainted with the great men of his colony, and with many young men who were to be the future leaders in America. Here he met Patrick Henry, a student in a law office. Jefferson liked the fun-making Henry, and the two young men enjoyed many happy hours together, playing their violins.

Studies law

After his graduation Jefferson remained in his old college town to study law in the office of one of Virginia's ablest lawyers. Henry often lodged in Jefferson's rooms when he came to attend the meetings of the Burgesses. When Henry made his stirring speech against the Stamp

Act, Jefferson stood in the doorway of the House and listened spellbound to his friend's fiery eloquence.

Jefferson a member of the House of Burgesses

In a few years Jefferson himself was honored with a seat in the House of Burgesses. He immediately took a leading part in opposing the tax on tea. The king's governor became angry and sent the members of the House of Burgesses home. But before they went, the bolder ones met and signed a paper which pledged the people of Virginia to buy no more goods from England.

The next important event in Jefferson's life was his falling in love, and his marriage to a young widow. She was beautiful in looks, winning in her manner, and rich in lands and slaves. Jefferson took his young wife to a handsome mansion which he had built on his great plantation. He called the home Monticello. Here these two Virginians, like Washington and his wife at Mount Vernon, spent many happy days.

Marries and begins life at Monticello

JEFFERSON AND HIS WIFE AT MONTICELLO

A rich man

Jefferson, with his wife's estate added to his own, was a very wealthy man. Together they owned at this time nearly a hundred thousand acres of land and three hundred slaves.

But stirring events took Jefferson away from the quiet

life at Monticello. After his marriage, he went to the meeting of the Burgesses, and there with other leaders formed a Committee of Correspondence. This committee wrote to the other colonies to get news of what the leaders were doing, and to tell them what the men in Virginia were planning to do. Each of the other colonies appointed committees of correspondence. They kept the news going back and forth as fast as rapid horsemen could carry it. These committees had a strong influence in uniting the colonies against England.

Committee of Correspondence

THE RALEIGH TAVERN, WILLIAMSBURG
When barred from the House of the Burgesses the Committee of Correspondence met in this tavern

116. Writes the Declaration of Independence. In 1775 the Burgesses chose Thomas Jefferson, Richard Henry Lee, and Benjamin Harrison as delegates to the Continental Congress in Philadelphia. In this Congress Richard Henry Lee made a motion declaring that the thirteen colonies were free and independent of Great Britain.

In the Continental Congress

The Congress appointed Thomas Jefferson of Virginia, John Adams of Massachusetts, Benjamin Franklin of Pennsylvania, Roger Sherman of Connecticut, and Robert R. Livingston of New York, to draw up a Declaration of Independence.

Jefferson writes the Declaration of Independence

When these great men met to talk over the Declaration, the others urged Jefferson to do the writing, for he was able to put his thoughts on paper in plain, strong words. How important that the Declaration should be well

written, and should contain powerful reasons for breaking away from England and setting up an independent government! A large number of people in America were opposed to separating from England. Besides, good reasons must be given to those brave Englishmen who, like Pitt and Burke, had been our defenders in Parliament.

When Jefferson showed what he had written, the others liked it so well only a few words were changed. Even after several days' debate in Congress, only a few more words were changed. Then it was signed by the members of the Congress and sent out for all the world to see why America was driven to fight for independence.

The other members liked what Jefferson wrote

John Hancock, the president of the Congress, was the first to sign the Declaration, and he did so in large letters, saying that George III might read his name without

SIGNING THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE

From the first historical painting of John Trumbull, now in the rotunda of the Capitol at Washington

spectacles. He also said: "We must all hang together in this matter." "Yes," replied Franklin, "we must all hang together, or we shall hang separately."

Jefferson returned to Virginia, and later became governor, on the resignation of Patrick Henry.

Minister to France

After the war was over and England had taken her armies home, Congress sent Thomas Jefferson as minister to France (1785). The French people liked Jefferson very much, because, like Franklin, he was very democratic, and treated all men alike. The French people were just beginning to overthrow the power of their king, and plan a republic. Jefferson told them how happy the Americans were since they had broken away from George III.

Helps France become a republic

After five years Jefferson returned home. When his negro slaves heard that he was coming back to Monticello they went several miles to greet him. When the carriage reached home they carried him on their shoulders into the house. The slaves were happy for Jefferson, like Washington, was a kind master, and hoped for the day to come when slavery would be no more.

Greeted by his slaves

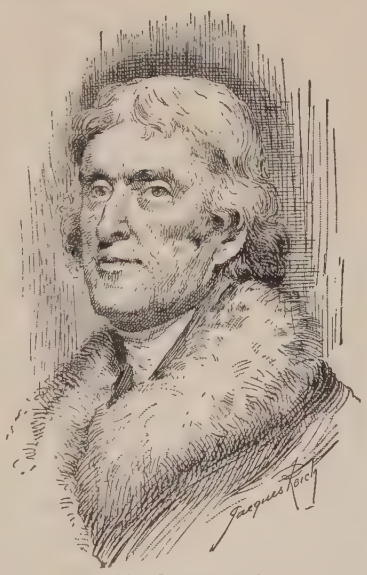
JEFFERSON WELCOMED BACK TO MONTICELLO BY HIS NEGROES

Washington had just been elected the first President of the United States (1789), and was now looking for a good man to be his adviser on questions relating to foreign

nations. He chose Thomas Jefferson to do that work and gave him the office of Secretary of State.

First Secretary of State

Congress disputed and debated over the best ways of paying the Revolutionary War debt, and also over the question as to whether America should take sides with France in the great war between that country and England. The people also disputed over these questions, and formed themselves into two parties. One, the Democratic-Republican, was led by Thomas Jefferson, and the other, the Federalist party, was led by Alexander Hamilton.



THOMAS JEFFERSON

From a painting by Rembrandt Peale, now in the possession of the New York Historical Society, New York City

Leader of the Democratic-Republican party

117. Jefferson President. In 1800 the people elected Jefferson president. He was very popular because he was a friend of the poor as well as of the rich people. He declared that the new national government should in every way be plain and simple, instead of showy like the governments of Europe.

Elected president

Presidents Washington and Adams had had fine receptions, where people wore wigs, silver shoe buckles, and fine lace. When Jefferson became president he did away with all this show and style.

Jefferson also pleased the people by reducing the expenses of the government. He cut down the number

Reduces expenses

of government clerks, soldiers in the army, and sailors in the navy. He spent just as little money as possible in running the government.

One of Jefferson's most important acts while president was the purchase of Louisiana. Thanks to George Rogers Clark and his brave men, England had been forced to give the United States the Mississippi as our western boundary.

Napoleon forces Spain to give France Louisiana

In 1800 Napoleon, the great French general, forced Spain to give France all the region then known as Louisiana, which extended from the Mississippi to the Rocky Mountains, and from Canada to the Gulf of Mexico. Spain, a weak country, had already refused to permit American boats to use the mouth of the Mississippi. What if Napoleon should send his victorious army to Louisiana and close the Mississippi entirely? Jefferson saw the danger at once, and sent James Monroe to Paris to help our minister, Robert R. Livingston, one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence, buy New Orleans and a strip of land on the east side of the Mississippi River near its mouth.

Sells Louisiana to America

Napoleon was about to enter on a terrible war with England, and needed money badly. He was only too glad to sell all of Louisiana for fifteen million dollars (1803). This was more than Livingston was told to buy, but he and Monroe accepted his offer.

The greatness of the purchase

If you will count the number of great states which have been carved out of the "Louisiana Purchase," and look at the great cities and the number of towns which have grown up within "old Louisiana," you will understand why great honor is given to the men who purchased this vast region.

In the very next year Jefferson sent out an expedition under the command of Meriwether Lewis and William Clark to explore this vast country of Louisiana. With white men, Indians, and boats they made their way slowly up the Missouri, across the mountains, and down the Columbia River to the Pacific coast.

The Lewis and Clark expedition

The wonderful stories told by Lewis and Clark gave Americans their first real knowledge of parts of the

THE UNITED STATES IN 1803, AFTER THE LOUISIANA PURCHASE

Louisiana Purchase and of the Oregon region. In 1904, America, with the help of all the great nations of the world, celebrated at St. Louis the buying of this region by holding the Louisiana Purchase Exposition.

Louisiana Purchase Exposition

In 1804 Jefferson was elected president again by a greater majority than before. After serving a second term, he, like Washington, refused to be president for a third time. He retired to Monticello, where he spent his last days pleasantly and where hundreds of friends from

President a second time

Friends visit him at Monticello

all parts of America and Europe came to consult him. The people called him the "Sage of Monticello."

Jefferson lived to see the first two great states, Louisiana and Missouri, carved out of the Louisiana Purchase. He died at Monticello, July 4, 1826. On the same day, at Quincy, Massachusetts, died his longtime friend, John Adams. These two patriots, one the writer the other the defender of the Declaration of Independence, died just half a century after it was signed.

Died July 4, 1826

LEWIS AND CLARK, AMERICAN EXPLORERS IN THE OREGON COUNTRY

118. Discovery of the Columbia River. The purchase of the Louisiana territory by Jefferson opened up a great new field for settlers. It was necessary to know something about the new territory. It was a vast unexplored country stretching from the Mississippi River to the Rockies. The Pacific shore had already been visited by explorers. Boston merchants had sent Captain Robert Gray to the Pacific coast to buy furs of the Indians. He did not try to find an overland route, but sailed around South America and up the coast to Vancouver Island, where he obtained a rich cargo of furs. He then made his way across the Pacific to China, and came back to Boston by way of the Cape of Good Hope—the first American to carry the Stars and Stripes around the world.

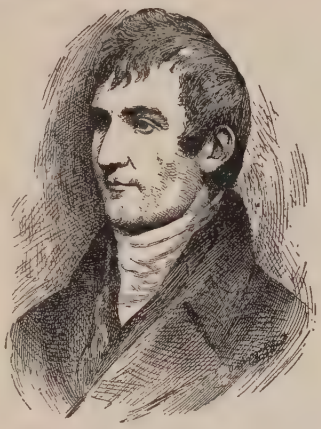
A vast unexplored country

Gray visits the Pacific

On a second voyage to the same region, in the good ship *Columbia*, Gray discovered the mouth of a great river (1792). Up this river he went for nearly thirty miles, probably the first white man to sail upon its waters. Captain Gray named the river the Columbia after his vessel. The Indians had called it the Oregon.

Discovers the mouth of the Columbia

119. The Lewis and Clark Expedition. The next important step in finding a route to the Oregon country was the great expedition undertaken while Thomas Jefferson was yet president.



CAPTAIN MERIWETHER LEWIS
From the original painting by Charles Wilson Peale in Independence Hall, Philadelphia

Lewis and Clark were two young men chosen by Jefferson to explore the region known as the Louisiana Purchase and to make their way across the Rocky Mountains to the Oregon country and to the Pacific. They chose forty-two men to go with them—some as soldiers, others as servants, and still others as hunters. From the little French village of St. Louis they began their adventurous journey in boats in the spring of 1804.

Expedition leaves St. Louis

Up the Missouri River they slowly made their way against the current of the muddy, rushing stream. At one time it was so swift that they could not force boats against it, and at another time the brushwood that came down the river broke their oars.

Near where the city of Council Bluffs now stands, Lewis and Clark held a great meeting with the Indians. They told the Indians that the people of the United States and not the people of France were now the owners of this great land. Together they smoked the "pipe of peace," and the Indians promised to be friendly.

Smoked the "pipe of peace"

On they went till the region near the Black Hills was reached. It was the fall of the year and the trees were

bright with color, and the wild ducks and geese in large numbers were seen going southward.

Spent the winter with the Indians

The company spent the winter on an island sixteen hundred miles from St. Louis. The men built rude homes and fortified them. The Indians were friendly and the explorers spent many evenings around the wigwam fires listening to stories of the country the Indians had to tell them.

The Rocky Mountains

In the spring they bade the Indians good-by, passed the mouth of the Yellowstone, and traveled on till the Rocky Mountains with their long rows of snow-covered peaks came into view.

On the thirteenth day of June they beheld wonderful pictures of the "Falls of the Missouri." The water tore through a vast gorge a dozen miles or more in length.

120. The Way over the Mountains. On they went until their boats could go no farther. They had reached rough and rugged hills and mountains. They climbed the heights as best they could. From now on the suffering was very great indeed.

CAPTAIN WILLIAM CLARK
From the original painting by Charles Wilson Peale in Independence Hall, Philadelphia

The source of the Missouri

One day Captain Lewis went ahead with three men to find Indian guides for the party. They climbed higher and higher until finally they came to a place where the Missouri River takes its rise. They went on and at last came to the western slope of the mountains, down which flowed a stream toward the Pacific Ocean.

Finally Captain Lewis came upon a company of Indian women who could not get away. They all bowed their heads as if expecting to be killed. They led the white men to a band of Indians, who received them with all the signs of kindness they could show.

STATUE OF SACAJAWEA
This Indian woman, as interpreter and guide, was a great aid to the exploring party

Indians are friendly

Now they all turned back to find Clark and his party. When they reached Clark the Indians smoked the "pipe of peace" and Lewis and Clark told the Indians why the United States had sent them out.

They were the first white men these Indians had ever seen. They looked the men over carefully and took a deep interest in their clothing, their food, and in their guns.

The mountains were now rough and barren and the streams ran through deep gorges. The explorers took an old Indian guide and crossed the Bitter Root Mountains into a valley of the same name. They followed an Indian trail over the mountains again and into the Clearwater. They suffered for want of food and on account of the cold. When they reached a tribe of the Nez Percé (Pierced Nose) Indians they ate so much they were all ill.

Explorers suffer from hunger and cold

121. On Waters Flowing into the Pacific. In five log boats, which they had dug out of trees, they glided down the Clearwater to where it meets the Snake River. They camped near the spot where now stands the present town of Lewiston, Idaho. Then they embarked on the

Reach the Columbia River

Snake River and floated down to where it joins the mighty Columbia.

They were among the Indians again, who had plenty of dried fish, for here is the home of the salmon, a fish found in astonishing numbers. The men had never seen so many fish before.

Explorers reach the Pacific

The number of Indians increased as they went toward the Pacific. Finally the party of explorers passed through the Cascade Mountains and were once more on the smooth current of the Columbia. They soon beheld the blue waters of the Pacific.

During their five months' stay on the Pacific, Captain Clark made a map of the region they had gone through. They repaired their guns and made clothes of the skins of elk and of other game.

Lewis and Clark travel different routes

The Indians told them of a shorter route to the Falls of the Missouri, and Captain Lewis and nine men went by this route while Captain Clark with others retraced the old route. They saw nothing of each other for two months, when they all met again in August on the banks of the Missouri.

All return to St. Louis

They reached St. Louis September 23, 1806. The people of the United States were glad to hear of the safe return of the exploring party, for they had long thought the men were dead.

Rewarded by Congress

Both President Jefferson and Congress put great value upon the useful information that the expedition gathered. Congress rewarded every one connected with the expedition. Each man was granted double pay for the time he spent and was given three hundred acres of land. To Captain Lewis was given fifteen hundred acres and to Captain Clark a thousand acres. Lewis was appointed first

governor of Louisiana Territory and Clark was made the governor of Missouri Territory.

122. Fur Traders and Missionaries Lead the Way. Soon after this expedition the fur traders pushed their way across the Rocky Mountains from St. Louis to the Pacific. They found the "gateway of the Rockies,"

LEWIS AND CLARK ON THEIR WAY DOWN SNAKE RIVER

called the South Pass, which opened the way to the Oregon country (1824).

The coming of the missionaries

After the fur traders came the missionary, Nathaniel Wyeth, a New Englander who led a party to the Columbia and established a post (1832). Five missionaries followed him and began to work among the Indians. Very soon Parker and Whitman went out to the Nez Percé Indians, who came over the mountains to meet them near the headwaters of the Green River. Parker returned with the Indians and visited Walla Walla, Vancouver, and

the Spokane and Colville regions. Whitman returned East, was married, and found a missionary, Spaulding, and his wife, and the party went out to the Oregon country to work among the Indians.

123. The Boundary Established. During this time fur traders from Canada and Great Britain were occupying the Oregon country as far as the Columbia River. The United States and Great Britain made a treaty by which they agreed to occupy the country together. This treaty lasted till settlers from the United States made it necessary to have a new treaty. In 1846 a new treaty was made and the present northern boundary was established.

The treaty of 1846

OLIVER HAZARD PERRY, VICTOR IN THE BATTLE OF LAKE ERIE

124. A Young Man Who Captured a British Fleet. Perry was born in Rhode Island in 1785. He went to the best schools, and learned the science of navigation. At fourteen years of age he was a midshipman on his father's vessel, and before he was twenty-one he had served in a war against the Barbary pirates.

A Rhode Islander

When young Perry returned to his home the British were seizing American ships, claiming the right to search them for British sailors. Perry was very bitter toward the British for these insults to his country, and when war was declared he was eager to fight. A fleet of vessels was being built on Lake Erie, and Perry was sent as commandant to take charge of their construction. He promptly set to work, and in a few weeks the ships were ready for battle.

Perry bitter toward the British

Ready for battle

He immediately set sail for Put-In-Bay, where the British fleet was stationed. There he arranged his ships

for battle and raised a banner containing the last words of Captain Lawrence, who had been killed earlier in the war while bravely fighting. "Don't give up the ship!" were the words the flag showed as it was unfurled to the breeze.

OLIVER HAZARD PERRY
After an engraving by Edwin made in 1813 from the Waldo picture

Drives the "Lawrence" into the British fleet

Driving his flagship, the *Lawrence*, right in among the enemy's ships, Perry made them turn all their cannon against it. The loss of life was dreadful, but Perry kept cool. When the last gun of the *Lawrence* could no longer be fired, he ordered a boat to be lowered and with some brave men rowed through a storm of shot and shell to the *Niagara*, another of Perry's large ships. Then he drove this ship into the midst of the fight. In fifteen minutes the two largest British ships struck their colors. The remainder of the fleet then surrendered.

Broke British power in the West

This victory broke the British power in the West. Congress voted resolutions in praise of Perry and ordered a gold medal struck in his honor. Wherever he went the people paid him great attention, and at his home he was given a royal welcome.

ANDREW JACKSON, THE VICTOR OF NEW ORLEANS

125. How a Poor Boy Began to Rise. Andrew Jackson was born of Scotch-Irish parents who had

Jackson a Scotch-Irishman

emigrated from Ireland to South Carolina. His father died and his mother moved to North Carolina to be among her own people. Here, a few days after his father's death, in the same year in which England passed the Tea Act (1767), Andrew was born.

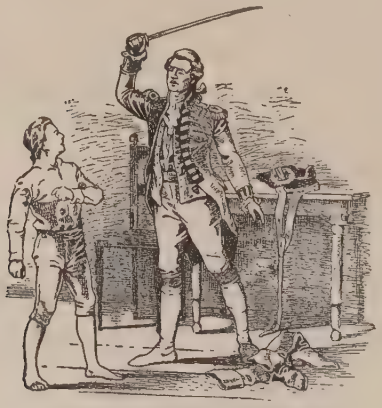
Learns from the woods

Schools were few and poor. In fact, Andrew was too poor himself to do anything but work. He learned far more from the pine woods in which he played than from books. At nine he was a tall, slender, freckle-faced lad, fond of sports, and full of fun and mischief. But woe to the boy that made "Andy" angry!

Learns to hate the British

When thirteen, he learned what war meant, for it was in the days of the Revolution when Colonel Tarleton came along and killed more than a hundred and wounded one hundred fifty of Jackson's neighbors and friends. Among the killed was one of the boy's own brothers. Andrew never forgave the British.

A prisoner of war



JACKSON REFUSES TO SHINE THE OFFICER'S BOOTS

At fourteen he was taken prisoner by the British. "Boy," shouted an officer, "clean these boots!" "I will not," replied Jackson. "I am a prisoner of war, and claim to be treated as such." The officer drew his sword and struck Jackson a blow upon the head, and another upon the hand. These blows left scars which Jackson carried to his grave. He was taken a prisoner to Camden, where smallpox killed his remaining brother and left Andrew poor

and sickly looking. His mother had come to Camden to nurse her sons. A little later she lost her life in caring for American prisoners on British ships in Charleston Harbor, so Jackson was now an orphan of the Revolution.

Loses his mother

THE HERMITAGE NEAR NASHVILLE
This historic house, the home of Andrew Jackson, is now owned by the state of Tennessee

After the Revolutionary times had gone by, Jackson studied law and at the age of twenty was admitted to practice in the courts of the state.

A lawyer before twenty

But stories of the beautiful country that were coming over the mountains from Tennessee, stirred his blood. He longed to go, and in company with nearly a hundred men, women, and children, Jackson set out for the goodly land.

Follows the settlers over the mountains

They crossed the mountains into east Tennessee, where was the town of Jonesboro, not far from where Governor Sevier lived.

Jackson and the others rested awhile before taking up their march to Nashville. From Jonesboro to Nashville they had to look out for Indians. Only once were they troubled. One night, when men, women, and children were resting in their rude tents, Jackson sat at the foot of a tree smoking his corncob pipe. He heard "owls" hooting near by. These were Indian signals. "A little too natural," thought Jackson. He aroused the people,

Outwits the Indians

and silently they marched away. Another party, coming an hour or two later, stopped in the same place, and were massacred by Indians.

Practicing law on the frontier

Arriving in Nashville, Jackson began the practice of law. To reach the court, he sometimes had to ride miles and miles, day after day, through thick forests where the Indians might lie in wait.

When Tennessee was made a territory, Jackson became district attorney. He had many "ups and downs" with the bad men of the frontier. Jackson himself had a bad temper, and woe to the man who made him angry. He either got a sound thrashing or had to fight a duel.

In Congress

When Tennessee became a state, Jackson was elected to Congress. A year or so afterward (1797) he was appointed a United States senator to fill a vacancy. But such a position did not give him excitement enough, so he resigned the next year and returned to Nashville. He was a frontier judge for a time, then he became a man of business.

A call to arms

126. How Jackson Won a Great Victory. When the War of 1812 broke out there was a call to arms! The British will capture New Orleans! Twenty-five hundred frontiersmen rallied to Jackson's call. He was just the man to lead them. They decided to go to New Orleans by water.

Down the Cumberland to the Ohio in boats! Down the Ohio to the Mississippi, and down the Mississippi to Natchez! Here they stopped, only to learn that there were no British near.

The twenty-five hundred men marched the long, dreary way home. Jackson was the toughest one among them. He could march farther and last longer without

food than any of them. The soldiers nicknamed him "Old Hickory."

How he won the name "Old Hickory"

Once more he was at home, where he now was a great man among his friends. About this time Jackson had a fierce fight with Thomas H. Benton and received a pistol shot in the shoulder. Before he was again well the people who suffered from the Fort Mims massacre were calling loudly for help. Tecumseh had stirred up the Creeks to murder five hundred men, women, and children at this fort in Alabama.

Another call to arms

Twenty-five hundred men answered Jackson's call. They marched south through a barren country. Food was scarce. His army, almost starved, threatened to go home. A half-starved soldier saw Jackson sitting under a tree and asked him for something to eat. Looking up, Jackson said: "It has always been a rule with me never to turn away a hungry man. I will cheerfully divide with you." Then he drew from his pocket a few acorns, saying: "This is the best and only fare I have."

Jackson and the hungry soldier

JACKSON SHARES HIS ACORNS WITH THE HUNGRY SOLDIER

But Jackson soon received reënforcements, and then, in spite of all these drawbacks, he broke the power of the Creeks in the great battle of Horseshoe Bend on the Tallapoosa

River in Alabama. After that the Indians were only too glad to cease fighting and sue for peace.

A third call to arms

A BREASTWORK OF COTTON BALES

Jackson was hardly home again before President Madison made him a major-general, and sent him with an army to guard New Orleans from the British.

After attacking and capturing Pensacola, a Spanish fort which the English occupied, he hurried his army on to New Orleans. Nothing had been done to defend the city. Jackson immediately declared martial law. He threw himself with all the energy he had into getting New Orleans ready, for the British troops were already landing.

The two armies

The British general had twelve thousand veterans, fresh from their victory over the great Napoleon. Jackson had only half as many men. But nearly every man was a sharpshooter. They were riflemen from the wilds of Kentucky, Tennessee, and Mississippi, and every man was burning with an ardent desire to fight and defeat the redcoats.

A LITTLE BREASTWORK OF SUGAR BARRELS

Jackson had not long to wait. On came the British

in solid column, with flags flying and drums beating. The fog was breaking away. Behind the breastworks

THE BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS

Won by Jackson after peace was made, this battle helped to make him president and to change history

stood the Americans with cannon loaded to the muzzle and with deadly rifles primed for the fight.

The beginning of the battle

The cannon were the first to fire, but the redcoats closed up their shattered ranks, and moved on. Those lines of red! How splendid and terrible they looked! The Americans gave three cheers. "Fire!" rang out along the line. The breastworks were instantly a sheet of fire. Along the whole line it blazed and rolled. No human being could face that fire. The British soldiers broke and fled.

The battle in earnest

Once more they rallied, led by General Pakenham, a relative of the great Duke of Wellington. But who could withstand that fire? Pakenham was slain, and again his troops fled. The battle was over. The British

had lost two thousand six hundred men and the Americans only twenty-one! This victory was won after peace had been made between England and America. A ship was then hurrying to America with the glad news.

The victory after the treaty

ANDREW JACKSON
From a painting by Thomas Sully which hangs in the rooms of the Historical Society of Pennsylvania at Philadelphia

Everywhere the people rejoiced greatly over the victory of New Orleans. Jackson was a great hero, and wherever he went crowds followed him, and cried out, "Long live the victor of New Orleans!"

Jackson a hero

For several years Jackson remained at the head of the army in the South. The Seminole War was fought, and those Indians were compelled to make peace.

127. The People's President. The people of the United States elected Jackson president in 1828, and reëlected him in 1832 by a greater majority than before, showing that he was very popular.

Elected president

President Jackson had a quarrel with the men who were managing the United States Bank. This bank kept the money for the government. He ordered that the money of the government be taken out of this bank and put in different State Banks which were called "pet" banks. In the Senate of the United States at this time were three men of giant-like ability — Henry Clay, Daniel Webster, and John C. Calhoun. They joined together to oppose President Jackson in his fight against the United States Bank. These men made many

Quarrels with the bank

Great men oppose Jackson

long and very bitter speeches against the president.

The Senate finally passed a resolution blaming President Jackson for taking the money away from the United States Bank. President Jackson was furious. He wrote a protest and sent it to the Senate. The people in the states took sides, and the excitement spread to all parts of the country.

In the Senate was another great man, Thomas H. Benton of Missouri. Although Jackson and Benton had once fought a terrible duel in Nashville, they now were good friends. Benton attacked Clay, Webster, and Calhoun in powerful speeches and defended President Jackson in every way he could. At last, after several years, he succeeded in getting the Senate to expunge, or take away, from their records the resolution blaming President Jackson.

Jackson and Benton friends

There was great rejoicing among Jackson's friends, and Senator Benton was the hero of the day. President Jackson gave a great dinner party in Washington in Benton's honor.

THE SCENE OF JACKSON'S CAMPAIGNS

For a long time South Carolina and other southern states had been complaining about the high tariff which Congress had passed. In 1832 South Carolina declared in a state convention that her people should not pay the tariff any longer. She resolved to

Nullification

fight rather than obey the law and pay the tariff. This act of the convention was called nullification.

THE TOMB OF ANDREW JACKSON

President Jackson's proclamation

President Jackson was very angry when he heard of this act of South Carolina. He told General Scott to take soldiers and war vessels to Charleston, and enforce the law at all hazards. The president published a letter to the people of South Carolina, warning them not to nullify a law of Congress.

These acts made President Jackson very popular at the North, where the people all believed the president had saved the Union from breaking up.

Jackson a Union man

In 1837 his second term as president expired and he retired from public life after having seen his good friend, Martin Van Buren of New York, made president.

Death at the Hermitage

Jackson returned to Tennessee, greatly beloved by the people. There, in his home, called the Hermitage, he spent the rest of his life. He died in 1845, at the age of seventy-eight.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Eli Whitney was born in Massachusetts. *2.* As a boy he was very much interested in tools, and worked in his father's shop with all kinds of mechanical contrivances. *3.* He earned his way through college doing carpenter work. *4.* After graduation he set out to teach in Savannah. *5.* He failed to get the situation, and went to visit a friend who had taken much interest in him. *6.* The South needed a machine to separate the cotton fiber from the

seed. *7.* Whitney set to work to make one, at the suggestion of his friend, Mrs. Greene. *8.* The cotton gin revolutionized the South. *9.* It made cotton raising the chief industry, and brought thousands of slaves into the country.

10. Thomas Jefferson, born in Virginia, loved books; while in college he met Patrick Henry. *11.* Went to the Burgesses and planned the committees of correspondence. *12.* Jefferson was sent to the Congress of 1776 and wrote the Declaration of Independence. *13.* After the war Jefferson was sent as Minister to France. *14.* Washington chose him as Secretary of State, and he founded the Democratic-Republican party. *15.* Jefferson was popular as president. *16.* He cut down expenses, and with his savings in running the government purchased Louisiana.

17. The Columbia River was discovered by Gray. *18.* The way to the Oregon country was made known by Lewis and Clark. *19.* The Indians received them with kindness along the route. *20.* They followed the Columbia until they reached the Pacific; Clark made a map of the region they had gone through. *21.* As a reward, Lewis was appointed governor of the Louisiana Territory and Clark of the Missouri Territory. *22.* Fur traders and missionaries soon found their way to the Oregon country.

23. Perry went to serve against the pirates, was eager to fight the English when war broke out, and was appointed commandant at Lake Erie. *24.* Perry built a fleet and won a famous victory over the English. *25.* A gold medal was struck in his honor by Congress.

26. Andrew Jackson was born of poor parents; learned from the woods more than from books. *27.* Jackson was captured by the British. *28.* His mother died nursing American soldiers. *29.* He studied law, went over the mountains to Nashville, and was elected to Congress. *30.* He also served as United States senator. *31.* Jackson defeated the Indians, captured Pensacola, and won a brilliant victory at New Orleans. *32.* Jackson was elected president and was opposed in his policy by Clay, Webster, and Calhoun. *33.* Threatened South Carolina over nullification. *34.* Died at the Hermitage in 1845.

Study Questions. *1.* What did Whitney like to do as a boy? *2.* How did he help himself through college? *3.* Why

did he go to Savannah? *4.* Whom did he meet on the way? *5.* Describe how cotton was then separated from the seed. *6.* Describe the action of the machine made by Whitney. *7.* What was the effect of his invention? *8.* How did the value of cotton shipped out of the country compare with other goods? *9.* What effect did the invention have on negro slavery in the South?

10. Name some things boys did on a Virginia plantation in Jefferson's time. *11.* Name some of Virginia's great men whom Jefferson knew. *12.* Explain how the committees of correspondence worked. *13.* Who were the men appointed to make a Declaration of Independence? *14.* Why did Jefferson write the Declaration? *15.* Why did French people like Jefferson? *16.* Picture Jefferson's return home. *17.* How was Jefferson fitted for Secretary of State? *18.* What were the people then disputing about, and who were their leaders? *19.* Why did Jefferson want the government to be plain and simple? *20.* Who wanted it different? *21.* Tell the story of the buying of Louisiana. *22.* Why did Americans think the buying a great event? *23.* Why did Jefferson not become president a third time? *24.* What can you tell of the friendship of John Adams and Thomas Jefferson? *25.* Describe the trip of Lewis and Clark up the Missouri River. *26.* How did the Indians on the way receive them? *27.* How did they return home? *28.* What offices were given Lewis and Clark?

29. What important command was given to Perry? *30.* Tell what he did when his ships were ready for the "Battle of Lake Erie." *31.* Picture the battle. *32.* What honors were given to Perry?

33. Where was Andrew Jackson born? *34.* Name some other boys who learned more from the woods than from books. *35.* Mention some early experiences Jackson had with the British soldiers. *36.* What other experiences did he have in the war? *37.* What led him to go to Nashville? *38.* Explain how Jackson outwitted the Indians. *39.* What did he do as a young lawyer? *40.* Tell the story of Jackson's first call to arms. *41.* Give a full account of Jackson's second call to arms. *42.* Imagine yourself one of Jackson's soldiers, and tell what you saw and heard at the battle of New Orleans. *43.* Give an account of Jackson's fight against the United

States Bank. *44.* Who was Thomas H. Benton, and why did he defend President Jackson? *45.* What action did South Carolina take in 1832, and what did the president do? *46.* Where did Jackson live after his last term as president?

Suggested Readings. ELI WHITNEY: Brooks, *The Story of Cotton*, 90–99; Southworth, *Builders of Our Country*, Vol. II, 108–116; Shillig, *The Four Wonders*, 1–32.

JEFFERSON: Wright, *Children's Stories of American Progress*, 55–85; Cooke, *Stories of the Old Dominion*, 180–192; Hart, *How Our Grandfathers Lived*, 317–320; Butterworth, *In the Days of Jefferson*, 32–168, 175–206, 216–264.

PERRY: Beebe, *Four American Naval Heroes*, 71–130; Wright, *Children's Stories of American Progress*, 130–144; Hart, *How Our Grandfathers Lived*, 241–242, 248–249; Glascock, *Stories of Columbia*, 172–174.

JACKSON: Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 162–172; Blaisdell and Ball, *Hero Stories from American History*, 185–198; Hart, *How Our Grandfathers Lived*, 284–291; Barton, *Four American Patriots*, 133–192; Frost, *Old Hickory*.

THE MEN WHO MADE THE NATION GREAT BY THEIR INVENTIONS AND DISCOVERIES

ROBERT FULTON, THE INVENTOR OF THE STEAMBOAT

How boats were driven

128. The Invention of the Steamboat. Once there were no steam engines to drive boats. On sea and river they were driven by wind, and on canals they were pulled along by horses.

Inventors before Fulton

James Rumsey on the Potomac, John Fitch on the Delaware, and William Longstreet on the Savannah had each invented and tried some kind of steamboat, before Robert Fulton.

Fulton was born of Irish parents, in New Britain, Pennsylvania, in 1765. At the age of three he lost his father. Young Fulton had a great taste for drawing, painting, and inventing.

He went to Philadelphia, then the largest city in the Union, when he was twenty, and engaged in painting and drawing. His first savings were given to his widowed mother to make her comfortable.

ROBERT FULTON
After the painting by Benjamin West

Studied under Benjamin West

Fulton finally decided to be an artist, and went to England to make his home with Benjamin West, a great painter who once lived at Philadelphia.

There he became acquainted with the Duke of Bridgewater, who influenced him to become a civil engineer. Fulton now met James Watt, who had greatly improved the steam engine. At one time the young man aided Watt in building an engine.

Influenced to become an engineer

Fulton next went to France, where he became interested in plans for inventing diving boats, torpedoes, and steamboats. Here he met Robert R. Livingston, a signer of the Declaration of Independence, then United States Minister to France. Livingston took a deep interest in his experiments in driving boats by steam, and furnished him the means to make them.

Meets Livingston in France

Fulton made a "model" boat, which he left in France. Shortly afterward, he built a boat twenty-six feet long and eight feet wide. In this vessel he put a steam engine. The trial trips proved beyond a doubt that steamboats could be made.

Fulton's trial boats

Livingston believed in Fulton and his steamboat.

When he returned to New York, Livingston obtained from the legislature the right to navigate the waters of the state by steam for twenty years. The one condition was that the boat should go against the current of the Hudson at the rate of four miles an hour.

Twenty years' rights

Fulton got his engine from the inventors, Watt and Boulton, in England—the only place where suitable engines could be found. The engine came in 1806. A boat called the *Clermont* was built to carry it. She was one hundred thirty feet long and eighteen feet wide. She had a mast with a sail. At both ends she was decked over, and in the middle the engine was placed. Two large side-wheels dipped two feet into the water.

Gets engine in England

The "Clermont"

129. The "Clermont" Moves. At one o'clock in the afternoon of August 7, 1807, a great crowd gathered to

SCENE ON A CANAL

see the first voyage of the *Clermont.* Many people did not expect to see the vessel go. They believed Fulton

and Livingston had spent their money for nothing. Fulton gave his signal from the deck of the *Clermont*. The people looked on in astonishment as the boat moved steadily up the pathway of the Hudson.

A great victory for Fulton and Livingston

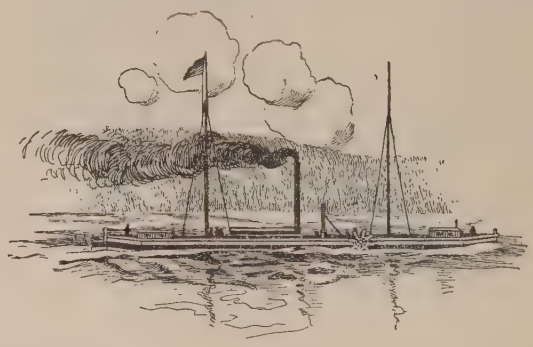
The *Clermont* kept on going till out of sight, and the crowds of wondering people went home hardly believing the evidence of their eyes. Up the river, against the current of the mighty Hudson, she made her way till Albany was reached. She had gone one hundred fifty miles in thirty-two hours, and won a great victory for Fulton and Livingston.

Name of boat changed to "North River"

When winter came the *Clermont* was taken out of the water and rebuilt. They covered her from stem to stern with a deck. Under the deck they built two cabins, with a double row of berths. Everything was done to make her attractive in the eyes of the people. They changed her name to the *North River*. In the spring she made her trips regularly up and down the Hudson.

Steamboats appear on different rivers

130. Steamboats on All the Rivers. In 1809 a steamboat was built on Lake Champlain, another on the Raritan, and a third on the Delaware. From this time forward, steamboats, carrying passengers and freight from place to place, began to appear on all the great rivers in the settled portions of the United States.



THE "CLERMONT"

In 1811 a steamboat was built on the Ohio River at Pittsburgh. It started on its trip down the beautiful Ohio. People gathered on the banks of the river to see it go by. The steamboat, at first, made a frightful noise. Hence when it came to places where news traveled slowly, the people were sometimes frightened, and the negroes, terror stricken, ran crying into the woods.

People along the Ohio frightened

WATCHING THE "CLERMONT" ON ITS FIRST VOYAGE UP THE HUDSON

In 1814 a steamboat carried supplies to General Jackson at New Orleans, and helped him to win the great battle fought there.

A steamboat helped Jackson

Seven steamboats were running on the Ohio and the Mississippi at the close of the War of 1812. Before another year went by, a steamboat had made its way from New Orleans against the currents of the Mississippi and the Ohio rivers to Louisville, laden with goods from Europe.

The steamboat had now won a place on the American rivers. It aided in the rapid settlement of the country. It made travel quick and easy, and it carried the goods of settlers up and down the rivers.

Robert Fulton died in 1815, deeply mourned by all his countrymen, and was buried in Trinity churchyard, New York City.

Robert Fulton dies, 1815

Steamboats carry goods up the Mississippi

131. The Erie Canal. Before Fulton invented the steamboat, supplies had been carried to the western settlers over the mountains from the East. Now, however, steamboats puffed up the Mississippi from New Orleans loaded down with goods that had been brought all the way from Europe. The settlers could get all the supplies they wanted and at a much lower cost. For this reason the merchants of New York and the East were in danger of losing all their trade with the settlers. They saw that they must have some connection with the West by water, and so they planned the Erie Canal. It took seven years to dig. When it was finished it was three hundred sixty-three miles long, forty feet wide, and four feet deep. The depth was later increased to seven feet. It stretched straight across the state of New York from Lake Erie to the Hudson River.

Erie Canal across New York

In the autumn of 1825, when the canal was finished, there was a great celebration. A "fleet" of canal boats carried Governor Clinton of New York and a number of other distinguished men across the state.

The merchants of the East were no longer afraid of the Mississippi route, for they had a route of their own. The canal became the great highway of commerce from the East to the West and from the West to the East. New York recovered her trade, and flourishing cities grew up along the canal.

New York recovered her trade

But there were cities in the East that could not use the canal. Farther south they could not dig a canal across the mountains. All their goods had to be carried over the Cumberland Gap on the backs of horses. But a new means of travel and transportation had been invented, which was to far surpass the steamboat and

which was to help every city no matter where located.

132. Railroad Building. The first railroad in America was a very rude affair. There were no "palace cars" or steel rails, nor did the trains run at a speed of sixty miles an hour. Instead, cars that looked like huge wagons ran on wooden rails and were dragged along by horses. **The first railroad**

But George Stephenson had thought out a plan for a machine that would pull the cars along by steam. He called his engine "Puffing Billy." He kept at work always improving it. In 1825, after eleven years of hard work, he made an engine that could pull both passengers and freight. **Stephenson's "Puffing Billy"**

In 1828 the first long railroad in America was started. A great ceremony took place. It was a very solemn occasion. Charles Carroll, the only living signer of the Declaration of Independence, drove the first spade into the ground where the first rail was to be laid. As he did so he said, "I consider this among the most important acts of my life, second only to that of signing the Declaration of Independence." This railroad was the famous Baltimore & Ohio. **The first long railroad**

Inventors continued to improve the locomotive. In 1831 an American company built one which ran at the rate of fifteen miles an hour. At that time that was considered a very rapid rate.

Since then railroad building and transportation have improved wonderfully. By 1842 one could travel by rail from Boston to Buffalo. But it was not until ten years later that Chicago was connected by rail with the East. **By rail from Boston to Buffalo**

Gradually the railroads spread a network over the country. In 1857 St. Louis and Chicago were connected.

To the Pacific coast

A railroad to the Pacific coast was much needed, and Congress voted an appropriation of $50,000,000 for the work. By 1869 the great work was completed. Other lines to the coast were started, and to-day many railroads cross the mountains, connecting the Pacific with the North, South, and Atlantic regions.

SAMUEL F. B. MORSE, INVENTOR OF THE TELEGRAPH

133. The Coming of the Telegraph. Samuel Morse was born in Massachusetts (1791). His father was a Presbyterian minister. Young Morse went to the common schools and to Yale College.

Morse, 1791

In college he used his spare time in painting, and after graduation he went to England and studied under the best artists. He came home and for a time painted portraits for a living.

Paints portraits

MORSE WORKING ON HIS MACHINE

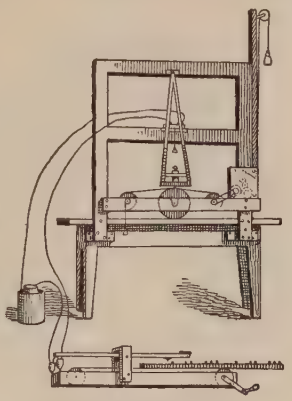
After having spent some years abroad, in work and study, Morse was again returning home from France when the idea of sending news by electricity first came to him.

The idea came to him of sending news by electricity

"Why can't it be?" said Morse to a friend, who answered, "There is great need of sending news by

electricity." He began, then and there, to plan a machine and to invent an alphabet. This was all done on shipboard. When he reached land he went to work with a will at his new-found problem.

A machine and an alphabet



THE FIRST TELEGRAPH INSTRUMENT

For a long time the work went on very slowly, for inventors must eat and sleep and pay their way in the world. While Morse was struggling over his machine and trying to make himself master of the strange force called electricity, he was very often hungry and at times even on the point of starvation.

The hungry inventor

Now came a bright spot in his career. A young man named Alfred Vail, an excellent mechanic, saw Morse's telegraph instruments, and immediately believed they would be successful. Young Vail borrowed money and became Morse's assistant in the great work. For what he did he deserves credit next to Morse himself.

Alfred Vail

A patent must now be had and the telegraph must be so improved that they could show it to a committee of Congress. It was arranged that Vail and a mechanic by the name of Baxter should do the work behind locked doors. For, if some one should happen to see the instruments, and obtain a patent first, then Morse and Vail would be ruined.

Getting ready for Congress

Behind locked doors

In the locked shop the two men worked steadily day after day. Vail made many improvements. Among these was the new "dot and dash" alphabet. At last, one day in January, 1838, everything was in complete

The dot and dash alphabet

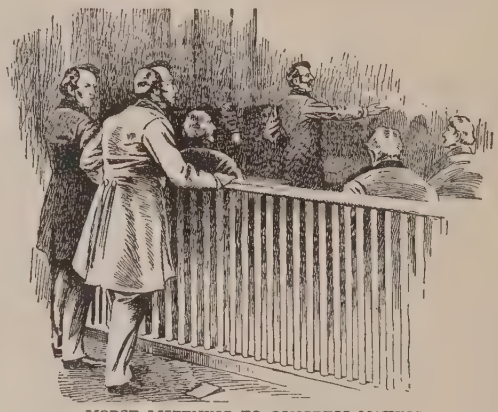
working order. Baxter, hatless and coatless, ran for Mr. Vail's father to come at once and see the telegraph work.

MORSE SHOWING HIS COMPLETED WORK

At one end of the wire stood young Vail, and at the other stood Morse. This wire was stretched around the room so that it was three miles in length. The elder Vail wrote: "A patient waiter is no loser." He said to his son: "If you can send this message, and Mr. Morse can read it at the other end, I shall be convinced." It was done, and there was great rejoicing. The invention was hurried to Washington, and young Vail took out a patent in the name of Morse.

The final test

Patented in Morse's name



MORSE LISTENING TO CONGRESS MAKING FUN OF HIS INVENTION

Morse obtained permission to set up his telegraphic instruments in rooms in the capitol. These rooms were filled with congressmen watching the strange business. Members in one room would carry on witty conversations with persons in the

Congressmen watch the instruments

other room. This was great fun for those looking on. But it was slow work talking with members of Congress and winning their help.

134. The Government Aids. Finally Morse asked for thirty thousand dollars to build a line from Washington to Baltimore. The bill met opposition, one member moving that a part of the money be used in building a railroad to the moon, another that it be used in making experiments in mesmerism.

SAMUEL F. B. MORSE
From a photograph taken by Abraham Bogardus, New York City

Congress makes fun of the idea

Morse stood leaning against the railing which separated the outsiders from the members. He was greatly excited, and turning to a friend, said: "I have spent seven years and all that I have in making this instrument perfect. If it succeeds, I am a made man; if it fails, I am ruined. I have a large family, and not money enough to pay my board bill when I leave the city."

Morse ruined if bill does not pass

It was ten o'clock, March 3, 1843, the last night of that Congress. Morse gave up and went to his hotel. In the morning a friend met and congratulated him on the action of Congress in granting thirty thousand dollars for his telegraph line—the last thing Congress did that night. Morse was surprised. The telegraph line to Baltimore was built and the first dispatch was ready to send. Morse called the young woman who had been the first to congratulate him, to send this first message: "What hath God wrought."

Telegraph line to Baltimore built

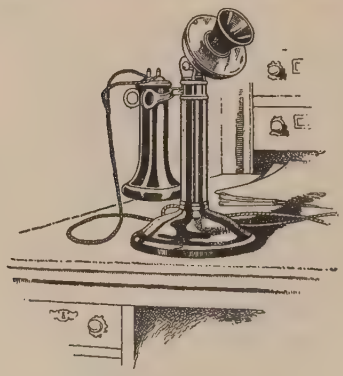
The first message

The success of Morse was slow at first, but he lived to see the day when his instrument was used in Europe. He visited Europe again, was given gold medals, and received other rewards and honors from many of the rulers of the different European countries.

Honors heaped on the inventor

He died in 1872 at the good old age of eighty-one. Congress and state legislatures paid tribute to his memory.

Morse dies, 1872



THE TELEPHONE

135. A Wider Use for Electricity. Samuel Morse was hardly in his grave before a wonderful invention was made which called electricity into far wider use in carrying news. This new invention was the telephone, and two men, Bell and Gray, applied for patents on it at almost the same time.

The telephone

The instruments are wonderful conductors of sound, carrying, as they do, the actual words and tones of the voice.

But Marconi has gone beyond them all in his invention. He sends the electric wave forth without the aid of a wire, thus giving rise to wireless telegraphy.

Marconi beats them all

CYRUS WEST FIELD, WHO LAID THE ATLANTIC CABLE BETWEEN AMERICA AND EUROPE

136. The Atlantic Cable. Cyrus W. Field was born in Massachusetts in 1819. His grandfather was a Revolutionary soldier. Cyrus went to school in his native town of Stockbridge, and at fifteen was given a

Cyrus W. Field, 1819

place in a New York store at fifty dollars a year. Before he was twenty-one he went into business for himself. At the end of a dozen years he was the head of a prosperour firm. In 1853 he retired from active business.

In business for himself

Field became interested in a man who was joining Newfoundland with the mainland by means of a telegraph line. "Why not make a telegraph line to span the Atlantic?" thought Field. He went to work, and put his schemes before Peter Cooper and other generous men. They believed in them.

Why not span the Atlantic?

Field next went abroad and laid his plan before a number of Englishmen. He pleaded so eloquently that they, too, were convinced. He returned to America to lay the matter before Congress and ask that body to vote him a sum of money.

Englishmen also approve the plan

Congress was very slow about it, and the bill did not pass until the last days of that session. President Pierce signed it the last day of his term as president.

President Pierce signs the bill

Field returned to England and watched over the making of his "cable." In August, 1857, everything was ready. The cable lay coiled on shipboard, ready to be let out in the Atlantic. The great ship started, and everything went well till three hundred thirty-five miles of the cable had been let out, when it broke in two. It was the same as losing half a million dollars.

PRESIDENT PIERCE SIGNING THE FIELD BILL

Half a million dollars gone

Field went back to England and began promptly to prepare for a second trial. He then came to America and made arrangements to use

A second trial

the *Niagara*, a large vessel. The British ship, *Agamemnon*, was also taken to help in this second trial. The ships started in mid-ocean, one going one way and one going the other way. This time only one hundred eleven miles were laid, when the cable again parted.

Breaks again

Field hastened to London to meet the men who had backed him in his undertaking with their money. It was a council of war after a terrible defeat! But Mr. Field did not believe in surrender, even to the sea.

A council of war

On the seventeenth of July, 1858, the ships again set sail for mid-ocean. They "spliced" the cable, and the *Niagara* with Mr. Field on board sailed away for Newfoundland. The British ship went the other way. This time they were successful. Both countries were excited. Queen Victoria flashed a message under the sea to President Buchanan.

Success

Great was the rejoicing in New York, the home of Mr. Field. A religious service, expressive of the deep interest of the people in the success of his work, was held in Trinity Church, at which two hundred clergymen in gowns appeared; national salutes were fired, a great procession was formed, an address was made by the mayor of the city and, at a very late hour, a grand banquet was held. While the banquet was going on, the cable gave its last throb, and parted.

A great day in New York

CYRUS W. FIELD
From a photograph by Elliott and Fry, London

The very day that a whole city rose up to do honor to

the Atlantic telegraph and its author, it gave its last flash and then went to sleep forever in its ocean grave.

The cable parts the third time

After five years of slow and toilsome work, caused by the fact that the Civil War was raging in the United States, Cyrus W. Field was again ready. When the vessel, bearing the cable, was within six hundred miles of land, the cable broke again.

LAYING THE FIRST ATLANTIC CABLE

After a wait of five years

137. The Final Success. An Anglo-American Telegraph Company was now formed. Mr. Field subscribed $50,000, Daniel Gooch $100,000, and another person promised to bear a part of the expense. On a Friday they set out and on another Friday they reached America with the cable safely laid. Mr. Field sent this message to England:

The money subscribed

"Hearts Content, July 27, 1866. We arrived here at nine o'clock this morning. All well. Thank God, the cable is laid, and is in perfect working order."

"Hearts Content"

The success of this undertaking, after so many years of failure, produced a great effect throughout the civilized world. Mr. Field was the center of all rejoicing. Congress voted him a gold medal. England did honor to his name. The Paris Exposition of 1867 gave him the highest medal it had to bestow. From Italy he received a decoration. States and chambers of commerce in all parts of the nation passed resolutions in praise of his great work.

Effect on the civilized world

Great honor for Mr. Field

New York, 1892

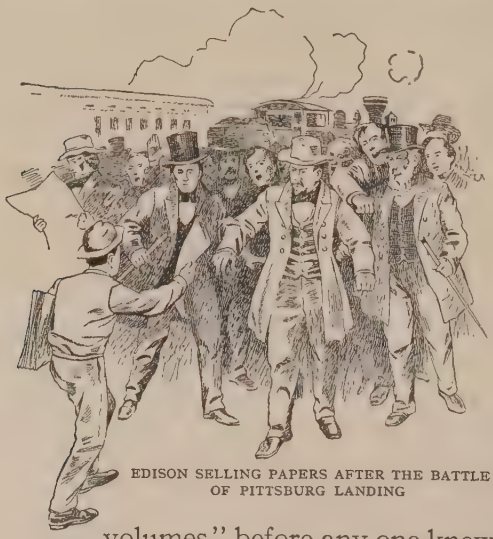
Finally he took a trip around the world and received honors from many nations. Mr. Field lived at Tarrytown, New York. He died in New York City in 1892, at the age of seventy-three.

THOMAS A. EDISON, THE GREATEST INVENTOR OF ELECTRICAL MACHINERY IN THE WORLD

His parentage

138. The Wizard of the Electrical World. Thomas A. Edison was born in 1847 at Milan, Ohio. His father's people were Dutch and his mother's were Scotch. When he was seven years of age his parents removed to Port Huron, Michigan.

Edison owed his early training to his mother's care. At the age of twelve he was reading such books as Gibbon's *Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, Hume's *History of England*, Newton's *Principia*, and Ure's *Dictionary of Science*. The last-named book was too full of mathematics for him.



EDISON SELLING PAPERS AFTER THE BATTLE OF PITTSBURG LANDING

A tireless reader

That Edison was a great reader is proved by his resolution to read all the books in the Detroit Free Library! He did finish "fifteen feet of volumes" before any one knew what he was doing.

In 1862 General Grant fought the terrible battle of

Pittsburg Landing. Everybody wanted to hear the news. Edison bought a thousand newspapers, boarded a train, and the engineer allowed him a few minutes at each station to sell papers.

As the first station came in sight, Edison looked ahead and saw a wild crowd of men. He grabbed an armful of papers, rushed out, and sold forty before the train left. At the next station the platform was crowded with a yelling mob. He raised the price to ten cents, but sold one hundred fifty.

His experience as a newsboy

Finally he reached Port Huron. The station was a mile from town. Edison seized his papers. He met the crowd coming just as he reached a church where a prayer meeting was being held. The prayer meeting broke up, and though he raised his price to twenty-five cents he "took in a young fortune."

Edison began very early to make experiments in electricity. After rigging up a line at home, hitching the wire to the legs of a cat, and rubbing the cat's back vigorously, he saw the failure of his first experiment—the cat would not stand!

Experimenting in electricity

At Mt. Clemens, one day, young Edison saw a child playing on the railroad with its back to an on-coming freight train. He dashed at the child, and both tumbled to the ground at the roadside. For this act of bravery the telegraph operator gave him lessons in telegraphy.

Saves a life and receives lessons in telegraphy

139. Begins to Study Electricity. He studied ten days, then disappeared. He returned with a complete set of telegraphic instruments made by his own hand! After his trade was learned he began a period of wandering as a telegraph operator. For many boys still in their teens this would have been a time of destruction, but

Makes a set of telegraphic instruments

Becomes a tramp telegrapher

Edison neither drank nor smoked. He wandered from Adrian to Fort Wayne, Indianapolis, Cincinnati, Memphis, and Boston, stopping for shorter or longer periods at each place.

THOMAS ALVA EDISON
After a photograph from life

By the time he was twenty-two he had invented and partly finished his plan of sending two dispatches along the same wire at the same time. This was equal to doubling the number of wires in use.

Edison was a poor boy and was two or three hundred dollars in debt. He went from Boston to New York. The speculators in Wall Street were wild with excitement, for the electric machinery had broken down. Nobody could make it work. Edison pushed his way to the front, saw the difficulty, and at once removed it.

Repairs electric machinery and gains a situation

All were loud in their praise of Edison. On the next day he was engaged to take charge of all the electric machinery at three hundred dollars per month.

Receives forty thousand dollars for his inventions

After a time he joined a company and gave his time to working out inventions. The company finally sent a number of men to ask Edison how much he would take for his inventions. He had already decided to say five thousand dollars. But when the men came he said that he did not know. He was dumfounded when they offered him forty thousand dollars!

140. Edison's Inventions. In 1873 Edison established his first laboratory or workshop in Newark, New Jersey. Here he gathered more than three hundred men to turn out the inventions pertaining to electricity which his busy brain suggested. They were all as enthusiastic over the inventions as Edison himself. No fixed hours of labor in this shop! When the day's work was done the men often begged to be allowed to return to the shop to complete their work.

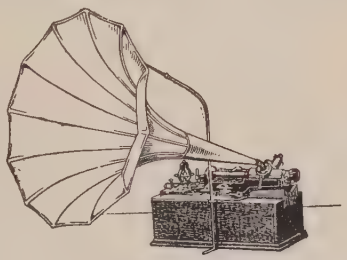
Establishes his first workshop

More inventions

Many telegraph and telephone inventions were made in this laboratory. There were forty-five inventions all told. They brought in so much money that Edison decided they must have a better place to work. He built at Menlo Park, New Jersey, twenty-four miles from New York City, the finest laboratory then in the world. On instruments alone he spent $100,000. In the great laboratory at Menlo Park Edison gathered one of the finest scientific libraries that money could buy. This library was for the men in the factory — to help them in their inventions and to give them pleasure.

Builds a new laboratory and gathers a fine library

The microphone is one of Edison's inventions. Its purpose is to increase sound while sending it over the wire. The passing of a delicate camel's-hair brush is magnified so as to seem like the roar of a mighty wind in a forest of giant pines.



THE PHONOGRAPH

Invents the microphone

Next came the megaphone, an instrument to bring far-away sounds to one's hearing. By means of this instrument, persons talking a long distance apart are able to hear each other with ease.

The megaphone

The phonograph

The most interesting and one of the most profitable of his discoveries is the phonograph. This instrument, now to be seen everywhere, simply records sounds just as they are. The human voice is reproduced in conversation, in public speaking, and in singing. It goes farther, and reproduces the music of the grandest orchestras.

Develops the electric light

From the phonograph to the electric light seems a long step. Edison does not claim to be the discoverer of the electric light. He did much, however, to make it useful to people in lighting their houses, and also in lighting great cities.

Exhibition in Menlo Park

In the winter of 1880, in Menlo Park, Edison gave to the public an exhibition of his electric light. Visitors came from all parts of the country to see this wonderful show. Seven hundred lights were put up in the streets, in the grounds, and inside the buildings. Special trains had to be run between Jersey City and Menlo Park.

Receives medals and diplomas from foreign expositions

Edison received five gold medals and a diploma from the Electrical Exposition held in Paris, France. At the English Electrical Exposition held the next year at the Crystal Palace, London, both papers and people were loud in their praise of Edison's inventions.

In Munich, Germany, in 1882, and in Vienna, Austria,

EDISON'S GREAT WORKSHOP AT ORANGE, NEW JERSEY

his exhibitions of the wonders of electric lighting won the highest praise.

His greatest laboratory

The laboratories at Menlo Park were now far too small for the business that this man of genius set in motion. In 1886, at Orange, New Jersey, Edison built the greatest of all his laboratories. Nothing was spared to make this new workshop complete.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Rumsey, Fitch, and Longstreet were inventors of steamboats before Fulton. *2.* Fulton went to England to study art and became interested in steam engines. *3.* He invented the *Clermont*, which ran more than four miles an hour. *4.* The Erie Canal was built because steamboats on the Mississippi were taking all the trade with western settlers away from New York. *5.* The locomotive was invented by George Stephenson, and railroads were built to connect all parts of the country. *6.* Samuel Morse went to Yale College; studied painting in England. *7.* He planned a telegraph instrument on shipboard, and afterwards Vail helped him perfect it. *8.* Morse took his telegraph to Washington, showed it to Congress, and received a grant of money. *9.* Bell and Gray invented the telephone; Marconi invented wireless telegraphy. *10.* Cyrus West Field made money so fast that he retired at thirty-four. *11.* He became interested in a cable, and after many failures succeeded in laying a permanent one across the Atlantic in 1866. *12.* Edison was a great reader at twelve, and a newsboy at fifteen. *13.* He learned telegraphy, and made a set of telegraphic instruments of his own. *14.* Edison saved the day in Wall Street; made a reputation and plenty of money. *15.* He built several laboratories in New Jersey, and has made many great inventions.

Study Questions. *1.* What were the early ways of driving boats? *2.* Who invented boats on American rivers before Fulton? *3.* Tell the story of Robert Fulton until 1803. *4.* How fast was Fulton's first boat to go against the current? *5.* Where did Fulton get the engine for the *Clermont?*

6. Picture the "starting" and the after history of the *Clermont.* *7.* Tell the story of the spread of the steamboat, and how and why the Erie Canal was built. *8.* Tell the story of the railroad.

9. Tell of Morse's early life. *10.* When did the idea of sending news by electricity first come to him? *11.* Tell the story of his early trials. *12.* Who aided him? *13.* Picture the scene within the "locked shop." *14.* Tell the story of the instrument in Washington. *15.* What did Morse say on the night his bill was before Congress? *16.* What was the message sent by the young lady? *17.* Mention something about Bell, Gray, and Marconi.

18. How old was Cyrus Field when he retired from business? *19.* Who was Peter Cooper? *20.* Tell the story of Field's early efforts at cable laying. *21.* Picture the scenes in New York. *22.* The final message. *23.* What honors were given Field?

24. What books could Edison read at twelve? *25.* Prove that he was a great reader. *26.* Tell the story of his thousand newspapers. *27.* How did his experiment with the cat succeed? *28.* What was the cause and what was the effect of his first lessons in telegraphy? *29.* Give some reasons why Edison did not fall into bad habits as a "tramp operator." *30.* What was his first great invention? *31.* What did Edison find in Wall Street, New York? *32.* How much did Edison think of asking for his invention? How much did the men offer him? *33.* Tell the story of the work in Edison's shop at Newark, New Jersey. *34.* Why did he want a great library at Menlo Park? *35.* Make a list of Edison's great inventions.

Suggested Readings. Robert Fulton: Glascock, *Stories of Columbia*, 186–188; Wright, *Children's Stories of American Progress*, 104–120; Mowry, *American Inventions and Inventors*, 194–222; Thurston, *Robert Fulton.*

Samuel F. B. Morse: Trowbridge, *Samuel Finley Breeze Morse;* Mowry, *American Inventions and Inventors*, 270–277.

Cyrus West Field: Judson, *Cyrus W. Field;* Mowry, *American Inventions and Inventors*, 278–285; Doubleday, *Stories of Inventors*, 3–16.

Thomas A. Edison: Mowry, *American Inventions and Inventors*, 85–89; Dickson, *Life and Inventions of Edison*, 4–153, 280–338.

THE MEN WHO WON TEXAS, THE OREGON COUNTRY, AND CALIFORNIA

SAM HOUSTON, HERO OF SAN JACINTO

141. Sam Houston. Young Houston was born of Scotch-Irish parents, in Virginia (1793). His father had fought under General Morgan in the Revolution. Sam Houston did not have much schooling, and when but thirteen his family moved to east Tennessee. Made angry by his older brother, he left home and went to live with the Cherokee Indians. He liked the wild life of the Indians and took part with the Indian boys in their pastimes of hunting, fishing, and playing at games.

Houston among the Cherokees

He was now eighteen. He returned home and went to school a term at Marysville Academy. In the war of 1812 General Jackson called the men of Tennessee to arms. Young Houston responded to the call, and fought against the Indians in the great "Battle of Horseshoe Bend."

Returns home

THE BATTLE OF HORSESHOE BEND
Here Houston, under Jackson in the victory over the Creeks, won great distinction

Wounded in battle

After doing heroic deeds, he was dangerously wounded. Houston was a long time in getting well.

SAM HOUSTON
From a photograph by Matthew B. Brady in the collection of the War Department, Washington, D.C.

Elected to Congress

At twenty-five he began to study law in Nashville and in six months—just a third of the time said to be necessary—he was ready to practice. Houston's rise in the law and in the favor of the people was rapid. He went from one position to another until the people elected him to Congress.

Governor of Tennessee

He was in Congress four years. He won many friends by his gracious behavior. The people of Tennessee made him their governor. But suddenly, without warning, Houston resigned as governor, and forsook his home and friends.

Forsakes his home

He sailed down the Mississippi River to the Arkansas, and up this river several hundred miles to the land of his early friends, the Cherokees, whom the United States government had sent to that far-away country.

Returns to the Cherokees

Here Houston found the old chief—now the head of his tribe—who had adopted him as a son years before on the banks of the Tennessee. The chief threw his arms around him in great affection and said: "My son, eleven winters have passed since we met. My heart has wandered often where you were; and I heard you were a great chief among your people. . . . I have heard that a dark cloud had fallen on the white path you were walking, and when it fell . . . you turned

The old chief's welcome

your thoughts to my wigwam. I am glad of it,—it was done by the Great Spirit. . . . My wigwam is yours, my home is yours, my people are yours,— rest with us."

Visits Washington

When Andrew Jackson became President of the United States Houston went, in his Indian dress, on a visit to Washington. He was warmly received by his old friend from Tennessee.

Visits Tennessee

Once more he turned his face toward the wilderness. He stopped in Tennessee and was warmly greeted by old friends. He did not stay long in Tennessee.

Hastens to Texas

Neither did he stay long with the Cherokees, but hastened to Texas, where the people were already murmuring against the treatment they were receiving from Mexico.

Texas declares independence

The people of Texas finally issued a declaration of independence. Thereupon the Mexicans resolved to send a large army into Texas and force the revolutionists into submission to the government.

A most important event of this war was the capture, by a large Mexican force, of an old mission building used as a fortress, called the Alamo. It was defended by one hundred forty men, among them the famous "Davy" Crockett, Colonel Travis, and Colonel Bowie—the inventor of the bowie knife. Only six Texans were alive after the capture of the fortress.

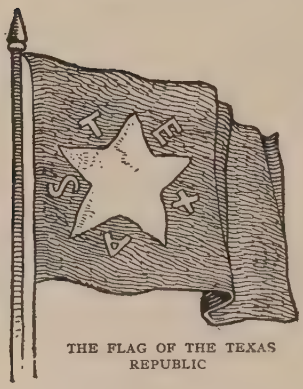
THE ALAMO, SAN ANTONIO

Of its defense by Travis, Crockett, and their few men it was said, "Thermopylæ had her messenger of woe—the Alamo had none"

These heroic men died, fighting the Mexicans to the last.

"Remember the Alamo!"

"Remember the Alamo!" became the war cry of every Texan. The Mexicans were approaching, five thousand strong, under General Santa Ana. General Houston commanded the Texans, about seven hundred in all.



THE FLAG OF THE TEXAS REPUBLIC

Massacre of Goliad

Suddenly the news came that General Fannin and his men, five hundred in number, had been massacred by the Mexicans at Goliad. The cause of Texan independence looked dark indeed.

Houston's retreat

Houston began a retreat of two hundred fifty miles to the eastward. Santa Ana followed closely after him, but scattered his men, just as Houston wanted him to do, until he had with him only eighteen hundred men. They were now on the banks of the San Jacinto.

Battle of San Jacinto

Houston waited till the Mexicans were a bit careless, then seven hundred Texans charged the breastworks of the Mexicans. After the first fire they clubbed their guns and went at it,

HOUSTON AT SAN JACINTO

Where his battle cry, "Remember the Alamo!" won Texas independence from Mexico

pioneer fashion, with the cry, "Remember the Alamo!" The right and the left wings of the Mexicans gave way first, and then the center.

Retreat of the Mexicans

They retreated, expecting to cross a deep, narrow bayou or stream on a log bridge, but Houston had had the bridge destroyed. The slaughter was terrific. The stream was choked with Mexicans and their horses.

SCENE OF HOUSTON'S CAMPAIGN

Santa Ana captured and sent to visit Washington

Santa Ana was captured and was turned over to the Texan government. Many thought he ought to die because of the massacres at the Alamo and Goliad, but Houston, generous toward the beaten man, sent him on to visit Washington.

Houston had been badly wounded, and sailed to New Orleans for medical care. He returned to be elected first president of the "Lone Star Republic," as Texas was called. He was reëlected for a second term and served his country well.

Houston elected president of Texas

Houston wanted Texas made a part of the United States. This was afterwards done, and war followed with Mexico.

Annexation of Texas

In 1845 Texas sent Houston to the United States Senate, where he served his state for fourteen years. He was devoted to our national Union. He died in 1863.

DAVID CROCKETT, GREAT HUNTER AND HERO OF THE ALAMO

142. A Brave Backwoodsman. At the close of the Revolution, Tennessee was still largely a wilderness. Here David Crockett was born in 1786. In those days schools on the frontier were few and poor, and young "Davy" found most of his schooling in the backwoods. He learned to know the woods and streams and the animals that lived in them. As a boy he spent most of his time hunting and trapping. As a young man he was one of the most famous rifle shots in the United States.

Crockett found his schooling in the woods

When the Creek War broke out, he enlisted under Andrew Jackson to march against the Indians. The young rifleman fought so well under "Old Hickory" that Tennessee made him a colonel.

He had become a famous hunter and fighter. He thought he would try politics next. Instead of making political speeches, he went about from place to place telling stories. The people liked both him and his stories so well that they elected him to the legislature. A few years later they sent him to Congress.

Elected to Congress

By and by Crockett grew tired of civilization. He wanted to get back to the wilderness. His old home was too well settled to suit him. So he wandered to Texas. Here he heard that the Mexicans were surrounding the Americans at San Antonio. "Davy" Crockett loved a good fight too well to stay away. He hastened to join the small band of brave men who were defending the Alamo. All could have escaped had they chosen to do so, but with iron courage these hundred and forty stayed and defied Santa Ana's thousands.

Returns to the wilderness

Joins the fight at the Alamo

For several days the Mexicans were held at a distance.

They dared not bring their cannon close to the building, for the concealed sharpshooters picked off the men who tried to man the guns. Old Crockett himself laid low five men in charge of one cannon.

MAP OF THE WEST AFTER THE WAR WITH MEXICO
Showing the territory added to the United States after the Louisiana Purchase

The fall of the Alamo was however merely a question of time. Little by little the walls were battered down, and finally the Mexicans were ready to storm. On they came, a great charging mass. The American riflemen shot them down by scores, but when one Mexican fell another took his place. One by one the fearless defenders fell. The last man to go down was Davy Crockett.

David Crockett fights to the last

It is said that he stood with his back to the wall, fighting to the last, and that the Mexicans, afraid to meet him hand to hand, shot him down from a distance.

JOHN C. FREMONT, THE PATHFINDER OF THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS

His father a French refugee

143. A Great Explorer. Fremont's father was a Frenchman who was driven to America by the terrible French Revolution. John Charles Fremont was born at

Savannah (1813) while his parents were on a journey through the South. His father died soon after, and his mother went to live in Charleston, South Carolina.

Goes to South America

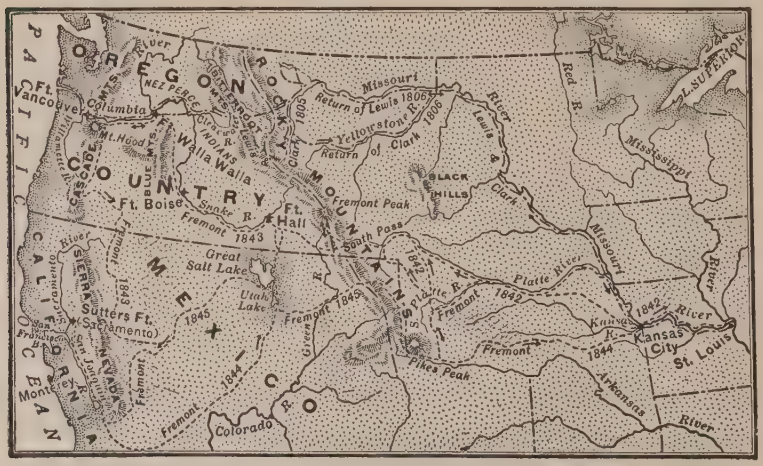
After a time at a good school, Fremont entered the junior class in Charleston College (1828). After leaving college he spent two and a half years on a voyage to South America.

Becomes a civil engineer

On his return he joined a company of engineers sent by the governor to explore the mountains between South Carolina and Tennessee, in order to find a suitable place for a railroad. This work was through a region rough, wild, and full of beauty. It gave young Fremont a taste for exploration which never left him.

Fremont's longing for a wild life was gratified when he was made assistant to a famous Frenchman who was exploring the wild region between the upper Missouri River and Canada.

After this work Fremont returned to Washington and



THE PATHWAYS OF THE EARLY EXPLORERS OF THE WEST

later married Jessie Benton, the daughter of the senator from Missouri. Thomas H. Benton was a great friend of President Jackson.

Marries Senator Benton's daughter

Fremont was now related to a powerful man who was deeply interested in the growth of the "Great West." Benton's repeated speeches on the "West" and on the "Oregon Country" called attention to the importance of the Pacific slope.

JOHN C. FREMONT
After a photograph from life

In 1842 Fremont, now a lieutenant of engineers, received permission from the government to explore the South Pass of the Rocky Mountains. With a party made up largely of French Canadians, and assisted by that famous guide, Kit Carson, he passed up the Kansas River, crossed to the Platte, went up this river, and thus reached the South Pass.

Receives permission to explore South Pass

144. On the Watershed. Standing on the watershed of a continent, he saw the beginnings of rivers that flow into the Atlantic, and of others that stretched away through unknown regions to the Pacific. He took four men and climbed what has since been called Fremonts Peak, one of the highest of the Rockies, about 13,800 feet above the sea. At the top Fremont unfurled the Stars and Stripes in all its glory!

Unfurls the Stars and Stripes on Fremonts Peak

145. A Pathway to the Pacific. Fremont reported his discovery at Washington and immediately applied for orders to make an expedition to discover a more southerly route to California and Oregon.

He left the little town of Kansas City with his guide, Kit Carson, in May, 1843. In September, after traveling seventeen hundred miles, the little party beheld the shores of Great Salt Lake. What feelings must have stirred the breasts of men shut in for months by mountains, at seeing what appeared to be an ocean, here in the midst of a continent! Little did they dream of that hardy band of immigrants, so soon to follow, who would make the shores of this sea blossom like a garden. Fremont wrote: "As we looked over that vast expanse of water and strained our eyes along the silent shores, over which hung so much doubt and uncertainty, I could hardly repress the almost irresistible desire to continue our exploration."

Beholds Great Salt Lake

GAZING OUT AT THE BEGINNINGS OF RIVERS

After making preparations, the party crossed over to a branch of the Columbia River. Down this stream they traveled until Fort Vancouver was reached on November 4. Here Fremont was the guest of the governor of the British Hudson Bay Company.

Reaches Fort Vancouver

FREMONT'S MEN BUILDING A FIRE IN THE SNOW

November 10, on the way home, the little party started

to make the circuit of the Great Basin, a vast depression beyond the east wall of the Sierra Nevada. But very soon they found deep snow on the mountains. Turning to the west at about the latitude of San Francisco, Fremont determined to cross the Sierra Nevada into the valley of the Sacramento. The river was not many miles distant.

Travel in deep snow

Crossing the Sierra Nevada

FREMONT'S EXPEDITION REACHING SUTTER'S FORT, CALIFORNIA

But what miles! Up and down, up and down that snowy mountain range, which the Indians told him no man could cross in winter, with snow lying upon it as deep as the dark forest trees were high, and places where, if a man slipped off, he would fall half a mile without stopping!

They attempted to cross without a guide, in the dead of winter. In forty days the men and the surviving horses — a woeful procession crawling along one by one, skeleton men leading skeleton horses — arrived at Sutter's Fort (Sacramento) in the beautiful valley of the Sacramento. Here genial warmth, trees in foliage, grassy ground, and flowers made a fairy contrast to the famine and freezing they had met on the mountains they had climbed.

In the Valley of the Sacramento

After enjoying the hospitality of Colonel Sutter, Fremont again crossed the mountains farther to the south, where the beautiful San Joaquin River makes a gap or pass.

Sees the Mohave Desert

When he reached the top of the pass Fremont beheld the plains of the Mohave Desert. An Indian said to him: "There is neither water nor grass — nothing; every animal that goes upon them dies."

End of second expedition

Pushing forward with great energy, he reached Utah Lake, thus having nearly made the circuit of the Great Basin.

Fremont hastened to Washington with the story of his discoveries. General Scott now recommended that he be made captain.

Third expedition

Fremont's third expedition, with Carson as a helper, began in the spring of 1845, and aimed to explore the Great Basin and the coast of California and Oregon.

THE UNFURLING OF THE AMERICAN FLAG IN CALIFORNIA

The Stars and Stripes were raised for the first time in California near Monterey in 1846

146. In the Mexican War. Little did Fremont — or any of his men — think what fortune had in store for them. On his way to the Oregon Country Fremont received news that the Mexicans were planning to kill all the Americans in the Sacramento Valley. War had

already broken out between the United States and Mexico, but he did not know it. He returned, reaching the valley in May, 1846. The settlers rushed to join him, and in one month northern California was declared independent.

War breaks out

Fremont then marched to Monterey and joined Commander Sloat, who had raised the American flag there, July 7, 1846. This practically finished the conquest of all California in sixty days.

Conquest of California

147. Becomes a Private Citizen. Soon after this event Fremont returned to Washington, gave up his place in the regular army, and went to live in California. His journey to California made up his fourth expedition. But the people would not let him long remain in private. The state elected him to the United States Senate. Fremont was not long in Congress, but was of great service in giving advice concerning the long-talked-of railroad to the Pacific.

Fourth expedition

Elected to United States Senate

Early in 1848 gold was discovered in the sand near the American River at Sutter's Mill, the site now occupied by Coloma. As the news spread, great excitement arose, and everybody wanted to dig gold. This was the "gold fever" of 1848 and 1849. The rush to the coast was tremendous. It made the building of a railroad urgent. Fremont made his fifth expedition to survey three routes to the Pacific. After great hardships he returned to Washington to report what he had found.

He now took up his residence in New York City and became a member of the party opposed to the extension of slavery. The new party, the Republican, nominated him as its first candidate for president (1856). He was defeated after a most exciting time, yet he carried all the northern states but four.

Nominated for president

A major-general in the Civil War

During the Civil War he was made a major-general, but after a year or two he resigned. He was talked of for president in 1864, but did not make the race.

After the war was over he was interested in a great continental railroad. From 1878 to 1881 he was governor of Arizona. Congress voted him a pension just before he died in 1890.

SPANISH MISSIONS IN THE SOUTHWEST

148. How the Franciscans Ruled the Southwest. Centuries before Fremont or Kit Carson or any other American had seen the wonders of our western country, Spaniards made their homes there. Before the *Mayflower* landed at Plymouth, Spanish missionaries had built many churches in the Southwest and had baptized thousands of Indians into the Christian faith.

Spanish missionaries baptize Indians

The story of the Spaniards in New Mexico, Arizona, and California is not of victories won by the sword, but by the cross. The men who ruled this country were not soldiers, but pious Franciscan friars.

Franciscan friars friends of the oppressed

Many years ago there lived in Italy a godly man, St. Francis, who looked upon all poor and oppressed people as his children and devoted his life to their care. His followers, who are called Franciscan friars, have gone into all parts of the world to be missionaries to the poor and the heathen.

Serra builds a mission at San Diego

Greatest of the Franciscans who worked in the Southwest was Junipero Serra. One warm day in 1769 he came riding into San Diego on muleback, a tall, thin figure, wrapped in a long gown. There were no missionaries at this time in California. He had come from Mexico with a small party to convert the Indians.

At San Diego he saw "valleys studded with trees, wild vines covered with grapes, and native roses as fair and sweet as those of Castile."

Here was just the place to build a mission. First he set up a great wooden cross and said mass. There was no organ music, so the soldiers fired their arms instead. The simple Indians stood by in wonder and awe. Junipero Serra was a man of energy and action, and in a short time he had his first mission built. From San Diego he went northward and planted mission after mission as far north as San Francisco. When he died the Franciscan missions controlled practically all of southern California.

Wherever the friars built a mission they made sure the soil was good and that there was plenty of water near by. For in much of that country little rain falls and many crops grow only when watered by irrigation. Having found a suitable place, they would then build a church. This was always the largest building of the mission. Some of the churches were very beautiful. Around the church clustered the houses of the friars and the huts of the Indians. Each mission was surrounded by beautiful gardens and orchards. A little farther away were the fields in which the grain was grown. All of these were watered by irrigation ditches that drew their water from some mountain stream. Beyond the cultivated land lay the ranches on which cattle and sheep grazed in great numbers.

Mission buildings surrounded by gardens

All the Indians in the neighborhood were made to live at the mission, and here they were taught the Christian religion. They were also taught many useful occupations. The men were shown how to farm, to make saddles, work at the forge and the carpenter bench, and other useful

Indians taught useful occupations

trades. The women were instructed in spinning and weaving.

In the morning the angelus called every one to mass. After breakfast the day's work began and each Indian was sent to his task. Some cultivated the fields, some took care of the stock, some worked in the shops. Each one had to do his share of the work, and was punished if he disobeyed. He had to work, pray, and live as the friars told him.

Missions fall to ruin

When Mexico freed itself of Spanish rule, California became a part of Mexico. The new government put an end to the missions. The friars were forced to leave, and the Indians drifted back into their old wild life.

To-day nothing remains of the work of the friars except the old mission buildings. Most of them are in ruins, but they still tell of the quiet by-gone days when the gentle Franciscans ruled in California.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Houston had little schooling and went to live with the Cherokee Indians. *2.* Wounded at Horseshoe Bend; studied law in Nashville; was sent to Congress for four years; and was elected governor of Tennessee. *3.* Went to live with the Cherokees again, and then went to Texas. *4.* Houston won the battle of San Jacinto; was made president of the republic of Texas; and later elected to the United States Senate. *5.* David Crockett was born in Tennessee, had little schooling, and became an expert rifle shot. *6.* He fought the Indians under Andrew Jackson. *7.* Won an election to the legislature by telling stories; later elected to Congress. *8.* Crockett grew tired of civilization and returned to the wilderness. *9.* Fought against the Mexicans at the Alamo, where he was killed with all his companions. *10.* Fremont went to school in Charleston, but left for a voyage to South America. *11.* He worked for exploring parties; married, and thus became related to a great man interested

in the Far West. *12.* Fremont explored the South Pass on his first expedition; on his second, saw Great Salt Lake, and crossed the mountains with great suffering. *13.* Fremont crossed a third time, and aided in conquering California; was made a United States senator, and became first candidate of the Republican party for the presidency. *14.* Franciscan friars, long before the landing of the Pilgrims, entered what is now New Mexico, Arizona, and California. *15.* They taught the Indians the Christian religion and many useful occupations.

Study Questions. *1.* What was peculiar in Houston's early life? *2.* What had he done before he began to study law? *3.* What made people like him? *4.* Where was the battle of Horseshoe Bend fought? *5.* How did the Cherokee chief welcome him? *6.* Why did Houston go back to Tennessee? *7.* What drew him to Texas? *8.* What were the first bad defeats of the Texans? *9.* Tell the story of San Jacinto. *10.* What kind of a general, a president, and a senator did Houston make? *11.* Where did Crockett spend his boyhood, and what fame did he gain? *12.* How did he win his way to the legislature? *13.* What made Crockett go back to the wilderness? *14.* Describe the fight at the Alamo. *15.* Who was John Charles Fremont? *16.* What of his youthful days? *17.* What experience in early days after college prepared him for his great work? *18.* Who was Kit Carson? *19.* Describe Fremont's journey to the South Pass. *20.* Tell what was seen and what was done there. *21.* What expedition did he now plan? *22.* Picture the scene on the discovery of the Great Salt Lake. *23.* Picture his exploration of the Great Basin and crossing the mountains. *24.* What was the contrast at Sutter's Fort? *25.* Describe the Digger Indians. *26.* At what was Fremont's third expedition aimed, and what did it really accomplish? *27.* Who was St. Francis? *28.* Describe Serra's arrival at San Diego. *29.* Why did he build a mission at San Diego? *30.* Describe life at a Spanish mission. *31.* What happened when Spanish rule was ended in California?

Suggested Readings. HOUSTON: Bruce, *Life of General Houston.*

DAVID CROCKETT: Crockett, *Life of Davy Crockett;* Lodge and Roosevelt, *Hero Tales from American History,* 171–181.

FREMONT: Bigelow, *Life of John Charles Fremont,* 1–218, 319–373, 379–466.

THE THREE GREATEST STATESMEN OF THE MIDDLE PERIOD

HENRY CLAY, THE FOUNDER OF THE WHIG PARTY AND THE GREAT PACIFICATOR

149. The Rise of Henry Clay. Henry Clay was born in Virginia in the year of Burgoyne's surrender (1777). His father was a Baptist preacher, with a fine voice and a graceful way of speaking. He died when Henry was four years old.

Little Henry lived near the "Slashes," the name given to a low, flat region, and went to school in a log cabin. When not at school he worked on the farm, helping to do his share in support of the family. He could be seen walking barefooted behind the plow, or riding the horse with a rope bridle to mill. From this he was called the "Mill boy of the Slashes."

The "Mill boy of the Slashes"

Henry was a raw-boned and awkward lad. The other boys laughed at him, but he read books when not at work, and soon could speak far better than the boys who made fun of him.

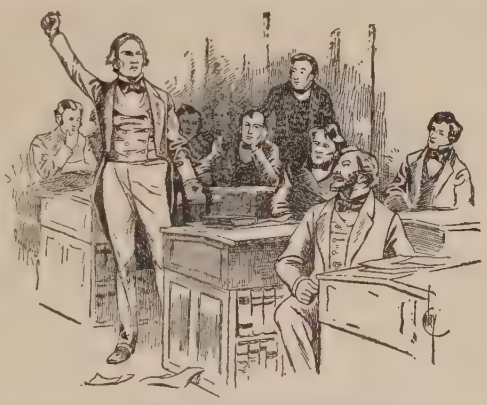
Read books when other boys played

THE "MILL BOY OF THE SLASHES"

At fourteen he was a clerk in a store. But he seemed made for other things. He was put in the office of a famous lawyer who was clerk in one of Virginia's courts.

The Chancellor of Virginia, a great judge, liked him and took him to be his private secretary. For four years Clay wrote down the

judge's law decisions. The great man often talked with Clay on important subjects and advised him about the kind of books to read.



HENRY CLAY IN CONGRESS
Urging war in 1811, with England or France or even both if necessary

Leader in a debating club

After studying law for a year, Clay began to practice in Richmond. He had plenty of time, so he formed a debating club, in which he was easily the leader.

Finally he made up his mind to go to Lexington, Kentucky, and try his fortune in the West. There his rise in the law was rapid. His fame grew, and he became known as the lawyer who seldom lost a case.

He married a well-to-do young lady and lived near Lexington on a beautiful estate called Ashland.

Favors gradual abolition of slavery

Henry Clay's first work in politics was to favor the gradual abolition of slavery in Kentucky. Although beaten, he was always proud of his stand on this question.

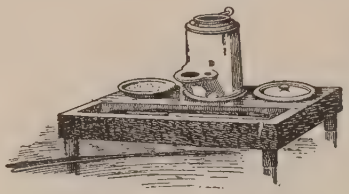
Too young to be a senator

When too young, according to the Constitution, to take his seat, he was made a senator of the United States. But nobody called the attention of the Senate to his age. After his term as senator was out he was elected to the legislature of Kentucky, and was immediately made Speaker.

Born during the Revolution, Henry Clay, like most Americans of his time, grew up with hatred toward England

Speaker of the House of Representatives

in his heart. He was sent to Congress in 1811, and was elected Speaker of the House of Representatives. As Speaker, he did much to bring on a declaration of war with Great Britain, in 1812.



INKSTAND USED BY HENRY CLAY

Clay made speeches in Congress and over the country, stirring up the war spirit. "On to Canada!" was his cry. But the capture of Canada was not so easy. Many generals failed, and only Harrison and Perry made much headway in defeating the British in Canada.

The War of 1812

When the time for peace came President Madison sent Henry Clay and other noted Americans to Ghent, in Belgium, to meet the British agents. After many months of talking and disputing, they finally agreed on a treaty. This treaty has since been called the "Treaty of Ghent." Great Britain and America were both glad that peace had come.

The Treaty of Ghent

From 1819 to 1821 Congress was debating over the admission of Missouri as a slave state. The North opposed, and the South favored, the admission of Missouri. The excitement spread to the state legislatures and to the people. Many meetings were held. Resolutions strongly favoring, or strongly opposing, the admission of Missouri as a slave state, were drawn up and voted upon.

The conflict over Missouri

Wise men thought the Union was in danger and Henry Clay, by his eloquence, succeeded in getting Congress to pass the famous Missouri Compromise. This resolution provided that Missouri should be admitted as a slave state, but that no other slave state north of the

The Missouri Compromise

line of 36 degrees 30 minutes should ever be admitted. Both sides were pleased and the excitement died out.

We have seen how South Carolina threatened to refuse to pay the tariff in 1832, and how President Jackson hurried the army and the navy there to make her people pay it, as the people of the other states were obliged to do.

The Compromise Tariff Law

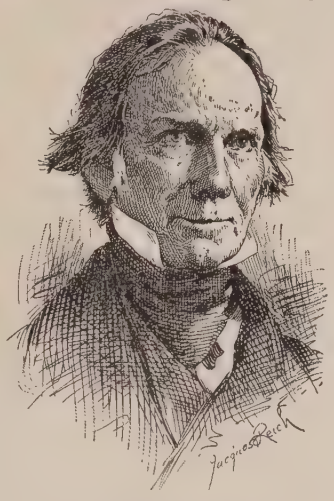
Henry Clay came forward again and introduced the Compromise Tariff Law. It was called a compromise because it gave each side a part of what it wished. Calhoun and other Carolinians favored it, because by this law the tariff was reduced very greatly. It was carried through Congress. The law made unnecessary the warlike preparations of both the president and South Carolina, and again Henry Clay was hailed by the people as "pacificator" or peacemaker.

Henry Clay as a peacemaker again

150. Henry Clay the Founder of the Whig Party. But Henry Clay was not only a peacemaker. He was now a great statesman, and like Hamilton and Jefferson he led in forming a part of the people into a political party. It was called the Whig party.

The founder of the Whig party

In 1824, before there was a Whig party, Clay ran for president, but was beaten. Again in 1832, just as the new party was being formed, he ran a second time. Although he was beaten for the presidency by Andrew Jackson, he was the life and soul



HENRY CLAY

From a daguerreotype owned by Garrett Brown, Jr., Chicago

of his party. It was his eloquence, the music of his words, that made men Whigs.

On one occasion Clay spoke on the question of the abolition of slavery. Some one said that this might hurt his chances of being president. Clay replied: "I had rather be right than be president."

Unfortunate Henry Clay

Finally, in 1844, he was again the Whig candidate, but he was defeated for the third time. When the Whig party had a good chance of electing a president, they nominated somebody else. When they had a poor chance they nominated Henry Clay!

War with Mexico had come, and with it a great victory for the American army. The treaty of peace with Mexico, in 1848, gave the United States all the territory then known as Alta (Upper) California and New Mexico.

Dispute over the new territory

But the North and South disputed over this territory. The North said it must be free. The South said it must be open to slavery. The quarrel grew so bitter that many men thought the Union would be destroyed.

Retires to Ashland

Henry Clay was now an old man. He had left the Senate, and had gone home to his beloved Ashland for a few years of rest before the final summons.

151. The Aged Peacemaker Returns to the Senate.

A unanimous call

Kentucky was greatly excited by the threats of disunion. Her legislature sent Clay back to the United States Senate by a unanimous call, Democrats as well as Whigs joining in the vote. It was a proud moment for the old man.

Now in the Senate, he offered the Compromise of 1850. This bill contained a number of points in favor of the slave states, and a number in favor of the free states.

One day Clay made a great speech in favor of his

Compromise. He had to walk to the capitol that day on the arm of a friend. He was too weak to climb the steps alone.

Walks to the capitol on the arm of a friend

When he arose to speak, he saw before him an audience that had come from distant parts of the nation to hear his thrilling words once more. The people filled the Senate to overflowing. Outside they crowded the corridors. When Clay arose the audience broke into applause, a strange thing for the Senate to do. The people were not disappointed. For two days the ringing words flowed on. Under the excitement he was young again.

HENRY CLAY BEING CONGRATULATED

In 1850 on his great plea before the Senate for the Federal Union

His audience

He pleaded with the North to give up some things for the love of the Union; he pleaded with the South for peace. He told them that all the territory the United States had purchased had been purchased for all of them. "War and the dissolution of the Union are identical."

On the second day some one suggested that he rest, and the Senate adjourn. But he refused; he might not be able to go on the next day. After he had finished his speech, a great crowd rushed forward to congratulate him. No such scene ever had been witnessed before in the Senate.

A remarkable scene

The reunion of the Union

The debate went on. Now and then Clay took part in it. On one occasion he said: "I believe from the bottom of my soul that this measure is the reunion of the Union."

"This Union is my country"

On another occasion he said: "The honorable Senator speaks of Virginia being my country. This Union is my country. But even if . . . my own state . . . should raise the standard of disunion . . . I would go against her. I would go against Kentucky, much as I love her."

Congress finally passed the Compromise. Both political parties pledged themselves to obey it. Public meetings in all parts of the nation resolved to abide by it, and the country rested for a time from the slavery question.

Died in Washington in 1852

Henry Clay's work was done. His body was worn out, but his mind still clung to the Union. On June 29, 1852, Henry Clay died in Washington, the place of so many of his triumphs.

A great monument at Lexington, Kentucky, testifies the people's love for "Harry" Clay.

DANIEL WEBSTER, THE DEFENDER OF THE CONSTITUTION

152. A College Boy and a Young Lawyer. Daniel Webster was born of good Puritan stock, in 1782, in New Hampshire. He was a very weakly child. No one dreamed that one day he would have an iron-like body. Daniel spent much of his time playing in the woods and fields. He loved the birds and beasts that he found there. He went to school, but the schoolmasters were not very learned, and Daniel could read better than most of them. The teamsters, stopping to water their horses, were glad to hear him read. He went to work in an old-fashioned

Daniel Webster, 1782

Loves the woods and fields

A good reader

sawmill, but he read books even there in odd moments of time.

One day in spring his father took him to Exeter Academy to prepare for college. The boys laughed at his rustic dress and manners. The timid little fellow was greatly hurt by their scorn.

Webster at Exeter Academy

He finally entered Dartmouth College at the age of fifteen. He was simple, natural, and full of affection.

Webster was the best student at Dartmouth. He still kept the reading habit. The students liked him. They had a feeling that he would amount to something some day. At this time he was tall and thin, with high cheek bones. His eyes were deep set, and his voice was low and musical in its tones. He loved to speak, even then.

The best student at Dartmouth

He loved public speaking

At the age of eighteen Webster gave the Fourth of July oration in his college town. The speech was full of the love of country and of the Union, then in its first days of trial.

He never forgot his father's sacrifice in sending him to college. After he had finished at Dartmouth, Webster taught school in order that he might help his parents send his elder brother to college. He afterwards studied law. But he longed to finish his law studies in Boston. Finally good fortune put him in the office of Christopher Gore, a wise man, a great lawyer, and a statesman. In

Teaches school and studies law

HOUSE AT ELM FARMS

The birthplace of Daniel Webster. The site is now occupied by the New Hampshire State Orphans Asylum

his office Daniel Webster studied until he was given the right to practice law.

Within a few years, he was earning enough to enable him to take a life partner, the beautiful and accomplished Grace Fletcher, the daughter of a minister. She made a delightful home for him and their children.

Elected to Congress

Webster was gaining name and fame as a lawyer, but the approach of the War of 1812 drew him into politics. He was elected to Congress, and took his seat in 1813. Henry Clay was Speaker of the House of Representatives. Webster's most important speech was in favor of a war carried on by the navy: "If the war must be continued, go to the ocean. There the united wishes and exertions of the nation will go with you. Even our party divisions cease at the water's edge."

Favors a naval war

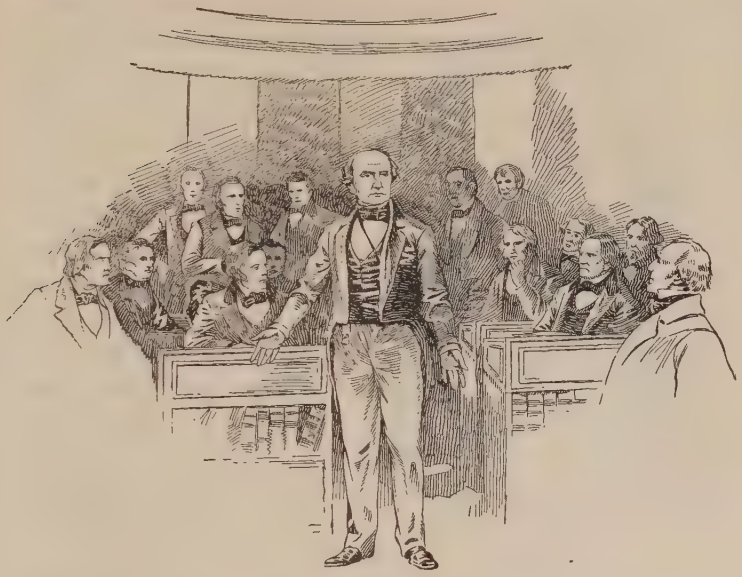
After the war, Webster left Congress for a number of years. He was now a great man. When he entered a room, by his mere look and presence he drew all eyes toward him, and all conversation hushed. In size, he looked larger and broader than he really was. His forehead was broad and massive. It towered above his large, dark, deep-set eyes. His hair was black and glossy as a raven's wing. He looked

Webster's appearance

SCENE OF THE FOURTH OF JULY ORATION
Daniel Webster asserting the dignity of patriotism at Dartmouth, July 4, 1800

thus in 1830 in the Senate, when he made his famous speech in reply to Senator Hayne of South Carolina.

His battle with Hayne



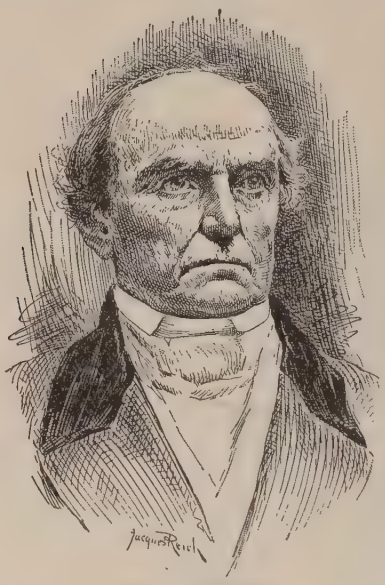
SCENE IN THE UNITED STATES SENATE
Daniel Webster defending the Federal Constitution against Hayne's idea of nullification

153. The Greatest Statesman of his Time. Hayne had spoken against a protective tariff and in favor of nullification. Webster felt called upon to reply. He denied the right of a state to nullify a law of Congress, and said that nullification was another name for secession. He closed his great speech with these words: "When my eyes shall be turned to behold, for the last time, the sun in heaven, may I not see him shining on the broken and dishonored fragments of a once glorious Union . . . but may I see our flag with not a stripe erased or polluted, nor a single star obscured . . . but everywhere spread

Denies the right of nullification

all over in characters of living light, blazing on its ample folds, as they float over the sea and over the land . . . that sentiment, dear to every American heart — Liberty *and* Union, now and forever, one and inseparable!"

"Liberty and Union, one and inseparable"



DANIEL WEBSTER
From a daguerreotype taken in 1850 by J. J. Hawes of Boston

This speech made Daniel Webster immortal. It did more; it fired the heart of every lover of his country.

Opposes Clay's Compromise Tariff

We saw how South Carolina went on toward nullification, and how Clay's Compromise Tariff settled the difficulty. Webster strongly opposed this compromise, and said that South Carolina should get out of the difficulty the best way she could.

Jackson praises Webster

President Jackson was delighted, and praised Webster in public and in private.

Harrison makes him Secretary of State

When Harrison captured the presidency, after the greatest campaign ever seen up to that time, he wanted the best men in the Whig party to advise him, so he made Daniel Webster Secretary of State.

It was a sad day when President Harrison died, after being in office just one month. John Tyler, of Virginia, the vice-president, became the president. But he would not accept measures which Congress had passed. Daniel Webster left the cabinet after a time because he disliked

the way Tyler was doing. He went back to the United States Senate, where he joined Clay, supporting the great Compromise of 1850.

Webster back in the Senate

On March 7, Webster made his speech on the Compromise, entitled "For the Union and the Constitution." It was an appeal to all persons to stand by the Constitution and the Union. In blaming both the North and the South, much to the surprise of everybody, he blamed the North more than the South.

His speech on the Compromise

Because he did this, many of his supporters in the North, especially those in New England, turned their backs upon him. Webster was an old man now. Ever since 1832 he had looked forward to being nominated for the presidency, but his party always took some other man. His last days were made bitter and unhappy

THE UNITED STATES IN 1850

by the thought that some old friends had forsaken him.

One bright spot for Webster lay in the fact that President

Fillmore invited him to be Secretary of State again. After two years of service, he went back to Boston. He was received with joy by some of his friends and neighbors, and was hailed with shouts by the multitude. This must have made his heart leap with gratitude, for the praise of friends is pleasant. But men saw he was not like his former self. He went to his home at Marshfield, where he died, October 24, 1852, the greatest figure in American politics in his day.

Boston welcomes Webster

Death at Marshfield, 1852

JOHN C. CALHOUN, THE CHAMPION OF NULLIFICATION

154. The Champion of the War of 1812. John C. Calhoun was born in the same year as Webster (1782) in South Carolina. His parents were Scotch-Irish. His father, a Revolutionary patriot, died soon after John was born. John spent his early years roaming in the fields and woods. He learned more there than from books, and he learned to think before the thoughts of other people filled his memory.

John C. Calhoun, 1782

At eighteen he began to prepare for college, under the care of his brother-in-law, a Presbyterian minister. In two years he entered Yale College. When in college he studied hard, and was graduated with high honors.

Entered Yale College as a junior

Calhoun studied law diligently for three years, a year and a half of the time in his native state, and a year and a half in Connecticut. He began to practice law in South Carolina, but did not have great success. Perhaps it was because the law was too dry for him, or perhaps because he was soon elected to the legislature of his state.

A lawyer

In 1811 he was married, and was elected to Congress — two great events in his life. Henry Clay, as Speaker,

immediately put Calhoun on an important committee. He quickly sounded a bugle call to war, declaring that it was the duty of "Congress to call forth the patriotism and resources of the country."

During the War of 1812 he worked hard in Congress for the success of the American army. After the war he favored a tariff to keep English goods out of the country.

President Monroe made him Secretary of War. He found the office in the utmost confusion, but, by hard and careful work, he left the war office a model for future secretaries.

JOHN C. CALHOUN

From a photograph by Matthew B. Brady in the collection of the War Department, Washington, D.C.

Works hard for the success of the army

Secretary of War

155. Calhoun Favors Nullification. He was elected vice-president in 1824, and again in 1828. In the last-named year he wrote a paper called the "South Carolina Exposition." In this letter, and in others that he wrote, he told the people of South Carolina there would always be differences between the North and the South. He said the southern people, using slave labor, would raise more tobacco and cotton than they needed, and that the tariff was hurtful to the South. That the northern people, using free labor, would manufacture all kinds of things, and that the tariff would be helpful to them. This document took the ground that between the North and the South there always would be a conflict of interests. The South was devoted to agriculture, and the

Twice elected vice-president

Calhoun's "South Carolina Exposition"

North to manufacturing. The South had slave and the North free labor.

South Carolina passes ordinance of nullification

Therefore, Calhoun concluded that to protect the South from the North a state has the right to nullify a law of Congress. A state has this right, because the state is above the nation. The states made the Constitution. He believed that nullification was a means of saving the country from secession.

South Carolina took the fatal step, and nullified the tariffs. This decision was to take effect February 1, 1833, provided the United States did not do something before that time to lower the tariff.

Jackson warns South Carolina

President Jackson warned the citizens of South Carolina against the men who had led them to take this step. He hinted that the tariff would be collected by the use of force, if necessary.

She withdraws her ordinance

We have seen how Henry Clay rushed his Compromise Tariff through Congress. At the same time another bill was passed by Congress, which gave President Jackson the right to use the army and navy in forcing a collection of the tariff. South Carolina stopped her nullification, and the excitement passed away.

156. Opposed to the Abolitionists. The people who wished to do away with slavery entirely were called Abolitionists. The Abolitionists stirred Calhoun deeply by petitions in favor of abolishing slavery in the District of Columbia. He declared that "the petitions are a foul slander on nearly one half of the states of the Union . . . The object is to humble and debase us in our own estimation . . . to blast our reputation. This is the (manner) in which they are (trying) abolition . . . and now is the time for all opposed to them to meet the attack.

Speech on the purpose of the Abolitionists

"We love and cherish the Union. We remember with kindest feelings our common origin . . . but origin (is) to us as nothing compared with this question.

"The relation which now exists between the two races in the slave-holding states has existed for two centuries . . . We will not, we cannot, permit it to be destroyed . . . Should it cost every drop of blood and

The Union in danger

THE HOME AND OFFICE OF CALHOUN, AT FORT HILL, SOUTH CAROLINA

every cent of property, we must defend ourselves . . . It is not we, but the Union, which is in danger."

Goes beyond most slaveholders

Not many in the Senate agreed with Calhoun then. In 1837 Calhoun went much farther in the defense of slavery than any of the other slaveholders would go. He declared in a great speech in the Senate that "slavery is a good, a positive good."

The Revolutionary fathers did not agree with Calhoun

This was not the belief of the majority of even the slaveholders in Congress or in the nation. Much less had it been the view of the men who had fought out

the Revolution, and who had made our Constitution.

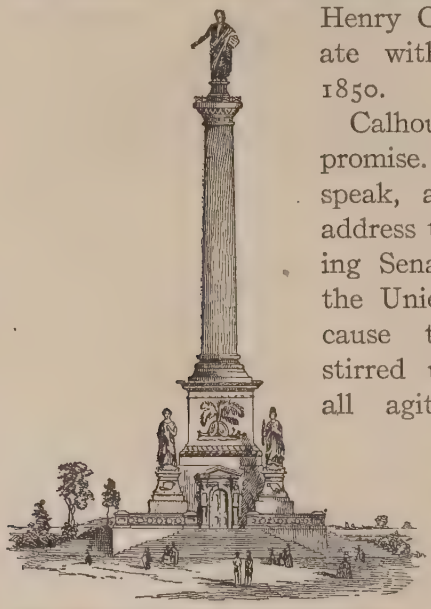
The majority of slaveholders still looked upon slavery, at best, as a necessary evil and one to be gotten rid of sometime and somehow. Calhoun's view that "slavery is a good, a positive good," was an entirely new view of slavery.

Calhoun aids the annexing of Texas

Calhoun was made Secretary of State under President Tyler, and succeeded in annexing Texas to the United States. For this reason Mexico made war with the United States.

The result of the war with Mexico was the gaining of territory in the West and in the Southwest. Over this territory arose the great dispute that sent the aged Henry Clay back to the Senate with the Compromise of 1850.

Dispute over territory



MONUMENT TO CALHOUN AT CHARLESTON, S.C.
From a photograph of the monument, which was designed by A. E. Harnisch

Calhoun opposed Compromise of 1850

Calhoun opposed that Compromise. He was too ill to speak, and a friend read his address to a hushed and listening Senate. He declared that the Union was in danger because the Abolitionists had stirred up strife. He wanted all agitation against slavery stopped. In the second place, he wanted an equal division of territory between the North and South. "If you of the North will not do this, then let

our southern states separate, and depart in peace."

Farewell words to the Senate

"Having faithfully done my duty to the best of my ability, both to the Union and my section . . . I shall have the consolation . . . that I am free from all responsibility."

His last words

On March 31, 1850, he breathed his last words: "The South! The poor South! God knows what will become of her!"

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Clay's father was a Baptist preacher. Young Henry went to school in a log cabin, and rode his horse to mill with a rope bridle. *2.* He studied law, and went to Lexington, Kentucky, to practice. *3.* Clay won his way to the hearts of the people; was elected to the House of Representatives for a great many years. *4.* He favored the War of 1812; induced Congress to pass the Missouri Compromise and the Compromise Tariff of 1833. *5.* Clay ran three times for president. He was author of the great Compromise of 1850. *6.* Webster was a weakly child, played in the woods, and read books. *7.* He was graduated at Dartmouth, taught school, studied law, and was opposed to the War of 1812. *8.* Webster replied to Hayne, opposed the nullification of South Carolina, and was made Secretary of State by Harrison. *9.* Supported Clay's Compromise of 1850, and was made Secretary of State by Fillmore. *10.* John C. Calhoun was born in South Carolina, and studied law. *11.* He went to Congress, favored the War of 1812, and was afterwards made Secretary of War. *12.* Calhoun thought that a state had the right to nullify an act of Congress. *13.* He opposed Abolitionists and the Compromise of 1850.

Study Questions. *1.* Who was the "Mill boy of the Slashes"? *2.* Name some of our great men besides Clay who loved books. *3.* What could Clay do better than the other boys? *4.* What help did he get from the Chancellor of Virginia? *5.* Why did Henry Clay form a debating club? *6.* Where was Ashland? *7.* What was Clay's first great work in Kentucky? *8.* What is a Speaker of the House of

Representatives? *9*. What did Clay do in stirring up the war spirit? *10*. Why did Clay speak for the Missouri Compromise? *11*. What was the Compromise Tariff? *12*. Why call Clay a peacemaker? *13*. How many times did Henry Clay run for president? *14*. Why was Clay sent back to the United States Senate in 1850? *15*. Picture the scene when Clay made his last great speech.

16. Who was Webster? *17*. Why did he play in the woods? *18*. What proof that he loved books too? *19*. Why were Daniel Webster's feelings hurt at Exeter? *20*. Why did students like Webster? *21*. How did he reward his parents for sending him to college? *22*. What was Webster's view of the War of 1812? *23*. Picture Webster in 1830. *24*. Quote something from his speech in reply to Hayne. *25*. Who praised Webster for his speech against nullification? *26*. Do you think Harrison selected the best man for Secretary of State? *27*. Why did his friends in the North blame Webster for the Seventh of March speech? *28*. How were Webster's last days affected by public opinion?

29. Who was Calhoun and what did roaming in the woods and fields do for him? *30*. Where did he go to college and when did he reach Congress? *31*. What position did he take in the War of 1812? *32*. Why did he favor the tariff and later favor the nullification of the tariff? *33*. What office did President Monroe give him? *34*. What effect had the "South Carolina Exposition"? *35*. What did South Carolina do? *36*. How was a clash averted? *37*. What did Calhoun say of the Abolitionists? *38*. What did he say of the Union? *39*. What did he say of slavery? *40*. What was Calhoun's position on the Compromise of 1850? *41*. What were his last words?

Suggested Readings. HENRY CLAY: Wright, *Children's Stories of American Progress*, 159–178; Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 145–155; Anderson, *United States Reader*, 281–285; Frost, *The Mill Boy of the Slashes*.

DANIEL WEBSTER: Baldwin, *Four Great Americans*, 125–186; Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 37–48; Hart, *How Our Grandfathers Lived*, 341–344; Bolton, *Famous American Statesmen*, 177–229.

JOHN C. CALHOUN: Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 140–144; Rogers, *The True Henry Clay*, 248–254.

ABRAHAM LINCOLN, THE LIBERATOR AND MARTYR

A POOR BOY BECOMES A GREAT MAN

157. The Backwoodsman Who Became President. Abraham Lincoln was born in Kentucky, February 12, 1809. His parents were so poor that they hardly knew that they were poor. When he was seven years old his family crossed the Ohio River and settled in Indiana. There they found a place in the deep, dark forest, in the southern part of the state, and began to build a cabin for a home. Abe worked hard to help build it. It was not much of a house—only fourteen feet square. One side was left out, and here they built the fire. It was not very warm in winter and not very cool in summer. The hard ground was the floor.

Abraham Lincoln, 1809

THE BIRTHPLACE OF ABRAHAM LINCOLN

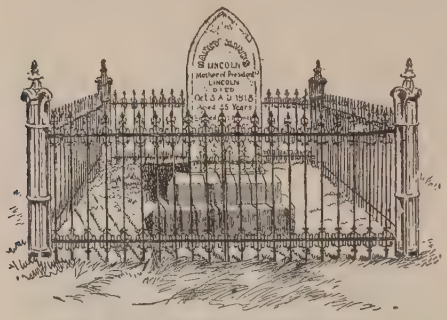
Moves to Indiana at the age of seven

The father was a sort of carpenter, and out of rough timbers he made a table and some three-legged stools. He also made the bedsteads, which consisted of poles driven into the wall.

Lincoln's father makes the furniture

In the loft of the cabin Abe made himself a bed of leaves. Every night he climbed into the loft by means of wooden pins driven into the wall. He was busy helping cut down trees and burning them to make room for a patch of corn and pumpkins.

The lad and his sister roasted the ears of young corn over the fire. The ripe corn was ground into meal from which corn bread was made. This was baked in the ashes or on a board in front of a bed of red-hot coals.



THE GRAVE OF NANCY HANKS LINCOLN

The woods, great thick woods for miles on all sides of them, were broken only here and there by a "clearing." In these forests Abe went hunting with a gun on his shoulder. He often came back laden with squirrels, wild turkeys, and other game.

As a hunter

They were living in the cabin when Abe's mother sickened and died. He was broken-hearted. She had taught him what little he knew. Her last words to him were: "Try to live as I have taught you and to love your Heavenly Father."

His mother's death

Many years after, when he became famous, he said: "All that I am or hope to be, I owe to my angel mother." She was put in a coffin roughly cut out of logs by the same tools that had made their furniture, and laid to rest in a corner of the clearing. Long years afterward a good man put a stone over the grave, with this inscription: "Nancy Hanks Lincoln, the mother of President Lincoln, died October 5, A.D. 1818, aged 35 years."

Lincoln's tribute to his mother

After a year his father went back to Kentucky to look about for a wife. He found a widow, named Sarah Bush Johnston, and married her. He had known her before he met Nancy Hanks. She was thrifty and

Lincoln gets a new mother

industrious, and her bedding and other household goods filled a four-horse wagon.

Before winter came she made her husband put a good floor, and a door, and windows in the cabin. She took charge of Abe and his sister, and made them "look a little more human." She put good clothes on the children and put them to sleep in comfortable beds.

158. Lincoln Educates Himself. Schools were scarce in that new country, and Abe never had more than a year at school. His stepmother encouraged him in every way to study at home.

Abe's education

When Abe got a taste for reading it was hard to satisfy it. He read the Bible, *Æsop's Fables*, *Robinson Crusoe*, *Pilgrim's Progress*, a history of the United States, and Weem's *Life of Washington*. He borrowed the *Revised Statutes of Indiana*. These were all solid books, good for a young boy to read. When a sentence pleased him, he read and reread it. If he did not own the book, he took many notes, filling his copy book with choice sentences.

A taste for reading

LINCOLN READING BY THE LIGHT OF THE OPEN FIRE
After a painting by Eastman Johnson

He copies down what pleases him

John Hanks, a boy brought up with Lincoln, says: "When Abe and I returned to the house from work, he would go to the cupboard, snatch a piece of corn bread, sit down, take a book, cock his legs up as high as his head, and read." He read, wrote, and ciphered incessantly.

Lincoln reads while he eats

A great story-teller when a boy

Young Lincoln was soon able to do a "man's labor," although only a boy. He was strong and powerful, and a great favorite. In that family of brothers, sisters, and cousins, his good-natured jokes and stories kept peace. Abe was the great story-teller of the family.

FASHIONS IN THE DAYS OF LINCOLN'S BOYHOOD

At nineteen years of age

At the age of nineteen Lincoln reached his full height of six feet four inches. By that time he had read every book he could find, and could "spell down" the whole country. "He could sink an ax deeper into the wood than any man I ever saw," said a neighbor.

Moves to Illinois

When Abe was twenty-one, the entire family started for Illinois. Along forest roads, and across muddy prairies, for two weeks they traveled till they came to the Sangamon River.

They built a cabin on the north fork of the river. With the help of John Hanks, young Lincoln plowed fifteen acres, planted it in corn, and split the rails from the tall walnut trees on the ground and fenced it.

A trip to New Orleans

159. Tries to be a Business Man. The next year he was hired to take a flatboat to New Orleans. The boat was loaded with hogs, pork, and corn. The wages of the trip were fifty cents a day, and twenty dollars besides for each man.

A slave auction

They "poled" and rowed their slow way down the Ohio and the Mississippi. At New Orleans, Lincoln first saw a slave auction. He saw men and women sold. As he turned away he said to a friend: "If ever I get a chance to hit that thing, I'll hit it hard." He did not

then dream of the mighty blow he would one day strike. After his return from New Orleans, he became a clerk in a store.

Clerk in a store

One day a woman gave Lincoln six cents too much. That very evening he walked several miles to find her and give back the money. At another time Lincoln found that he had not given a woman as much tea as she paid for. He went in search of her and gave her the rest of the tea.

About this time Lincoln joined a company of soldiers going to the Black Hawk War. An Indian chief named Black Hawk was on the "war path." All the frontier was up in arms against him and his band of braves.

The Black Hawk War

Lincoln was well pleased when nearly all the men in his company walked over and stood by his side. This was their way of electing a captain. No election in later days gave him greater pleasure

Lincoln elected captain

Little fighting was done by Lincoln's company, but sitting around the camp fires in the evening, he became famous as a story-teller, and he made many friends.

Fame as a story-teller spreads

LINCOLN SPLITTING RAILS TO FENCE IN THEIR FARM

160. Makes a Success in Politics. On his return from the war, though he was only twenty-three years old, he became a candidate for the state legislature, but was defeated.

Elected to the legislature

A little later he was again a candidate. This time he won. After the election, he said to a friend: "Did you vote for me?" "I did," replied the man. "Then you must lend me two hundred dollars." Lincoln needed a suit of clothes and money to pay the expenses for traveling in a stagecoach to the capital!

In 1837 the legislature passed a set of resolutions in favor of slavery and condemning the Abolitionists. Lincoln could not stand this. He and one other man signed a protest declaring that slavery was founded on "injustice and bad policy."

LINCOLN AS A CIRCUIT RIDER

Lincoln was reëlected to the legislature seven times. He generally got more votes than other men on the ticket because the people liked his quaint sayings and his unpretending manner.

Lincoln licensed to practice law

In the meantime, after three or four years of study, he was given a license to practice law. He made it a rule never to take

a case which he believed to be wrong. He was a successful lawyer, but the road to fame by way of the law was a slow one. It gave Lincoln a chance to engage in politics, as we have already seen.

His taste for public speaking

He liked "stump speaking." He liked to go about the country from one speaking place to another, or to travel from one county to another to meet the different sessions of the courts. He spoke for what he believed to be the truth. He was always in earnest, and made his hearers feel that he was sincere.

Speaks for Harrison and for Henry Clay

In 1840 he was one of Harrison's orators, and in 1844 he threw all his power and influence in favor of Henry Clay, his favorite among the great men, for the presidency.

Lincoln in Congress

In 1846 the Whigs of Springfield, where he was then living, put Lincoln forward for Congress, and succeeded in getting him elected. He was not in favor of the war with Mexico, then going on, and was not selected to run again. Lincoln returned to Springfield, and began the practice of law with greater success than ever before.

When Senator Douglas of Illinois, in 1854, carried the Kansas-Nebraska Bill through Congress, anti-slavery men all over the nation raised a storm of indignation. This bill repealed the Missouri Compromise, which had stood for thirty years, and threw the territories open to slavery.

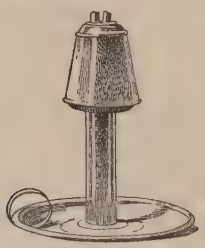
The champion against Douglas

Douglas spoke at the state fair, held in Springfield. He tried to explain why he favored the Kansas-Nebraska Bill. Lincoln made a speech four hours in length, ably answering the argument of Douglas. This speech made him the champion for the anti-slavery people in the state against Douglas.

The same question was fought out between them at

Public opinion points toward Lincoln

Peoria, a little later. Again Lincoln met Douglas' arguments. People began to talk of Lincoln as the next United States senator. More and more, popular opinion in the state began to turn toward Lincoln.



WHALE-OIL LAMP
From Lincoln's log cabin

Nominated for United States senator

Accordingly, in 1858, at Springfield, the Republicans in convention named Lincoln for United States senator. He made a speech to the Republicans in which he said that this country cannot remain half slave and half free—that it must become all slave or all free.

This called every man to face a new question. No greater question could be raised. Some friends of Lincoln pleaded with him not to say that the country could not remain half slave and half free. "I had rather be defeated with that expression in my speech than to be victorious without it," said Lincoln.

Lincoln challenges Douglas

161. The Lincoln-Douglas Debates. Douglas attacked this speech, and Lincoln challenged him to hold several joint debates before the people of Illinois. Seven debates were arranged, in which Douglas insisted upon opening and closing four.

People come from far away to hear the debates

The people of Illinois were mainly farmers in 1858. They traveled long distances to hear these giants debate the question of slavery. Some of them were several days coming and going—in wagons, on horseback, or on foot. The newspapers in the larger cities sent men to listen to these debates, and take down the words used by Lincoln and Douglas. The editors knew the people were anxiously waiting to read what these men had to say about slavery.

"Can the people of a . . . Territory, in any lawful way, against the wish of any citizen . . . exclude slavery?" Lincoln asked. "Yes," said Douglas. That was a fatal answer. For, by this answer, Douglas lost the support of the Democrats of the South, although he held the Democrats of Illinois. He could still be senator, but he could never be president.

The fatal answer

The debates went on. "I do not perceive," said Lincoln, "that because the white man is to have the superior position, the negro should be denied everything . . . there is no reason in the world why the negro is not entitled to all the natural rights [named] in the Declaration of Independence . . . I agree with Judge Douglas, he [the negro] is not my equal in many respects — certainly not in color, perhaps not in moral or intellectual endowments. But, in the right to eat the bread, without the leave of anybody else, which his own hand earns, he is my equal, and the equal of Judge Douglas, and the equal of every living man."

These debates made Lincoln widely known. He accepted invitations to speak in Ohio, New York, and New England.

Lincoln made famous by the debates

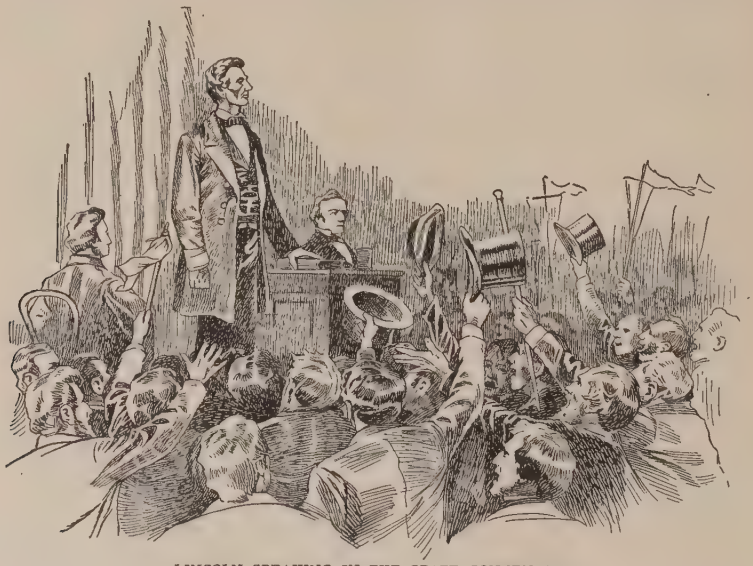
In May, 1860, the Republicans of Illinois met in state convention. Lincoln was there. The people picked him up, lifted him over their heads, and placed him on the platform. The cheering was loud. Just at this moment John Hanks came into the hall carrying two fence rails, with the Stars and Stripes mounted between them, bearing in large words the following: "Taken from a lot made by Abraham Lincoln and John Hanks in the Sangamon Bottom in the year 1830." The people stood up and cheered, and threw their hats high and

Lincoln the rail-splitter

shouted for Lincoln, the "rail-splitter." He made them a speech. The convention then and there named him as the choice of the Republican party of Illinois for the next President of the United States.

The candidate of the Republican party

162. Lincoln President. A few weeks later Abraham Lincoln was nominated in Chicago by the National Convention of the Republican party for the presidency.



LINCOLN SPEAKING IN THE STATE CONVENTION

Just as the passage of Douglas' Kansas-Nebraska Bill killed the old Whig party, so the debates between Lincoln and Douglas split the Democratic party into a northern and a southern wing.

Lincoln elected

Douglas was nominated by the northern wing, and Breckenridge by the southern wing. This division in the Democratic party resulted in the election of Lincoln to the presidency, in November, 1860.

During the fall and winter, seven southern states left the Union, and set up a government called the "Confederate States of America." They had their government all in running order before Lincoln left Springfield.

In February, 1861, Lincoln said good-by to the people of Springfield, and started for Washington to take his seat as president. The people were bound to see him and hear his voice and shake his hand. Along the route there were cheers, bonfires, and military parades with miles of marching men. At Philadelphia he raised a flag over Independence Hall. He made a touching speech in regard to the men of the Revolution who had sat in that hall, and pledged himself to abide by the principles of the Declaration of Independence.

Bound for Washington

At Independence Hall

On March 4, with soldiers guarding the capitol, Lincoln read his inaugural address and took the oath of office which all presidents before him had taken. This speech was listened to with the greatest interest. It was now plain to everybody that Lincoln meant to fight, if fighting were necessary to save the Union.

The inauguration

In April Confederates fired on Fort Sumter in Charleston Harbor, South Carolina. After awful hardships, Colonel Anderson and his men surrendered the fort to the Confederate troops.

Lincoln immediately sent forth the call for seventy-five thousand men. He made it a call to save the Union which Jackson, Webster, and Clay had done so much to save. War had come—civil war, the most dreadful kind of war. Four more states left the Union, and joined the Confederate States. But the slave states of Maryland, Kentucky, and Missouri remained with the Union.

The call for men

While the Union troops were gathering and drilling

Blockade of Confederate States

in Washington, Lincoln declared a blockade of the ports of the Confederate States. He saw that if he closed the ports of the South he could prevent the shipment of cotton to Europe and so keep the Confederacy from getting supplies in exchange for the cotton. This was a heavy blow to the Confederates.

The "Merrimac" and the "Monitor"

The South depended on the *Merrimac* to break the blockade. The *Merrimac* was a wooden war vessel which had been covered with a double coat of iron. It had a great iron beak with which it could ram wooden vessels. The *Merrimac* moved to attack the Union fleet, which was stationed in Hampton Roads. The shot fired from the Union vessels and from the shore batteries had no more effect on the iron coat of the *Merrimac* than hail on a tin roof. She sank one wooden war vessel and set another on fire. What was to hinder her from

THE CONFEDERATE STATES

going up the Potomac and bombarding Washington? But Lincoln placed his hope in the *Monitor*. This

strange craft, "looking like a cheese box on a raft," reached Hampton Roads that night and took position to defend the Union fleet from the *Merrimac*. The next morning the two ironclads met in battle. It was a battle of giants. "Why do you stop firing?" asked an officer of one of the gunners on the *Merrimac*. "I can do her as much damage by snapping my thumb at her every two minutes and a half," was the reply.

Battle between ironclads

ABRAHAM LINCOLN
From a rare photograph taken by Alexander Hesler in Chicago, 1860, and loaned by the Chicago Photogravure Company, who own the original

It was a drawn battle. Washington was safe. The South could not break the blockade. This battle between the *Merrimac* and the *Monitor* changed the navies of the world. Wooden war vessels now gave place to iron vessels.

Meantime great battles were also being fought on land. In the East the Union army under General McClellan had been hurled back in an attack on Richmond. The Confederates under General Lee, in an attempt to invade the North, had been forced to retreat.

McClellan in the East

In the West events of equal importance were taking place. The Union troops under General Grant defeated the Confederates in many battles in Kentucky and Tennessee. Then with the aid of the Union fleet under Captain David Farragut, Grant captured the

Grant in the West

Confederate strongholds along the Mississippi River, and so cut the Confederacy in two.

Lincoln had declared the war was to be fought to save the Union and not to get rid of slavery. But as the war went on, the slavery question would keep coming up. The Confederates used the slaves to build forts, cook for the army, and to do other work. Thus the slave took the place of the white soldier. Other slaves raised food supplies and cared for the women. In this way the slaves were constantly being used to help fight against the Union.

Slavery question to the front

The time had come to destroy slavery. Lincoln now saw that by freeing the slaves he could strike a heavy blow at the Confederacy. So as commander in chief of the Union armies he issued the Proclamation of Emancipation January 1, 1863.

Proclamation of Emancipation

THE STATUE OF ABRAHAM LINCOLN IN LINCOLN PARK, CHICAGO
By Augustus St. Gaudens

The war, however, continued more than two years longer. The long list of dead and wounded on both sides saddened Lincoln. Day by day the lines in his kindly face grew deeper.

Finally the news came that General Grant had hammered General Lee's lines to pieces, and that Jefferson Davis and his cabinet were leaving Richmond, the capital of the Confederacy.

Early in April President

Lincoln went to visit the city of Richmond. Here he saw a city on fire, and a mob breaking into houses.

Grant was pursuing Lee's army. He overtook it, and on April 8 offered terms of surrender. Lee accepted. The president's heart was filled with gratitude that no more lives were to be sacrificed on either side.

Lee surrenders

163. President Lincoln Assassinated. The evening of April 14, 1865, Lincoln went to Ford's Theater in Washington to rest his body and mind. As he sat in a box, John Wilkes Booth, an actor, shot him in the back of the head. Booth sprang upon the stage, flourished his revolver, and escaped.

Lincoln shot

Abraham Lincoln died the next day. Thus the nation lost a great man. He was truly a man "with malice toward none, with charity for all."

Dies April 14, 1865

Courtesy of *Youth's Companion*

LINCOLN TOWER OF CHRIST CHURCH, SOUTHWARK, LONDON

The cost of this tower was met by contributions half in English sixpences and half in American dimes

Many monuments have been built to honor the name of this great man. The most unique one is in Edinburgh, Scotland—a life-size statue with one hand holding the Emancipation Proclamation and with the other striking the chains from a half-rising slave. Another interesting monument is the Lincoln Tower of Christ Church, London. High on this tower in red, white, and blue tiles, is the American flag. The largest memorial is at Springfield, Illinois, the home of Lincoln and where he lies buried. One of the most celebrated is the St. Gaudens statue in Lincoln Park, Chicago.

Monuments to his memory

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Lincoln, born of poor parents in the state of Kentucky, went over to Indiana at seven years of age. *2.* Helped build a cabin and clear the forest and went hunting. *3.* Lincoln lost his mother, and his father married again. *4.* His stepmother took good care of Abe and his sister. *5.* Lincoln had little schooling, but read a few books very thoroughly. *6.* He was physically powerful at twenty-one and had read so much that he could "spell down" the whole country. *7.* The family moved to Illinois, and Abe was hired to take a flatboat down the Mississippi. *8.* He saw a slave auction at New Orleans. *9.* Lincoln was elected captain in the Black Hawk War; elected to the legislature for four terms. *10.* He studied law and was elected to Congress. *11.* Attacked Douglas for the Kansas-Nebraska Bill. *12.* Lincoln and Douglas held joint debates. *13.* Nominated for the presidency by the Republicans in convention at Chicago. *14.* Douglas displeased the South and the Democratic party was split. *15.* Lincoln was elected president, the South seceded, and Douglas stood by the Union. *16.* The battle between the *Merrimac* and the *Monitor* ushered in the age of the ironclad war vessel. *17.* Grant defeated Lee, and Lee surrendered. *18.* Lincoln went to the Ford Theater in Washington, and was assassinated.

Study Questions. *1.* Describe Lincoln's early surroundings. *2.* Picture Abe and his sister. *3.* How did Abe help get their meat? *4.* What did he owe to his mother? *5.* What did Abe's new mother do for him? *6.* What books did Abe read and how did he read them? *7.* Why was Abe liked in the family? *8.* How tall was Lincoln? How old was he when the family started for Illinois? *9.* What did he do soon after going to Illinois? *10.* What did he see in New Orleans that was new to him? *11.* Prove Lincoln was honest. *12.* Prove that the men of the countryside had confidence in Lincoln. *13.* How old was Lincoln when he ran for the legislature? *14.* Tell the story of Lincoln's experiences in running for the legislature. *15.* What was his success as a lawyer? *16.* Why did Lincoln love public speaking? *17.* Why was Lincoln not elected to Congress again? *18.* How did Lincoln become the champion speaker against Douglas? *19.* What

was the effect of the debate? *20.* What new declaration did Lincoln make in his Springfield speech? *21.* Why did Lincoln challenge Douglas? *22.* How did Lincoln become widely known? *23.* What was the fatal question put to Douglas by Lincoln? *24.* To what rights did Lincoln say the black man is entitled? *25.* Picture the scene in the state convention of 1860. *26.* What was the effect of the Lincoln-Douglas debates on the Democratic party? *27.* Why did this result in Lincoln's election to the presidency? *28.* Give an account of the demonstrations made in honor of Lincoln. *29.* Who fired the first shot in the Civil War, and where? *30.* How many slave states remained loyal to the Union? *31.* What kind of a war did Lincoln make of the Civil War? *32.* Describe the battle between the *Merrimac* and the *Monitor*. *33.* How was the *Merrimac* protected? *34.* How did the Proclamation of Emancipation affect the strength of the Confederates? *35.* Describe the surrender of Lee. *36.* Tell the story of Lincoln's assassination. *37.* How did the nation feel over Lincoln's death? *38.* How has he been honored? *39.* Describe the statue in Edinburgh. *40.* Where was Lincoln buried?

Suggested Readings. ABRAHAM LINCOLN: Baldwin, *Four Great Americans*, 187–246; McMurry, *Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley*, 170–184; Wright, *Children's Stories of American Progress*, 159–178, 299–327; Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 193–210; Hart and Stevens, *Romance of the Civil War*, 1–112; Bolton, *Lives of Poor Boys Who Became Famous*, 342–367; Mabie, *Heroes Every Child Should Know*, 309–319; Nicolay, *Boys' Life of Abraham Lincoln;* Coffin, *Abraham Lincoln;* Mace, *Lincoln: The Man of the People;* Hale, *Stories of War;* Southworth, *Builders of Our Country*, Vol. II, 186–217.

TWO FAMOUS GENERALS

ULYSSES S. GRANT, THE GREAT GENERAL OF THE UNION ARMIES

Ulysses Simpson Grant, 1822

164. A Poor Boy Becomes a Great Man. Ulysses Simpson Grant was born in 1822, in Ohio, at a place called Point Pleasant. When he was a year old his

Early schooling

parents removed to Georgetown, Ohio, and there a few years later he attended school. He was taught little besides reading, writing, and arithmetic. As he grew up he helped his father and mother by hauling wood, plowing, and doing other useful work. He did not like the leather business, his father's occupation, but he found great pleasure in farm work because he was very fond of horses.

Fond of horses

He liked to travel

Young Grant liked to travel. When the news came that he had been appointed a cadet at the United States Military Academy, he was glad because of the journey to West Point but not because of any other opportunities it offered. He did not like West Point, and studied only to please his father.

Fights under General Taylor

After his graduation Grant fought in the Mexican War as lieutenant under General Taylor and later under General Scott. After peace was restored he served in California as a captain, but very soon resigned, and when the Civil War broke out in 1861 he was working as a clerk in his father's store at Galena, Illinois.

Resigns and returns home

THE BIRTHPLACE OF GENERAL GRANT, POINT PLEASANT, OHIO

165. A Great General. When Lincoln's call for seventy-five thousand men startled the country, Grant was made chairman of a meeting at Galena called to raise a company of soldiers. He then went to Springfield,

Grant goes to Springfield

where the governor set him to work drilling soldiers and getting them ready for the war. After a time he became colonel of a regiment. A further promotion followed which made him a brigadier-general in command of several regiments. Later still he rose to be major-general, in command of an army.

His promotions

ULYSSES S. GRANT
From a photograph taken in 1866 by F. Gutekunst, Philadelphia

Early in the war it was seen that in order to conquer the Confederacy it must be split in two by gaining possession of the Mississippi River. As a part of the great campaign with this end in view, we find Brigadier-General Grant directing the attacks on Fort Henry and Fort Donelson. These places were less than ten miles apart, in western Tennessee.

With the help of Commodore Foote and his gunboats, Grant easily captured Fort Henry. To take Fort Donelson was not so easy. The Confederates tried to break through the right wing of Grant's army. After hard fighting they were driven back, and General Buckner asked what terms Grant would give if they surrendered. To this General Grant replied that he would consider "no terms but an unconditional and immediate surrender . . . I propose to move immediately upon your works." This answer has become famous.

Captures Forts Henry and Donelson

The surrender of Fort Henry and Fort Donelson forced

Confederates fall back

the Confederates to move back their line of defense. After winning the two days' battle at Pittsburg Landing,

THE BATTLE OF PITTSBURG LANDING, TENNESSEE

General Grant turned his attention to the Mississippi River. As long as the Mississippi remained open to the southern forces, Arkansas, Louisiana, and Texas could send food supplies to the Confederates on the east side of the river. This General Grant wanted to stop, so, early in 1863, he moved southward to take Vicksburg. He beat the Confederates in the field and drove them into Vicksburg. The siege of the city lasted seven weeks. No one could slip in or out. Meat and bread grew scarce. The houses were knocked to pieces by cannon balls, and people found shelter in cellars and caves.

Grant moves against Vicksburg

On the Fourth of July, 1863, Vicksburg, with Pemberton's army of more than thirty thousand men, surrendered. There was great happiness throughout the North. President Lincoln sent a message of thanks to General Grant, and Congress voted that he be given a medal.

The surrender

During this campaign in the lower Mississippi country

a large Confederate army had marched north from Virginia, across Maryland into Pennsylvania. This army, under General Robert E. Lee, had won its way as far as Gettysburg. Here, at the end of a great three days' battle, the Confederates were decisively beaten; this defeat came on July 3, and on the very next day came the news that far-away Vicksburg had surrendered to Grant. After defeating the Confederates at Murfreesboro, General Rosecrans was in turn defeated at Chickamauga, and then cooped up in the town of Chattanooga by General Bragg. General Grant was sent to rescue the Union army, which he did in the battles of Lookout Mountain, led by Hooker, and Missionary Ridge, led by Sherman.

Gettysburg on the same day

SCENE OF GRANT'S CAMPAIGNS IN THE WEST

Lieutenant-general

166. Great Commander of the Union Armies. President Lincoln saw that General Grant was a great soldier. He sent for him to come to Washington and made him lieutenant-general in command of all the armies of the United States.

The "Wilderness"

Grant took command at once. His first great object was to capture Lee's army. The shortest way to Lee's army lay through the "Wilderness," a part of the country lying south of the upper part of the Rapidan, in Virginia, and covered with a thick forest of tangled underbrush. The route was dangerous. But into the "Wilderness" Grant plunged with his great army. General Lee was there with his troops. The fighting began. For a month it was almost constant charging, back and forth, and there were long lists of dead and wounded. Grant moved his army southward and nearer Richmond. Lee met him in the bloody battles of Spottsylvania and Cold Harbor.

Petersburg taken

Then Grant crossed the James River, south of Richmond, and began the attack on Petersburg. This place was taken in the spring of 1865.

Richmond given up

General Lee told the Confederate president, Jefferson Davis, that he could hold Richmond no longer. He tried to get his army away, but the men were weak from hard fighting, and Sheridan, with his cavalry, was too quick for him.

Lee surrenders at Appomattox

General Grant wrote to General Lee suggesting that he surrender, and thus prevent the loss of more lives. Lee agreed, and the papers were signed April 9, 1865, at Appomattox Court House. No more generous terms were ever given than those granted to Lee and his men.

After the war was over General Grant served for a

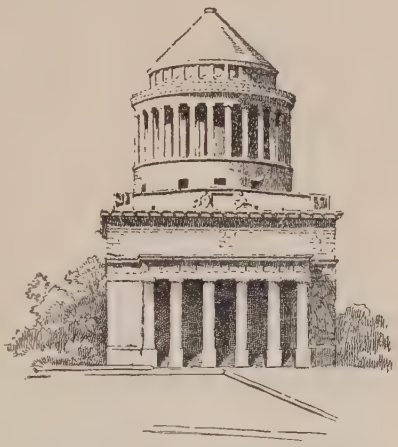
time in the cabinet of President Johnson, who had become president at Lincoln's death.

167. President of the United States. In 1868 Grant was elected President of the United States. He was elected again in 1872. Late in life he made a tour of the world, and everywhere was received with great honor.

Grant elected president

He died July 23, 1885, at Mount McGregor, near Saratoga, New York. His body rests in Riverside Park, New York City, where a magnificent monument has been built to his memory.

Dies in 1885



THE GRANT MONUMENT, RIVERSIDE PARK, NEW YORK

ROBERT EDWARD LEE, THE MAN WHO LED THE CONFEDERATE ARMIES

168. The Great General of the Confederacy. Robert E. Lee was born in Virginia in 1807. He went to school at Alexandria, where George Washington once lived, and became a cadet at the United States Military Academy at West Point.

Robert E. Lee, 1807

In the war with Mexico Lee earned honor and fame. He rose rapidly in rank. Starting as captain, he became major, lieutenant-colonel, and then colonel. When the Mexican War was over, he took charge of the Military Academy at West Point. After three years, he decided

Wins fame in Mexico

In charge at West Point

to give up the work at West Point and go West to fight the Indians.

About this time the people began to insist that, in the United States, slavery must be given up. Even the army officers and men quarreled about it. Lee believed in the Union and did not want the South to leave it. But when Virginia followed other slave states out of the Union and into the Confederacy, Lee went with his native state.

Lee goes with his state

When the war began, Lee, as general, had command of the Virginia troops. After the battle of Fair Oaks, in which General Joseph E. Johnston was wounded, General Lee took charge of the army defending Richmond.

In command of army defending Richmond

169. Lee Fights Battle after Battle. Lee at once attacked the Union army which was trying to take Richmond. In a seven days' battle he forced McClellan, the Union general, to retreat. He then struck the army of Pope a fatal blow and marched with his victorious soldiers into Maryland. A great battle was fought at Antietam (1862) and Lee returned to Virginia. He won two great victories at Fredericksburg and Chancellorsville. In the latter battle he lost Stonewall Jackson, his best general. After this, his army rested and ranks filled, General Lee moved rapidly through Maryland and into Pennsylvania. The North became alarmed, but a great Union army was already hurrying to meet the Confederate forces.

Compels McClellan to retreat

Invaded Maryland and Pennsylvania

The two armies met at Gettysburg, and there for three days was fought the greatest battle of the Civil War. On the last day General Pickett made his famous charge. Fifteen thousand southern soldiers charged across the valley — more than a mile wide — right up to the muzzles

Greatest battle of the war

Pickett's charge

of the Union guns. But the help they expected from another direction did not arrive, and they had to retreat. Lee's army was defeated. More than fifty thousand men — including the killed, wounded, and missing on both sides — were lost at Gettysburg. **The loss**

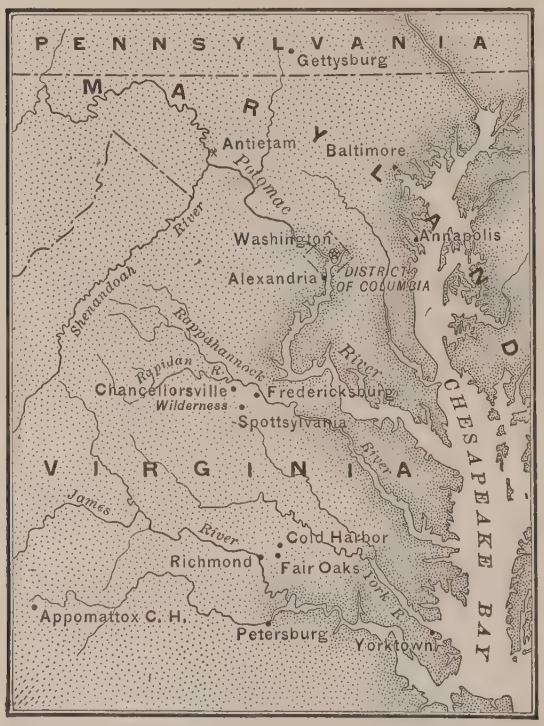
170. Facing a Powerful Army. General Lee then went back across the Potomac, never to invade the North again. From then onward, little was done until, in 1864, General Grant took command of all the Union forces. Then followed three great battles — the "Wilderness," so called because it was fought in a thick forest of tangled underbrush lying in Virginia just south of the upper portion of the Rapidan; Spottsylvania, fought near the Spottsylvania courthouse a little farther southward, and Cold Harbor, fought a few miles northeast of Richmond. **Lee never invades again**

PICKETT'S CHARGE AT GETTYSBURG
This heroic assault marked the turn of the Confederate tide

Lee's troops wearing out

General Lee's troops were wearing out. There were no more men to take the places of those killed and wounded. Food and clothing became scarce, and other supplies were hard to get. General Lee was now made commander in chief over all the Confederate armies. He immediately put Joseph E. Johnston back in command of his old army in the West, but it was too late.

Lee decided in 1865 that Richmond must be given up. He wanted to take his army to Danville, Virginia, on the way to join the army of General Joseph E. Johnston, in North Carolina, but at Appomattox his troops met General Sheridan's cavalry.



SCENE OF WAR AROUND WASHINGTON AND RICHMOND

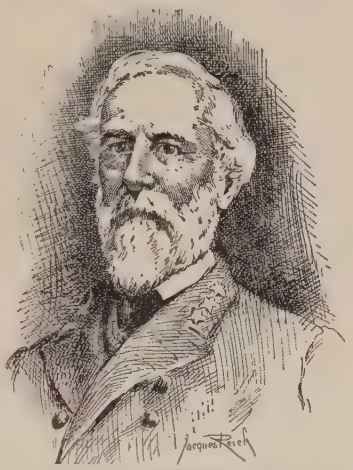
Sheridan blocks the way

171. The Confederacy Was Lost. General Lee received a letter from General Grant asking him to surrender. The two generals met at a farmhouse and agreed upon terms. Grant gave the officers and men permission

Terms of surrender

to take their horses home "to do their spring plowing."

The next morning Lee, surrounded by his sorrowing men, mounted his horse, Traveler, and rode slowly away to his home in Richmond. The other Confederate armies surrendered one by one.



ROBERT EDWARD LEE
From a portrait painted by Browne, now in the Westmoreland Club, Richmond, Virginia

President of Washington College

After the war General Lee was elected president of Washington College at Lexington, Virginia, now Washington and Lee University. He greatly enjoyed his work of building up the young manhood of the South. He died at Lexington in 1870. A monument to the memory of this great man has been erected at Richmond, and another at Lexington.

Dies in 1870

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Grant born of parents who were farmers. Loved to work with horses. *2.* Sent to West Point; was in Mexican War under Generals Taylor and Scott. *3.* Was clerk for his father at Galena. *4.* In the Civil War rose rapidly till made a major-general. *5.* Captured Fort Donelson and Fort Henry. *6.* Captured Vicksburg; was made lieutenant-general, and sent into the Wilderness after General Lee. *7.* Fought a month, then moved around to Petersburg. *8.* Offered Lee terms of surrender. *9.* Was twice made president. *10.* Died at Mount McGregor. *11.* Robert E. Lee was born in Virginia and went to school at Alexandria. *12.* Went to West Point, and was in the Mexican War, where he earned honor and fame. *13.* Took charge at West Point. *14.* Followed Virginia when she seceded, and was

given command of the troops defending Richmond. *15.* Won several victories over the North. *16.* Failed at Gettysburg. *17.* Fought to save Richmond. *18.* Surrendered to General Grant in spring of 1865. *19.* Became president of Washington College.

Study Questions. *1.* Tell the story of Grant until he reached West Point. *2.* What part did Grant take in the war with Mexico? *3.* What did Grant do at Galena when Lincoln's call came? *4.* Tell of his promotion. *5.* What would happen if Vicksburg and other Mississippi River places were taken? *6.* What two victories came on the Fourth of July, and what did both mean? *7.* How did Grant's victory impress the president? *8.* What can you tell of the "Battle of the Wilderness"? *9.* What happened at Richmond? *10.* Picture the scene at Appomattox Court House. *11.* Tell the story of Grant after the Civil War. *12.* Tell of Lee's promotion after leaving West Point. *13.* Did Lee want his state to leave the Union? *14.* Was he a victorious general at first? *15.* What happened at Gettysburg? *16.* Tell about Lee defending Richmond. *17.* What did Lee plan to do after Richmond fell? *18.* Why did he not carry out this plan? *19.* What position did Lee accept after the war?

Suggested Readings. ULYSSES S. GRANT: Burton, *Four American Patriots*, 195–254; Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 181–191; Hart and Stevens, *Romance of the Civil War*, 179–183; Hale, *Stories of War*, 21–29, 74–91, 92–118, 168–187, 226–264; Bolton, *Famous American Statesmen*, 307–360.

ROBERT E. LEE: Hale, *Stories of War*, 61–73, 119, 149; Mabie, *Heroes Every Child Should Know*, 289–308; Magill, *Stories from Virginia History*, 162–172.

THE BEGINNING OF EXPANSION ABROAD

WILLIAM McKINLEY AND THE SPANISH-AMERICAN WAR

William McKinley, 1843

172. William McKinley. William McKinley was born in Ohio in 1843. As a boy his chief delight was to roam the fields and woods surrounding Niles, his home

town, or to fish in the fine streams near by. When he was about nine years old his parents moved to Poland, Ohio, where there were good schools for children. McKinley studied hard, and at seventeen years of age entered Allegheny College at Meadville, Pennsylvania. But his health had never been very good and he fell ill from hard study. He returned to Poland, and there a little later he taught school.

Teaches school

WILLIAM McKINLEY
From a photograph by Courtney, taken at Canton, Ohio

In 1861 Lincoln's call for troops to save the Union fired the whole North with patriotism. McKinley, though then only eighteen years of age, enlisted at once. Under fire at Antietam and in later battles of the war, he won praise and promotion for his heroic deeds. The active army life was good for him, and when the war was over he was a strong and healthy man. He enlisted as a private and came out as a major. All his promotions were for merit and bravery.

Enlists to fight for the Union

Wins praise and promotion

He returned to Poland and took up the study of the law. But his means were small and he had a hard struggle. In 1867 McKinley was admitted to the bar and opened an office in Canton, Ohio.

Studies law

Like many another young lawyer he had numerous difficulties and disappointments, but he worked hard and in time became a successful lawyer. He was a good speaker and soon was much in demand in political campaigns.

Becomes a successful lawyer and speaker

In Congress

Elected president

The people admired him. They felt that he could be trusted. They sent him, for seven terms, to represent them in Congress at Washington, and twice they made him governor of Ohio. In 1896 he was elected president of the United States.

The Cubans revolt

173. Spanish Persecution in Cuba. Since the earliest days of Spanish rule, Cuba had been discontented and had engaged in frequent wars with Spain because of heavy taxation and bad government. Again and again the Cubans revolted, but they were not strong enough to succeed and Spanish oppression continued. In 1895 the people rose in a last desperate effort to free themselves. To crush them Spain sent a large army under a cruel general. Large numbers of unarmed Cubans — men, women, and children — were gathered into camps guarded by Spanish soldiers and cut off from food and other supplies. Thousands died of starvation and disease.

Americans aroused

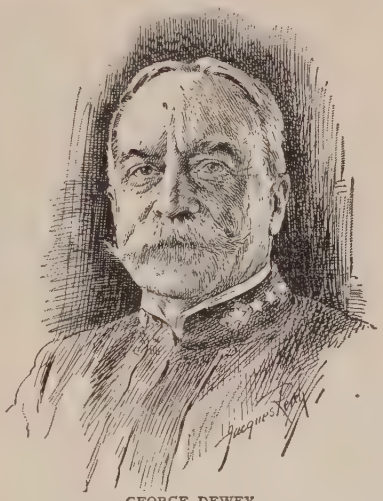
These and other harsh things done in an attempt to break the spirit of the Cubans filled the American people with bitter indignation. On the recommendation of President McKinley, Congress voted fifty thousand dollars for relief work. Money,

HOW THE CUBANS FOUGHT

Lying in ambush for the advancing column of the enemy

by private contribution, also flowed in from all parts of the country. The Red Cross Society, led by Clara Barton, hastened to the island to relieve the awful conditions of hunger and disease.

Red Cross Society goes to Cuba



GEORGE DEWEY
From a photograph taken in 1900 by Francis B. Johnston, Washington, D.C.

The American people were aroused. They demanded that the United States interfere in behalf of the suffering Cubans, who were fighting to be free. They were eager to take up arms for freedom and humanity.

Indignation was brought to its highest pitch when, on February 15, 1898, the United States battleship *Maine* was sunk in Havana Harbor, two hundred sixty of the crew perishing. What was the cause of the explosion has never been found out, but Americans then believed it to be the work of the Spaniards.

Battleship "Maine" blown up

In April the United States demanded that the Spanish troops be taken from Cuba and the Cubans be given their independence. Spain was given three days in which to reply. She immediately declared war against the United States.

War declared

174. A War for the Sake of Humanity. The war had hardly begun before Admiral George Dewey destroyed the Spanish fleet and pounded to pieces the shore batteries in Manila Bay, Philippine Islands. Dewey, with his

Dewey destroys the Spanish fleet

fleet, sailed under orders from Hongkong, China, entered the bay, and did his work without the loss of a man. This deed made him the naval hero of the war.

California volunteers lead in numbers

Thousands of men, North and South, rallied to the call of President McKinley. The states of the far West responded with noble enthusiasm. California, largest in population and wealth, led in the number of its volunteers.

The land forces in Cuba were under the command of General Shafter. They stormed El Caney and San Juan and marched on Santiago. But the "Rough Riders," a regiment raised from the mountains and plains, attracted the most attention. Colonel Leonard Wood had command of them, aided by Theodore Roosevelt. When Wood was made a general, Roosevelt became their colonel, and fought through the war with them.

"Rough Riders" win fame

SCENE OF THE SPANISH WAR IN THE PHILIPPINES

A large fleet

sent from Spain under Admiral Cervera had kept out of the way of the American fleet under Rear-Admiral Samp-

THE BATTLE OF MANILA BAY

son and Commodore Schley and was now hidden in Santiago Harbor. When the Americans captured El Caney and San Juan, the Spanish admiral decided that Santiago would soon be in American hands. To escape being taken prisoner he made a bold dash from the harbor.

Spanish fleet in Santiago Harbor

The American naval forces were on the watch, and soon the entire Spanish fleet was destroyed or captured — July 3, 1898.

Cervera's fleet destroyed

The occupation by the Americans of the city of Manila, in the Philippines, in August (1898), brought peace proposals from Spain. These were accepted, the treaty being signed on the tenth of December.

Treaty of peace signed

This war was fought for the sake of humanity and freedom and not for gain or glory. The United States had taken the side of an oppressed people struggling for independence but she did not claim these countries as the spoils of war. She paid Spain twenty million dollars in gold for the Philippines, and at once set to work to establish schools, build good roads, help the farmers,

The Philippines bought for twenty million dollars

and improve living conditions by making the government more stable and humane.

Hawaiian Islands annexed

It had long been felt, especially by the people of the Pacific States, that for both commercial and military reasons the Hawaiian Islands should belong to us. These islands — eight in all — were annexed in 1898.

Cuba a republic

Steps were taken at once to give the people of Cuba a government of their own. The island was made a republic. The constitution, drawn up somewhat like our own, was adopted by the people of Cuba, February 21, 1902. The United States did much to help the people before it withdrew from the island in 1902 and left the Cubans to rule themselves. Conditions have rapidly improved. In 1894, under Spanish rule, there were only about 900 public schools, and, even including the 700 private schools, only about 60,000 pupils were on the rolls. Six years later, under American rule, there were 3,550 public schools, with 172,000 pupils enrolled. By the conduct of their government the Cubans are justifying the confidence the American people had in them.

Conditions in Cuba greatly improved

United States a world power

THE BATTLE OF SANTIAGO

As a result of the war Guam and Porto Rico also became American possessions. This was the beginning of American territorial expansion. The United States took its place among the great world powers, and has since played an important part in the affairs of nations.

McKinley shot by an anarchist in 1901

175. McKinley Assassinated. President McKinley did not live to see the results of self-government in Cuba. Shortly after his election to a second term as president, he was shot by an anarchist, while the guest of the Pan-American Exposition at Buffalo in September, 1901. After a week of patient suffering, watched with painful anxiety by the people, William McKinley, our third martyr president passed away.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* William McKinley was born in Ohio. *2.* He went to college at Meadville, Pennsylvania, and afterwards taught school. *3.* Enlisted as a private in 1861 and won praise and promotion for bravery in fighting for the Union. *4.* After the war he studied law and opened an office in Canton, Ohio. *5.* Was a good speaker and was sent to Congress at Washington for seven terms. *6.* Twice governor of Ohio, he was elected president of the United States in 1896. *7.* The Cubans had revolted many times against Spanish oppression and now rose again. *8.* The Americans sympathized with the suffering Cubans; Congress voted fifty thousand dollars for relief work. *9.* The United States battleship *Maine* blown up in Havana Harbor. *10.* Spain declared war against the United States. *11.* Admiral George Dewey destroyed the Spanish fleet at Manila in the Philippine Islands. *12.* American forces, among them the Rough Riders, attacked the Spanish in Cuba. *13.* American fleet destroyed the Spanish fleet at Santiago. *14.* Peace proposals came from Spain and the treaty of peace was signed in December, 1898. *15.* The United States bought the Philippines from Spain, the Hawaiian Islands were annexed, and Cuba

became a republic. *16.* Guam and Porto Rico also became American possessions. *17.* Conditions in former Spanish possessions greatly improved. *18.* McKinley assassinated by an anarchist while guest of the Pan-American Exposition at Buffalo, in September, 1901.

Study Questions. *1.* Describe McKinley's boyhood surroundings and what he liked to do. *2.* What made him fall ill? *3.* How did he answer Lincoln's call for troops? *4.* What effect did army life have on his health? *5.* What did he do after the war? *6.* To what public office was he elected? *7.* Why did the Cubans revolt against Spain? *8.* How did the Spaniards attempt to crush the revolt? *9.* What did the Americans do to relieve the suffering Cubans? *10.* What did they want to do? *11.* How did the sinking of the *Maine* affect the Americans? *12.* What did the United States demand of Spain? *13.* Describe Dewey's action at Manila. *14.* What state led in the number of volunteers? *15.* What were the "Rough Riders"? *16.* What happened at Santiago? *17.* What finally brought peace proposals from Spain? *18.* Why had the war been fought? *19.* What did the Americans do in the Philippines? *20.* What other islands came into American possession? *21.* What happened in Cuba? *22.* When and in what city was McKinley assassinated?

Suggested Readings. Stratemeyer, *American Boy's Life of William McKinley;* Morris, *The War with Spain,* 150–169, 180–214, 267–285; Barrett, *Admiral George Dewey,* 55–152, 230–251; Ross, *Heroes of Our War with Spain.*

WESTWARD EXPANSION AND DEVELOPMENT

THE WESTWARD MOVEMENT OF POPULATION AND THE DEVELOPMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

176. The New West. We have seen how the discovery of gold in the sand near the American River over one hundred miles from San Francisco started the tremendous rush to the Pacific coast. The gold seekers

The gold seekers

went by three routes: by ship all the way around the Horn, the longest and stormiest way; by ship part of the way, crossing at Panama, and dangerous because of fevers; and by trails leading over the mountains and plains, where they suffered untold hardships from losing their way on the sandy plains or among the mountains. Many hundreds perished from sickness and hunger. In 1858, ten years later, gold was discovered near Pikes Peak; in 1859, silver was found in what is now southern Nevada. People streamed westward in ever-increasing numbers. Long lines of covered wagons, called "prairie schooners," filled with fortune seekers toiled over the plains and mountain trails. "Way stations" sprang up along the routes of travel, to supply the needs of immigrants. These supply stations soon grew into towns. Then came the discovery of gold in what is now Idaho and Montana, and in the Black Hills of South Dakota. The westward tide of population broadened. It filled the bounds of the United States from the Dakotas to Texas, but the lure in all this early development was gold and silver.

Three routes to the Pacific coast

Gold seekers increase in number

New discoveries of gold

177. Transportation. The demand for means of rapid communication with the new West became strong. It was necessary to bind the new country firmly with the old. The "pony express" and the overland stage were too risky and too slow.

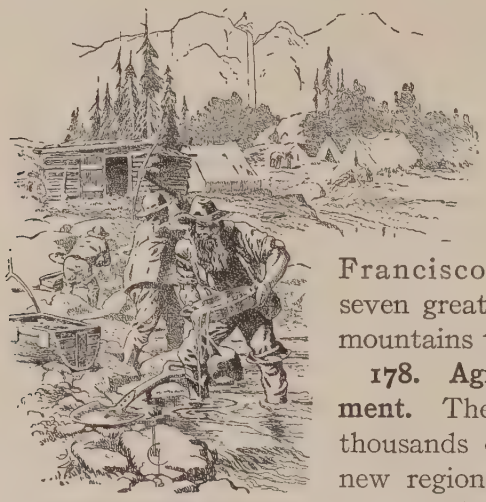
The population in California was increasing all the time. In 1850, two years after the discovery of gold, California with about one hundred thousand inhabitants was admitted as a state. The Homestead Law of 1862, by which settlers could easily obtain land, brought great numbers of farmers to the prairie plains. Finally, on

California admitted as a state

Homestead Law

Union Pacific completed

March 10, 1869, the Union Pacific Railway, the first link between the Atlantic and the Pacific, was completed.



A CALIFORNIA MINING CAMP OF '49

Other railways soon followed, the Northern Pacific reaching the northwest coast, the Southern Pacific connecting New Orleans and San Francisco. To-day (1916) seven great railways cross the mountains to the Pacific coast.

Settlers enter new lands in large numbers

178. Agricultural Development. The railroads brought thousands of settlers into the new regions. But it was no longer to hunt for gold. It was in search of homes — for the golden harvest of the rich farm lands of the West. On the boundless prairies, with only wide stretches of waving grass and flowers to be seen, the settler marked out his claim and began to make a home.

Farming develops

Towns sprang up and over night seemed to grow into cities. Great fields of yellow grain soon filled the vast Mississippi Valley plains. The railroads sent branch lines out in every direction. In the foothills of the mountains and on the grassy plateaus, immense herds of cattle and sheep were pastured.

Railroads spread

New territory opened

Settlers, cattlemen, farmers, and miners crowded on the lands of the Indians. The regions occupied by the red men now became smaller and smaller until nearly all

the Indians were placed on reservations and looked after by the national government.

Irrigation projects aided by the government

The need of more and still more land brought the farmers to the dry slopes and plateaus of both sides of the Rockies. Here were vast regions which water would make productive. Great irrigation projects were aided by the government and water was brought to these lands. To-day, what was once considered a barren desert is an expanse of waving grain, or green with forage and grasses for countless herds of sheep and cattle.

Gold becomes more difficult to get

In California the great gold deposits which lay comparatively free were growing smaller. The gold seekers were no longer able to wash gold from the sands and gravel of the river beds, or to find pockets of nuggets in the rocky hillsides. They had to make a living in some other way. Vast mineral resources were still there, but the mining of them was difficult. Expensive machinery was necessary, and companies were formed to work the deposits.

California a great agricultural state

Then began the real development of California and the great Pacific Northwest. People began to talk about the climate and the wonderful richness of the land. Up to 1875 California had been the great gold state. Now, though the output of minerals kept increasing, the farm crops grew still faster in value until in 1916 they were worth many times the mineral output.

The leading fruit-growing state

The first product to which the settler turned was wheat. California became one of the leading wheat states of the Union. Then the state discovered its great fruit-growing possibilities, and to-day it has no rival in that line. Orange growing was at one time almost as epidemic as gold hunting had been.

Meanwhile great cities were growing up surprisingly

Great cities develop

fast. The riches of forest, mine, and stream brought unlimited prosperity and growth. San Francisco, Los Angeles, Seattle, and Portland have taken their places among the great cities of the Union.

Agriculture on the great plains

East of the mountains, to the Mississippi, agriculture and commerce developed with great strides. Enormous elevators were built to handle the vast quantities of grain. Great packing plants were established, where immense numbers of cattle and sheep could be slaughtered and the meat be sent to all parts of the world.

GEORGE WASHINGTON GOETHALS, CHIEF ENGINEER OF THE PANAMA CANAL

179. The Panama Canal. In the great rush of gold seekers to the Pacific coast, thousands came by way of the Isthmus of Panama and many took the long journey around Cape Horn. Both ways were full of danger, and many persons never reached California.

GEORGE W. GOETHALS

The value to Americans of a canal across the Isthmus

It was this which first made Americans realize the value to their country of a canal across the Isthmus. As time passed, the great development of the Pacific coast region brought demands for fast and easy communication with the East. Railroads were built across the mountains, but transportation was still very expensive. The remedy lay in a short route by water between the east and the west coasts.

Then came the Spanish-American War and the memorable trip of the *Oregon*. A canal across the Isthmus must be built at whatever cost.

The French attempt to build a canal

In 1869 a French company had begun building a canal at Panama. Their difficulties were enormous. The expense was so heavy and the waste of money so great that little progress was made, and then the company failed. In 1903 the United States bought the rights of the French company and obtained a strip of land ten miles wide from the new Republic of Panama. Work was then begun by our government where the French had left off.

Work begun by the United States

180. George Washington Goethals. During the progress of the work there were several changes in the position of chief engineer in charge of the construction. In 1907 the building of the canal was intrusted to George Washington Goethals, of the corps of army engineers. Colonel Goethals was born in Brooklyn, June 29, 1858. He early gave signs of unusual mechanical ability. At the age of fifteen he entered the College of the City of New York. At graduation he stood at the head of his class. He then took up the study of engineering at the United States Military Academy at West Point. He advanced rapidly, and when twenty-four years of age was appointed first lieutenant of army engineers. After teaching at West Point for several years he was appointed captain of engineers. His ability caused him to be given charge of the Mussel Shoals Canal Construction on the Tennessee River. During the Spanish-American War he served with the volunteers as lieutenant-colonel and chief of engineers.

George Washington Goethals, 1858

Studies engineering at West Point

Serves in the Spanish-American War

In 1907 came the great opportunity of his life. He was given charge of the Panama Canal construction. It was

Goethals put in charge

a gigantic task. But the government of his country had placed it upon his shoulders and he determined to perform it, to give his life to it if need be.

The great work was finished with wonderful speed and regularity, and the least expense possible. Colonel Goethals believed that in the true service of one's country there can be no thought of profit for one's self.

Canal completed, 1914

The building of the Canal took about eight years' time, required the services of forty thousand men, and cost the United States four hundred million dollars.

Goethals governor of the Canal Zone

When the Canal was nearly finished, in 1914, a civil government was established in the Canal Zone. President Wilson appointed Colonel Goethals the first governor. The enormous task which he had done so well showed that he was a great manager as well as a great engineer.

The great benefit to the Pacific States

181. Value of the Canal to the Pacific Coast. The Pacific Coast States were now sure to rank among the leading states of the country. This section could now send the valuable products of its forests, streams, fields, and mines to the Atlantic coast by water. The water route to New York has been shortened by 7,800 miles, and to Europe by more than 5,600 miles. To the bands of steel which united the East and the West, had been added a still closer bond.

The San Francisco Exposition

In 1915 the Panama-Pacific International Exposition was held at San Francisco and the Panama-California Exposition at San Diego to celebrate the opening of the Canal.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Gold seekers reached the Pacific coast by three routes: by ship around Cape Horn; across the Isthmus at Panama; and over trails across the mountains.

2. With new discoveries of gold and the increasing population on the Pacific coast, means of rapid communication were urgently needed. *3.* In 1869 the Union Pacific Railway was completed. *4.* Settlers in large numbers entered the new West; agriculture on the great plains developed rapidly. *5.* Farmers crowded on the dry slopes and plateaus and irrigation projects were aided by the government. *6.* In California, when free deposits of gold became hard to find, the gold seekers became farmers. *7.* First a leading wheat state, California then became the leading fruit-growing state. *8.* Great cities grew up along the coast.

9. The Spanish-American War brought home to Americans the urgent necessity for a short route by water between the east and the west coasts. *10.* The United States took up the work of building a canal at Panama, buying the rights of a French company which had started the work and had failed. *11.* George Washington Goethals given position of chief engineer. *12.* Educated at West Point, Goethals served as chief of engineers in the Spanish-American War. *13.* The Canal was completed in 1914 and Goethals was appointed first governor of the Canal Zone, a strip of land ten miles wide along the course of the Canal. *14.* The Panama-Pacific International Exposition was held at San Francisco in 1915 to celebrate the opening of the Canal.

Study Questions. *1.* How did the gold seekers reach the Pacific coast? *2.* What demand did the increasing population in the West bring? *3.* What was the name of the first railway across the mountains to the Pacific coast? *4.* How many railways cross the mountains to-day? *5.* What did the railways bring about? *6.* How did this affect the Indians? *7.* How did the government aid the farmers in the dry areas? *8.* What happened in California when the free gold deposits gave out? *9.* What great cities grew up along the Pacific coast? *10.* What was happening in the plains east of the Rockies?

11. What brought home to Americans the urgent need of a canal across the Isthmus? *12.* Who began a canal at Panama? *13.* Why did the French not succeed? *14.* Who was put in charge of the work of the Americans? *15.* Where did Goethals study engineering? *16.* In what war did he serve? *17.* When was the Canal completed? *18.* How was the event celebrated?

Suggested Readings. Wright, *Children's Stories of American Progress*, 268–298; Brooks, *The Story of Cotton* and *The Story of Corn;* Nida, *Panama and Its "Bridge of Water,"* 63–187; Fairbanks, *The Western United States*, 215–290.

HEROINES OF NATIONAL PROGRESS

ELIZABETH CADY STANTON AND SUSAN B. ANTHONY, WHO WERE THE FIRST TO STRUGGLE FOR THE RIGHTS OF WOMEN

182. The Women of Our Nation. Women have played a very important part in the progress of our nation. They shared the hardships and dangers of the early colonists. Often they helped defend the cabin home against the savage Indian. In the Revolution the women who formed the Daughters of Liberty met to spin and sew for the soldiers in the field. They even took part in the battles for freedom, and did heroic service in caring for the sick and wounded.

Women play an important part in early progress

The Revolution won no new rights for women. The new privileges were for men only. The laws touching women's social, economic, and political welfare were about the same as before the war. But in spite of these drawbacks women cheerfully followed their husbands and fathers to the frontier and courageously bore their part in the work of making new homes and carving out new states. They found leisure everywhere to join in organizing schools, and to bear the burdens and the joys of founding churches. They furnished leaders in establishing and maintaining hospitals and asylums, and in all work for making mankind better.

They share frontier hardships

In our great war between the North and the South the women of both sections were untiring in their efforts to

furnish the boys in blue and the boys in gray with comforts from home and to lessen their sufferings by careful nursing in both field and hospital. Some of the boldest were spies, and faced death to carry news to the commanding general. Not a few, disguised as volunteers, were found fighting in the ranks for love of country or to be near some loved one.

Women's service in the Civil War

ELIZABETH CADY STANTON
From a photograph

Long before the Civil War great leaders arose among women to champion their cause. These leaders saw that in many ways women had proved their equality with men. This view of what they had done gave them hope for the future. They appealed to men and they cried out to women for greater opportunity. But they had no legal rights — no part in the control of the affairs of government. The leaders now began to demand the privileges enjoyed only by men. We must now turn to look at some of these noble women.

Women's equality with men

183. Elizabeth Cady Stanton, the First to Champion Woman Suffrage. Elizabeth Cady was born at Johnstown, New York, in 1815. Her girlhood was a happy one, spent with her brother and sisters. She was a healthy, rosy-cheeked girl, full of life and fun. She believed girls were the equal of boys and had as much intellect as they had, and she would not allow boys to dictate to her.

Born, 1815

Believed girls the equal of boys

Studies hard

When Elizabeth was eleven years old her brother died. Her father grieved deeply over the loss of his only son, and Elizabeth determined to try to be to her father all that her brother might have been. She therefore applied herself diligently to study and self-improvement.

Finds woman's position unequal

Her father was a lawyer. He had been a member of Congress. Many hours out of school Elizabeth spent in his office, listening to his clients state their cases. She gradually became indignant at what she found to be the unequal position of women in almost every walk of life. She determined to devote her life to securing for women the same rights and privileges that men had.

Marries Henry B. Stanton

While studying she did not neglect the arts of housekeeping. She regarded these as occupations of the highest dignity and importance. When twenty-five years old she married Henry B. Stanton, a lawyer and journalist who since his student days had talked and written against slavery. But she did not forget her old resolve to struggle for the rights of women, even when occupied with the duties of home and children.

Calls woman's rights convention

184. The First Woman's Rights Convention. In 1848 Mrs. Stanton called a woman's rights convention — the first ever held. Its purpose was "to discuss the social, civil, and religious conditions and rights of women."

"Declaration of Sentiments"

Mrs. Stanton read to the convention a set of twelve resolutions, the now famous "Declaration of Sentiments." It demanded for women equality with men and "all the rights and privileges which belong to them as citizens of the United States," including the right to vote. This was the first public demand for woman suffrage. The resolutions were passed. A storm of ridicule followed the convention, but Mrs. Stanton's position remained unchanged.

Women demand the right to vote

185. Susan B. Anthony. A few years after this historic convention, Mrs. Stanton met Susan B. Anthony. Miss Anthony was the daughter of Friends, or Quakers as they are often called. She was born at South Adams, Massachusetts, in 1820. Her father maintained a school at Battenville, New York, and here Susan received her early education.

Susan B. Anthony, 1820

SUSAN B. ANTHONY
From a photograph by Veeder, Albany, N.Y.

From her seventeenth birthday until she met Mrs. Stanton, Miss Anthony had been engaged in teaching school. But now the great national questions of anti-slavery and temperance were drawing her away from her work as a teacher. Before meeting Mrs. Stanton she had not been in sympathy with the Declaration of Sentiments; through that meeting the cause of woman's rights won an able and untiring friend.

Teaches school

Won to the cause of woman's rights

From this time on these two fought side by side for the cause of women. They traveled and lectured in all parts of the country. In 1868 they started a weekly paper, which they called *The Revolution*. Miss Anthony was the business manager and Mrs. Stanton was the editor. Its motto was, "The True Republic — men, their rights and nothing more; women, their rights and nothing less."

National Woman's Suffrage Association

In 1869 they organized the National Woman's Suffrage Association. In many states the question of woman

suffrage became an important one at elections. Wherever they were needed, in California, in New York, or in any other state, these two women could be found. Every year from 1869 until her death, in 1906, Miss Anthony addressed committees of Congress. In 1872 she cast a vote for president. She declared it to be her right under the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution. For this act she was arrested and fined, but the fine was never collected.

Miss Anthony casts vote for president

Mrs. Stanton died in 1902. The great movement she had started was on the way to certain victory. By 1915, eleven states and one territory had granted to women the right to vote. In twenty-two other states, some voting rights had been won.

Women win suffrage in many states

JULIA WARD HOWE, AUTHOR OF "THE BATTLE HYMN OF THE REPUBLIC," AND HARRIET BEECHER STOWE, WHO WROTE "UNCLE TOM'S CABIN"

186. Julia Ward Howe. All the great wars in which our country has been engaged brought heavy burdens of sorrow to the women. They could not march away to fight side by side with the men. Their duty was to send their loved ones away, with words of cheer, to danger and perhaps to death.

War brings sorrow to the women

At the outbreak of the Civil War, from many thousands of homes went father, husband, son, or brother, in many instances never to return. Women were left behind, praying for their loved ones and working untiringly night and day to provide food and clothing and to keep up the home.

But there were other women who could not serve their country in this way. Many had no one to send away

to fight. Among these was Julia Ward Howe. She was born in New York in 1819, of wealthy and distinguished parents. She was carefully reared, but she knew little of the work that girls are usually taught to do. Practically everything was done for her by servants. However, Julia dearly loved to read and study, and very early she began to write poetry.

Born, 1819

Knew little of work

In 1841 she married Dr. Samuel Gridley Howe, a noted teacher and reformer. While visiting in Washington in 1861 she saw the wounded soldiers brought in from the battle field of Bull Run, and saw women nursing them. She was deeply stirred by the sights around her. What service could she do for her country? Her husband was too old to enter the army, her son too young. She knew that there were thousands making clothes for the soldiers in the field. But she could not sew for the soldiers or care for the wounded, for she had never been taught to work with her hands. She could only write poetry. Of what use was that now?

Marries Doctor Howe

Desires to be of service to the Union

One day her minister suggested that she write words for the popular army tune, "John Brown's Body Lies A-Mouldering in the Grave." She did so, and the poem was published in a magazine under the name "The Battle Hymn of the Republic."

Writes "Battle Hymn of the Republic"

Soon the song was being sung through all the camps of the northern troops. The soldiers sang it on the march. They sang it in wild charges. They sang it beside the camp fire. Everywhere it counted much for victory. In writing this poem Mrs. Howe had done a great service for the Union.

It counts much for victory

187. The Woman's Club. After the war was over Mrs. Howe determined to go on being of service to her

country. She took up the cause of woman's rights. Women had had little or no chance to educate themselves and broaden their minds by discussing with each other the questions of the day. Mrs. Howe believed that the woman's club was the means by which women could free themselves from the narrow life in which they thought only of dress, hired help, and housekeeping. From then, until her death in 1910, she devoted herself to establishing clubs for women. She traveled over the country and wrote and lectured on this subject. She taught women that these clubs were not only for self-improvement but for the service of others: through them were established hospitals for women and children, lodging houses, and labor schools.

Founds clubs for women

Death in 1910

JULIA WARD HOWE
From a photograph by the Notman Photo. Co., Boston

A great service

Mrs. Howe had thus found a means of service greater and broader in significance than her "Battle Hymn of the Republic."

188. Harriet Beecher Stowe. Another woman who did great service for her country with her pen was Harriet Beecher Stowe. She was born in 1811, the daughter of a Connecticut minister, and was brought up in a deeply religious home. At school she was apt at writing and she dreamed of becoming a great author.

Born, 1811

She married Calvin E. Stowe, a student of theology, and thereafter devoted herself to her home and her children. During the years just before the Civil War there was much discussion of the slavery question. Mrs. Stowe had traveled in the South and had seen the ignorance in which the negroes were kept and the cruelty with which they were sometimes treated. She was aroused by some of the things that happened because of the Fugitive Slave Law. She resolved to use her talent for writing to help the slaves.

Marries Calvin E. Stowe

Writes to help slaves

In 1851 she began the story, *Uncle Tom's Cabin*. It was first published in serial form in an abolition paper in Washington. It was later published in book form. From the first, the sale of the book was enormous. It was read abroad as well as at home and translated into many languages.

Writes "Uncle Tom's Cabin"

Mrs. Stowe became famous. It is said that the book converted more than two million people to the cause of freedom for slaves. It helped to unite the North and to give it strength to stand firm in the great conflict.

It helped to win the victory

HARRIET BEECHER STOWE
From a photograph by Sarony, New York

Mrs. Stowe continued writing in behalf of the slaves. She gave her son to the cause of freedom. He was wounded at Gettysburg and never regained his health. She aided in establishing schools for the negroes in the South, and worked among them earnestly until her death in 1896.

Dies in 1896

FRANCES E. WILLARD, THE GREAT TEMPERANCE CRUSADER. CLARA BARTON, WHO FOUNDED THE RED CROSS SOCIETY IN AMERICA; AND JANE ADDAMS, THE FOUNDER OF HULL HOUSE SOCIAL SETTLEMENT IN CHICAGO

Frances E. Willard, 1839

189. Frances E. Willard. In 1839, when Frances Elizabeth Willard was born, thousands were leaving the eastern states for the new West. Her father and mother were successful teachers in New York, but when Frances was two years old they decided to move with the westward current. After living five years at Oberlin, Ohio, the family went on to Janesville, Wisconsin, settling on a farm in the midst of picturesque hills and woods. There Frances and her brother and sister grew up healthy, happy children, playing together in the forest and fields. The parents were religious and were total abstainers, and the children never forgot their teachings.

Family moves to Wisconsin

Stands at head of her class

At fifteen years of age Frances went to school in Janesville, and at eighteen to a Milwaukee college for girls. The following year she entered the Northwestern Female College at Evanston, Illinois. At graduation she stood at the head of her class.

Miss Willard began teaching. Then the death of her sister Mary, and shortly afterward, of her father, broke up her home. That home had been an ideal one. There the father and mother were equal in all things, and discussed together the affairs of the household. It was a perfect home, orderly and temperate. Frances Willard made up her mind to spend her life in spreading abroad a knowledge of such homes, and in helping women to become equal with men before the law.

Death breaks up the home

In 1874 came the anti-saloon crusade. Miss Willard

saw that this movement was part of the fight for better and happier homes, and threw herself ardently into the work. When the Woman's Christian Temperance Union was organized in Chicago, Miss Willard became its president.

President of W.C.T.U.

In 1879 she became the president of the National Union. Her work was never-ending. She wrote books; she lectured all over the country. For twelve years she held an average of one meeting a day.

FRANCES E. WILLARD
From a photograph

Miss Willard had seen that unless women had the right to assist in making laws, their cause was hopeless. Accordingly she declared herself in favor of woman suffrage. A few years later the Woman's Christian Temperance Union followed their leader into politics in an effort to encourage temperance legislation.

Favors woman suffrage

Miss Willard's work constantly became wider. The organization of which she was the head became international in its influence, and the World's Woman's Christian Temperance Union was organized in 1883, with Miss Willard as president. She had united the women of the world in a great league for the protection of the home. Miss Willard remained to the end of her life president of the World's Woman's Christian Temperance Union. She died in 1896.

Women united for the protection of the home

190. Clara Barton. Clara Barton was born in 1821, near Oxford, Massachusetts. She was educated to be a

Clara Barton, 1821

school teacher, and for many years followed that profession. In 1861 she visited Washington, and there felt the impulse that led to her great life work.

Nurses the wounded

CLARA BARTON
From a photograph by Charles E. Smith, Evanston, Illinois

The injured soldiers from the first battles of the Civil War were being brought to Washington. Miss Barton at once felt it her duty to help care for them. Not only did she nurse the wounded, but she encouraged soldiers on the way to the battle line.

191. Goes to the Battle Field. The men that were being taken to the hospitals received no care until they arrived there. Miss Barton saw that her place was on the battle field.

She secured a pass to the firing line, and for four years she followed the Union soldiers. She was constantly in danger; her clothing was pierced by bullets, her face blackened by powder. But she was undaunted. The soldiers needed her, and she must be there to help them. When she could, she nursed wounded Confederate as well as Federal soldiers. She received no pay for her work.

Constantly in danger

Received no pay

When the war was over Miss Barton went to Europe. There she learned of the Red Cross Society, founded in Geneva in 1863. The purpose of the society was to care for the wounded of any nation on the field of battle. A treaty among the nations agreed that the Red Cross

Red Cross Society in Europe

nurses should be safe from capture. Miss Barton was asked to organize a branch in the United States.

American Red Cross

In 1882 President Arthur signed the treaty, and the American Red Cross, with Miss Barton as its first president, was established. She continued as president until 1904, when she resigned.

Goes to Armenia

In 1896 Miss Barton went to Armenia at the head of her Red Cross to relieve the suffering caused by the massacres. She saved thousands from starvation and disease.

Again she nobly responded to the call of President McKinley to go to the help of Cuba in the Spanish-American War.

Miss Barton lived to see the Red Cross a world-wide society carrying comfort and cheer to all nations. To-day in Europe the Red Cross nurses are present after every great battle, on the field or in the hospital, to lighten the awful sufferings of war.

Work of the society in times of peace

192. The Red Cross Society in Times of Peace. It was Miss Barton's firm belief that the world needed the services of the Red Cross in times of peace as well as in times of war. Accordingly an amendment was made to the Geneva treaty. Local Red Cross societies sprang up in every part of the country. The suffering which followed the great Charleston earthquake, the Galveston flood, forest fires, mine explosions, and every similar calamity found the Red Cross Society on hand with aid and supplies.

The San Francisco earthquake, 1906

The greatest calamity that has befallen our country since the Red Cross was well organized was the burning of San Francisco following the great earthquake of 1906. Five hundred millions in property was destroyed, and

two hundred and fifty thousand people were left homeless and without food.

People of San Francisco and the Red Cross work

The Red Cross alone spent three million dollars in giving aid to the people made poor by the fire. Dr. Edward T. Devine, appointed by President Roosevelt to take charge of the Red Cross work in San Francisco, has publicly declared that the success of the work following the fire was due in no small degree to the devotion of the people of San Francisco. Among these were many noble women, not only in the city itself but in the state.

Jane Addams

193. Jane Addams. There was still another great and vital field of service waiting for a leader. This was the uplift of the very poor. Progress cannot fail to come through earnest efforts toward closer relations and better understanding among human beings, through various reforms, through education, or the establishment of institutions for social service. These have made human suffering less and the opportunities for human happiness greater.

The uplift of the poor

JANE ADDAMS
From a recent photograph

Jane Addams in Europe

In 1883, while traveling in Europe, Jane Addams, a daughter of wealthy and distinguished parents, was deeply touched by the terrible poverty and misery she saw everywhere around her. She herself had never known want or hunger. She had more wealth than she knew what to do with. There were many others like her, but there were millions who were always hungry and in want.

Touched by suffering of London's poor

Devotes herself to social service

She determined to devote herself and her fortune to a fairer distribution of the world's goods and pleasures. It was a vast undertaking, but Miss Addams was not dismayed. She hoped that some day the rich and the educated would see that all men are equal and would unite with the less fortunate in one great brotherhood.

Hull House Social Settlement founded

She returned to Chicago, and there with a group of workers established a social settlement in a building in a poor quarter of the city and called it Hull House.

There the poor and the needy were welcomed. They received comfort and help. Through personal influence they were given opportunity to become acquainted with the best books, to cultivate their minds, to meet each other for improvement and social enjoyment.

The settlement a success

Men and women from all parts of the country and from abroad visited Hull House to learn what Miss Addams and her fellow-workers, through personal service, were doing to make better and brighter the lives of the poor. They found Hull House proving a success. The people were united in a great family whose members sought each other's welfare. They regarded Miss Addams as one of themselves. This was a bit of the human brotherhood of which Miss Addams had dreamed.

194. What Has Been Accomplished. The work of these great women of whom we have read has been one of advancement, not alone of their sex but of all mankind not only in the United States but the world over.

Greater opportunities for women

Through their efforts great changes have taken place in woman's condition. Throughout the country she has a fairer place beside man in the eyes of the law, wider advantages for education, greater opportunities as a wage earner, and far more political and social recognition.

There is still a difference of opinion as to what woman's rights really are. But looking back at what has been gained since Elizabeth Cady Stanton and Susan B. Anthony began their work, it seems certain the day is not far distant when every woman will have the rights our great-grandmothers won and should have had, and which the men of some states have already granted their wives and daughters.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Women shared the hardships and dangers of the early colonists. *2.* They did heroic service during the Revolution and in the later progress of the nation; but they had no legal or political rights. *3.* Leaders arose among the women demanding for their sex the same rights and privileges that men had. *4.* As a girl Elizabeth Cady Stanton became indignant at what she found to be the unequal position of women in almost every walk of life; she resolved to devote her life to the struggle for the rights of women. *5.* In 1848 she called the first woman's rights convention, where she made the first public demand for woman suffrage. *6.* She met Susan B. Anthony, a school teacher, and won her to the cause. *7.* Together they organized the National Woman's Suffrage Association. *8.* Their great work succeeded in making woman suffrage an election issue in many states. *9.* By 1915 eleven states had been won to woman suffrage; some voting rights had been won in twenty-two other states.

10. Julia Ward Howe was the daughter of wealthy parents and knew little of work. *11.* She began to write poetry early. *12.* When the Civil War broke out Mrs. Howe wanted to be of service to the Union. *13.* She wrote "The Battle Hymn of the Republic," a song that proved a great aid to victory since it cheered the soldiers in the field. *14.* After the war Mrs. Howe established women's clubs in all parts of the country for self-improvement among the women, and for social service.

15. Harriet Beecher Stowe as a girl was apt at writing. *16.* She resolved to use her talent to help the slaves. *17.* *Uncle Tom's Cabin* helped the North to win the victory

by uniting the people against slavery. *18.* Frances E. Willard was raised in Wisconsin in frontier days. *19.* In school she stood at the head of her class. *20.* Joined the anti-saloon crusade; became president of the Woman's Christian Temperance Union and later of the National Union. *21.* Declared herself in favor of woman suffrage. *22.* As president of the World's Woman's Christian Temperance Union, Miss Willard united the women of the world in a world union for the protection of the home. *23.* Clara Barton took up the work of nursing after the first battles of the Civil War. *24.* First in the hospitals of Washington, she finally went to the battle fields in order to give the wounded immediate help. *25.* The Red Cross Society was founded in Europe; a branch was established in the United States by Miss Barton. *26.* Following the great earthquake and fire in San Francisco in 1906, the Red Cross did heroic work in aiding the 250,000 people left homeless and without food.

27. Jane Addams while traveling in Europe was touched by the sight of the poverty and misery everywhere. *28.* She determined to devote herself and her fortune to make better and brighter the lives of the poor. *29.* She established the Hull House Social Settlement in Chicago.

Study Questions. *1.* How did women aid in the progress of the nation? *2.* What did they do during the Revolution? during the Civil War? *3.* What was their position in law and in affairs of government? *4.* Who was the first to champion woman suffrage? *5.* Describe Elizabeth Cady in her girlhood. What was her opinion of boys and girls? *6.* To what did she determine to devote her life? *7.* What was the purpose of the woman's rights convention? *8.* What demand was first publicly made at this convention? *9.* What was Miss Anthony's occupation before she met Mrs. Stanton? *10.* Describe the work of these two women for the cause of woman's rights. *11.* In 1915 how many states had granted women the right to vote? *12.* Why did Julia Ward Howe know so little of work? *13.* What did she like to do? *14.* What sights did she see in Washington in 1861? *15.* What did she do to serve her country? *16.* How could a song count much for victory? *17.* What was the purpose of women's clubs? *18.* How did Harriet Beecher Stowe serve her country? *19.* What book did she write? What was its effect?

20. Describe Frances Willard's girlhood, her home, and surroundings. *21.* Why did Miss Willard take up temperance work? *22.* Did Miss Willard work hard for temperance, woman's rights, and protection of the home? What makes you think so? *23.* How did Miss Willard become of international influence? *24.* Where did Clara Barton begin her work of nursing the wounded? *25.* Where did she go then, and why? *26.* Where was the Red Cross Society founded? *27.* What was its purpose? *28.* What great service does it perform in time of peace? *29.* What was the result of the San Francisco earthquake? *30.* How did the Red Cross relieve the distress? *31.* How did the sight of poverty and suffering affect Jane Addams? *32.* What did she determine to do? *33.* What did she establish in Chicago? *34.* What did the Social Settlement accomplish? *35.* Was it a success?

Suggested Readings. Wade, *The Light Bringers*, 64–111, 142–171; Adams, *Heroines of Modern Progress*.

RESOURCES AND INDUSTRIES OF OUR COUNTRY

HOW FARM AND FACTORY HELPED BUILD THE NATION

195. Cotton Fields and Cotton Factories. Since the days of Eli Whitney cotton has been grown in all the southern states from Virginia westward to Texas, and from the Gulf of Mexico north to Missouri. More than one half of all the cotton in the world is grown in southern United States. High-grade cotton is also grown in California, Arizona, and New Mexico, and California is now one of our leading cotton-producing states.

The great cotton crop of the southern states

A field of growing cotton is very picturesque. Its culture employs many laborers. The number of laborers needed, however, is not the same throughout the year. In the fall, when the bolls ripen, all hands, large and small, pick cotton. This work takes several months. Then the picked cotton is put through a gin which is still built along

the lines of Whitney's invention. The cleaned cotton is pressed into large bales and is then ready for market.

The cotton seed goes to one mill, the cotton to another. For many years the seed was wasted. Farmers burned it or threw it away. But now in all parts of the South great mills crush the seed and make from it a valuable oil. What is left is cotton-seed cake, and is bought eagerly by cattle growers everywhere.

Cotton-seed oil

Only a few years ago almost all the cotton grown in the South was shipped away, either to Europe or to New England. In Massachusetts and Rhode Island cotton mills employ more people than any other industry, and great cities are supported almost entirely by manufacturing cotton goods. Now the South has also discovered that it can spin and weave its cotton at home. About many of its waterfalls is heard the hum of busy cotton mills. New cities are growing up, and prosperity has returned to the South.

Cotton mills in the South

PICKING COTTON
From a photograph

196. The Grain that Feeds the Nation. From the days of the early colonists, wheat has been one of the most valuable crops produced in this country. In the states east of the Mississippi River the farmers have long raised it in connection with a variety of other crops. But as the newer lands west of this river were taken up, the settlers

Wheat belt west of the Mississippi

discovered that in that region wheat yielded more abundantly than any other crop.

From Kansas northward to Minnesota and western Canada lies a broad stretch of land which has cool spring weather and a light rainfall. This is the climate best suited to wheat, and here has developed the great wheat belt of America.

In this region there are vast wheat fields almost everywhere, stretching farther than the eye can see over the level surface. Most of the farms are very large, some of them including many thousands of acres. The work on these places is done with the most modern machines. Traction engines are used to pull the great plows, the largest of which turn fifty furrows at a time. In harvest time an army of reaping and binding machines harvests the golden grain. The harvesting machine and the thresher have also been combined. On some of the greatest farms a hugh complex machine makes its way through the standing grain, leaving behind it rows of bags, filled with threshed grain ready for the market.

Traction engines

With the aid of such machinery a few people can cultivate a great many acres. As a result, the country is thinly settled. The towns are few and far between. In most of them the principal building is the grain elevator, which holds the grain until it is ready to be shipped.

Grain elevators

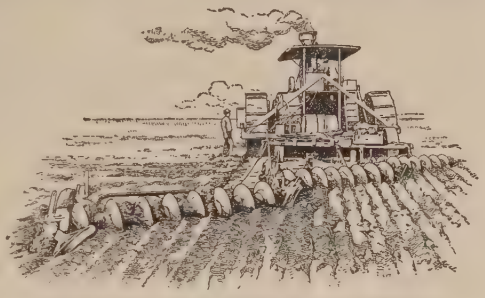
From the elevators the wheat goes to the flour mills. The largest of these are in Minneapolis, in the eastern part of the wheat belt. The flour in its turn goes to feed the many millions of people in all parts of the country.

Flour mills

For many years this country grew much more wheat than we needed, and we shipped great quantities to Europe. But each year our growing population needs

more food, and our exports of this grain decrease steadily. Even now our farms grow but little more of this grain than is needed at home, and the time is almost at hand when we shall no longer send any of it abroad.

Grain exports decrease



THE STEAM PLOW AT WORK ON A PRAIRIE FARM
From a photograph

197. Cattle Raising and Meat Packing. Cattle raising, like wheat farming, is principally an industry of the West. As late as 1850 the states which raised the most cattle lay along the Atlantic coast. But to-day Texas and Iowa are in the lead, and Kansas and Nebraska follow closely.

Texas and Iowa lead

As the eastern states became peopled more densely, cattle grazing was forced west. The cattle pastures were broken up into fields. The prairies of Illinois and Iowa became a vast cornfield. Eastern Kansas and Nebraska were turned into corn and wheat farms. Always the cattle had to give way to the grain. At last the farmers came to a strip of country where the rainfall was not enough to make grain growing profitable. This comparatively narrow strip stretches north in an irregular area of plains from western Texas to Montana. This region grows fine grass and has become the great grazing country of the United States. Here vast herds of cattle still roam on large ranches and are cared for by cowboys.

Cattle ranches of the West

East of the ranch country lies the corn belt, in which Illinois and Iowa are the leading states. Cattle fatten

Corn-fed cattle

better on corn than on any other food, and the meat of corn-fed stock brings the best prices.

The corn states have therefore taken up the raising and fattening of cattle on a tremendous scale. When western cattle leave the ranch they are generally not very heavy. Thousands of carloads are shipped into the corn country each year, there to be fattened before going to the packing houses.

The Department of Agriculture, at Washington, is now taking great pains to induce the boys, especially of the South, to make experiments in corn raising. Some wonderful results have been produced, and the

COWBOYS DRIVING CATTLE FROM THE PRAIRIE PASTURAGE
From a photograph

South is in a fair way to take to the raising of corn.

The largest meat-packing plants are located in the corn

belt at Chicago, Kansas City, Omaha, and other cities. To-day meat packing is the greatest business of Chicago and many other large cities. A generation ago it had scarcely begun. But the packers learned to can meat, to use ice for cold storage, and, most important of all, the refrigerator car was invented.

Invention of refrigerator cars

By this last discovery it became possible to ship meat almost everywhere. Where before the packers had to sell their goods at home, now they have the world as a market. A steer raised on the western prairies may now be fattened for market in Illinois, slaughtered in Chicago, and served in New York, or sent to England or even to the Orient.

MINES, MINING, AND MANUFACTURES

198. Coal and Iron. Next to the great farm crops, coal and iron are the most valuable products of our country. The coal that is mined in one year is worth five times as much as the gold and silver combined. Our iron mines yield as much wealth in one year as the gold mines do in three. Gold and silver are luxuries without which we could get along, but our great factories, railroads, and steamship lines could not exist without an abundance of iron and coal.

Great value of coal and iron

A hundred years ago there was almost no coal mined in this country. Now we use more of it than any other land, and almost a million men make a living by mining it.

At first most of the coal produced was the hard anthracite of eastern Pennsylvania. But this hard coal is found only in one small section of Pennsylvania, whereas great beds of soft coal stretch from Pennsylvania west to Washington. At present there is far more soft coal

Hard coal in Pennsylvania

used than anthracite. Pennsylvania is the leading state in the production of both hard and soft coal, but West Virginia, Illinois, and Ohio are also great coal states. Generally, where there are productive coal mines, factories have been built, because most of them need a great deal of coal for fuel.

Factories need coal

Iron was first worked by the colonists in the bogs of New England. Iron mining, however, did not become

IRON AND STEEL WORKS IN A SOUTHERN CITY
From a photograph

a great industry until the latter part of the last century. In that period the great iron "ranges" of Lake Superior were opened up. These are the largest deposits of iron ore in the world.

Largest iron-ore deposits in the world

Most of the ore lies in Minnesota. Here, far up in the northern woods, thousands of men are blasting or digging out the red and rusty ore. Huge steam shovels load a car in a few minutes, and in a short while a trainload of ore is on its way to Duluth or Superior. From there

Carried to the smelters

it is carried by steamer east, most likely to one of the Ohio towns on Lake Erie. Here much of the ore is again loaded into cars and hauled to the Pittsburgh region, there to be smelted.

Pittsburgh has become the greatest iron and steel center of America. Enormous quantities of coal are mined here and used for smelting the iron ore that is shipped in. More people of western Pennsylvania and eastern Ohio make a living by mining coal and making steel and iron than anywhere else in America. Great blast furnaces melt the iron ore. Steel works turn out huge quantities of rail and sheet steel. Foundries make cast-iron products of all kinds. Vast shops are busily engaged in producing locomotives and machines of endless variety. Everywhere in this region are smoking chimneys and busy industrial plants, all supported by coal and iron. The southern states, Alabama, the Carolinas, Georgia, and Tennessee, also contain rich stores of coal and iron. These resources were little used during slavery days. Now, however, the southern states are digging coal for use in their great factories and cotton mills, or sending it abroad. Birmingham, Alabama, is one of the great coal and iron centers of the United States.

Coal and iron support great industries

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* The toilers in forest, mine, and factory contributed to the development of our land. *2.* Cotton is grown in all the southern states and from the Atlantic to the Pacific. *3.* A valuable oil is made from the cotton seed. *4.* The climate west of the Mississippi best suited to the raising of wheat. *5.* The work of cultivating and harvesting is done by machines. *6.* Wheat is sent to the flour mills, the largest of which are in Minneapolis. *7.* Exports of wheat decreasing. *8.* Texas and Iowa the leading cattle-raising states. *9.* Cattle

from the ranches are fed on corn in the corn states, principally Iowa and Illinois. *10.* The refrigerator car permitted the shipment of meat to all the world. *11.* Coal and iron mined in America worth many times more than the gold and silver. *12.* Hard coal mined in Pennsylvania. *13.* The Lake Superior iron ranges the greatest in the world. *14.* Pittsburgh is the greatest iron and steel center of America.

Study Questions. *1.* Describe the process of preparing cotton for the market. *2.* What is done with the cotton seed? *3.* What is the South preparing to do with the cotton crop? *4.* Where is the wheat belt of America? *5.* How is the wheat cultivated and harvested? *6.* Describe the progress of the wheat from the field to its use as food. *7.* What are the leading cattle-raising states? *8.* Where and how are the herds fattened? *9.* What was the effect of the invention of the refrigerator car? *10.* How does the value of coal and iron mined in America compare with the gold and silver? *11.* Where is anthracite or hard coal mined? *12.* Where was iron first mined? *13.* Where is the largest deposit in the world? *14.* Where is the great iron and steel center of America? *15.* Tell of some of the things for which iron is used.

Suggested Readings. INDUSTRIES: Fairbanks: *The Western United States*, 215–290; Brooks, *The Story of Cotton;* Shillig, *The Four Wonders* (*Cotton, Wool, Linen, and Silk*); Brooks, *The Story of Corn.*

DOMINION
Seattle
Olympia
WASHINGTON
Portland
Columbia River
Salem
OREGON
Boise
IDAHO
Helena
Butte
MONTANA
Missouri River
Yellowstone River
NORTH DAKO
Bismarck
YELLOWSTONE NATIONAL PARK
SOUTH DAKO
Pierre
BLACK HILLS
Sioux
WYOMING
NEBRASK
Cheyenne
Great Salt Lake
GREAT SALT LAKE DESERT
Salt Lake City
UTAH
Reno
Carson City
Sacramento
San Francisco
NEVADA
SIERRA NEVADA
CALIFORNIA
Denver
COLORADO
K
KAN
Santa Fe
Albuquerque
NEW MEXICO
Colorado River
ARIZONA
Phœnix
Tucson
T E X
PACIFIC OCEAN
LOWER CALIFORNIA
GULF OF CALIFORNIA
SIERRA MADRE
MEXICO
Rio Grande
San A
TROPIC OF CANCER
UNITED STATES
SCALE
0 50 100 200 300 400
306 Statute Miles to one inch
Capitals of Countries ★
Capitals of States ⊙
Largest City •
Latitude North
Longitude West from Greenwich
120°
110°
100°

Copyright, 1900, by Rand, McNally & Company.

A PRONOUNCING INDEX

Webster's New International Dictionary has been used as authority for spelling and pronunciation, except in the case of a few foreign names, where the Century Cyclopedia of Names has been used.

Adirondack (ăd'ĭ-rŏn'dăk)
Alamo (ā'lā-mō)
Algonquin (ăl-gŏŋ'kĭn)
Allegheny (ăl'ē-gā'nĭ)
Altamaha (ôl'tȧ-mȧ-hô')
Andes (ăn'dēz)
Annapolis (ă-năp'ō-lĭs)
Antietam (ăn-tē'tăm)
Appalachian (ăp'ȧ-lăch'ĭ-ăn)
Appomattox (ăp'ō-măt'ŭks)
Arizona (ăr'ĭ-zō'nȧ)
Arkansas (är'kăn-sô')
Armenia (är-mē'nĭ-ȧ)

Bahama (bȧ-hä'mȧ)
Barcelona (bär'sē-lō'nȧ *or* băr'thă-lō'nā)
Birmingham (bûr'mĭng-ăm)
Bon Homme Richard (bŏ' nŏm' rē'-shär')
Boone (bōōn)
Boulton (bōl'tŭn)
Breckinridge (brĕk'ĭn-rĭj)
Bristol (brĭs'tŏl)
Buchanan (bŭ-kăn'ăn *or* bû-kăn'ăn)
Buena Vista (bwā'nā vēs'tā)
Burgoyne (bûr-goin')

Cabot, Sebastian (sē-băs'chăn kăb'ŭt)
Cadiz (kā'dĭz *or* kā'thēth)
Cahokia (kȧ-hō'kĭ-ȧ)
Cairo (kā'rō)
Calhoun (kăl-hōōn')
Canandaigua (kăn'ăn-dā'gwȧ)
Canaries (kȧ-nā'rĭz)
Cañon (kăn'yŭn)
Cape Breton (brĕt'ŭn)
Cartier, Jacques (zhăk kär'tyā')
Catawba (kȧ-tô'bȧ)
Cavite (kä-vē'tā)
Cervera (thĕr-vā'rā)
Champlain (shăm-plān')
Chattanooga (chăt'ȧ-nōō'gȧ)
Cherokee (chĕr'ō-kē')
Chesapeake (chĕs'ȧ-pēk)
Chickahominy (chĭk'ȧ-hŏm'ĭ-nĭ)
Chickamauga (chĭk'ȧ-mô'gȧ)
Cincinnati (sĭn'sĭ-năt'ĭ)
Colorado (kŏl'ō-rä'dō)
Concord (kŏŋ'kērd)
Connecticut (kŏ-nĕt'ĭ-kŭt)
Constantinople (kŏn-stăn'tĭ-nō'p'l)
Cornwallis (kôrn-wŏl'ĭs)
Coronado (kō'rō-nä'thō)
Cortés (kôr-tās')
Crèvecœur (krĕv'kûr')

Dewey (dū'ĭ)
Diego (dē-ā'gō)
Dinwiddie (dĭn-wĭd'ĭ *or* dĭn'wĭd-ĭ)
Duluth (dōō-lōōth')
Duquesne (dōō-kān')

Edison (ĕd'ĭ-sŭn)
El Caney (ĕl kä'nā)
Ericson (ĕr'ĭk-sŭn)
Eutaw Springs (ū'tô-)

Faneuil (fŭn"l)
Fannin (făn'ĭn)
Farragut (făr'ȧ-gŭt)
Frontenac (frŏn'tē-năk *or* frôn'tē-näk')

Gadsden (găd'dĕn)
Gama, da (dä gä'mä)
Geneva (jē-nē'vȧ)
Genoa (jĕn'ō-ȧ)
Genoese (jĕn'ō-ēz' *or* -ēs')
Gettysburg (gĕt'ĭz-bûrg)
Ghent (gĕnt)
Gibault (zhē'bō')
Goethals (gû'tălz')
Goliad (gō'lĭ-ăd')
Gooch (gōōch)

Guam (gwäm)
Guilford (gĭl′fẽrd)

Haiti (hā′tĭ)
Hawaiian Islands (hä-wī′yăn)
Hennepin (hĕn′ĕ-pĭn)
Herkimer (hûr′kĭ-mẽr)
Hong-kong (hŏng′-kŏng′)
Houston (hūs′tŭn)
Huguenot (hū′gẽ-nŏt)

Iceland (īs′lănd)
Indianapolis (ĭn′dĭ-ăn-ăp′ŏ-lĭs)
Iroquois (ĭr′ŏ-kwoi′)
Isthmus (ĭs′mŭs)

Jamaica (jȧ-mā′kȧ)
Joliet (zhŏ′lyā′ *or* jō′lĭ-ĕt)

Kanawha (kȧ-nô′wȧ)
Kaskaskia (kăs-kăs′kĭ-ȧ)
Kiefi (kēft)

Labrador (lăb′rȧ-dôr′)
Lachine (lȧ-shēn′)
Lafayette, de (dē lā′fā-yĕt′)
La Salle, de (dē lȧ sȧl′)
Leiden (lī′dĕn)
Lisbon (lĭz′bŭn)
Los Angeles (lōs ăŋ′gĕl-ĕs)
Louisburg (lōō′ĭs-bûrg)
Luzerne (lŭ-zûrn′)

McClellan (mȧ-klĕl′ăn)
McCrea (mȧ-krā′)
Macdonough (măk-dŏn′ō)
McGregor (măk-grĕg′ẽr)
Mackinac (măk′ĭ-nô)
McKinley (mȧ-kĭn′lĭ)
Magellan (mȧ-jĕl′ăn)
Manila (mȧ-nĭl′ȧ)
Manitou (măn′ĭ-tōō)
Marianas (*Ladrones*) (mä′rē-ä′näs, lȧ-drōnz′)
arquette (mär′kĕt′)
Massachusetts (măs′ȧ-chōō′sĕts)
Massasoit (măs′ȧ-soit′)
Matagorda (măt′ȧ-gôr′dȧ)
Maumee (mô-mē′)
Mediterranean (mĕd′ĭ-tẽr-ā′nē-ăn)
Memphis (mĕm′fĭs)
Merrimac (mẽr′ĭ-măk)
Milan (mĭl′ăn)
Minneapolis (mĭn′ē-ăp′ŏ-lĭs)
Minuit (mĭn′ū-ĭt)
Missouri (mĭ-sōō′rĭ)
Mobile (mō-bēl′)
Monmouth (mŏn′mŭth)
Monongahela (mŏ-nŏŋ′gȧ-hē′lȧ)
Montcalm (mŏnt-kām′)
Monterey (mŏn′tē-rā′)
Montezuma (mŏn′tē-zōō′mȧ)
Monticello (mŏn′tē-sĕl′ō)
Montpelier (mŏnt-pē′lĭ-ẽr)
Moultrie (mōl′trĭ *or* mōō′trĭ)
Munich (mū′nĭk)

Nassau (năs′ô)
Natchez (năch′ĕz)
Newfoundland (nū′fŭnd-lănd′)
New Orleans (nū ôr′lē-ănz)
Nez Percé (nā pẽr-sā′)
Niagara (nī-ăg′ȧ-rȧ)
Nolichucky (nŏl′ĭ-chŭk′ĭ)

Oberlin (ō′bẽr-lĭn)
Oglethorpe (ō′g′l-thôrp)
Oneida (ō-nī′dȧ)
Oregon (ŏr′ē-gŏn)
Orinoco (ō′rĭ-nō′kō)
Oriskany (ŏ-rĭs′kȧ-nĭ)

Palos (pä′lōs)
Panama (păn′ȧ-mä′)
Patagonia (păt′ȧ-gō′nĭ-ȧ)
Penobscot (pē-nŏb′skŏt)
Pensacola (pĕn′sȧ-kō′lȧ)
Peru (pē-rōō′)
Philadelphia (fĭl′ȧ-dĕl′fĭ-ȧ)
Philippine Islands (fĭl′ĭ-pĭn- *or* -pēn-)
Pinzón (pēn-thōn′)
Pizarro (pĭ-zär′rō *or* pē-thär′rō)
Platte (plăt)
Pocahontas (pō′kȧ-hŏn′tȧs)
Porto Rico (pōr′tō rē′kō)
Portugal (pōr′tū-găl)
Portuguese (pōr′tū-gēz)
Potomac (pō-tō′măk)
Poughkeepsie (pō-kĭp′sĭ)
Powhatan (pou′hȧ-tăn′)

Raleigh (rô′lĭ)
Rapidan (răp′ĭ-dăn′)

Rappahannock (răp′*a*-hăn′*ŭ*k)
Raritan (răr′ĭ-tăn)
Richelieu (rē′shē-lōō′)
Rio Grande (rē′ō grän′dā)
Roanoke (rō′*a*-nōk′)
Rochambeau, de (dē rō′shäN′bō′)
Rochelle (rō-shĕl′)
Roosevelt (rō′zē-vĕlt)
Rosecrans (rō′zē-krănz)

Sacramento (săk′rȧ-mĕn′tō)
St. Louis (sānt lōō′ĭs *or* -lōō′ĭ)
Samoset (săm′ō-sĕt *or* sȧ-mŏs′-ĕt)
San Diego (săn dē-ā′gō)
San Francisco (săn frăn-sĭs′kō)
Sangamon (săŋ′gȧ-mŏn)
San Jacinto (săn jȧ-sĭn′tō)
San Joaquin (săn wā-kēn′)
San Juan (săn hwän′)
San Salvador (sān săl′vȧ-dōr′)
Santa Ana (sän′tȧ ä′nȧ)
Santa Maria (sän′tȧ mȧ-rē′*a*)
Santiago (sän′tē-ä′gō)
Savannah (sȧ-văn′*a*)
Schenectady (skĕ-nĕk′tȧ-dĭ)
Schley (slī)
Schuyler (skī′lēr)
Schuylkill (skōōl′kĭl)
Seattle (sē-ăt′′l)
Seminole (sĕm′ĭ-nōl)
Serapis (sē-rā′pĭs)
Sevier (sē-vēr′)
Shafter (shȧf′tēr)
Shawnee (shô′nē′)
Shenandoah (shĕn′ăn-dō′*a*)
Sierra Nevada (sĭ-ĕr′*a* nē-vä′dȧ)
Sioux (sōō)
Sloat (slōt)
Solway Firth (sŏl′wā-)
Spokane (spō′kăn′)
Spottsylvania (spŏt′sĭl-vā′nĭ-*a*)
Steuben, von (fŏn stū′bĕn)
Stuyvesant (stī′vĕ-sănt)

Tallapoosa (tăl′*a*-pōō′sȧ)
Tecumseh (tē-kŭm′sē)
Terre Haute (tĕr′ē hōt′)
Thames (thāmz)
Thorvald (tôr′vȧld)
Ticonderoga (tī-kŏn′dēr-ō′gȧ)
Tippecanoe (tĭp′ē-kȧ-nōō′)

Ulysses (ū-lĭs′ēz)

Valparaiso (văl′pȧ-rī′sō)
Vancouver (văn-kōō′vēr)
Van Rensselaer (văn rĕn′sē-lēr)
Venezuela (vĕn′ē-zwē′lȧ)
Venice (vĕn′ĭs)
Vespucci, Amerigo (ä′mȧ-rē′gō vĕs-pōōt′chē)
Vincennes (vĭn-sĕnz′)

Walla Walla (wŏl′*a* wŏl′*a*)
Watauga (wȧ-tô′gȧ)
Weehawken (wē-hô′kĕn)
Windsor (wĭn′zēr)

Zuñi (zōō′nyē)

THE INDEX

ABOLITIONISTS, 310–312, 320.
Adams, John, 131; sent to First Continental Congress, 172; at Second Continental Congress made Washington general of American troops, 131, 177; appointed to help draw up Declaration of Independence, 232; died, 238.
Adams, Samuel, 167–178; portrait of, 167; early turns to politics, 167; leads movement against Stamp Act, 168; forms "Sons of Liberty Society," 168; opposes Tea Tax, 169; writes Circular Letter, 169; drives British troops out of Boston, 169; and Boston Tea Party, 129, 170, 171; sends Paul Revere to tell the story, 172; goes to First Continental Congress, 172; forms companies of minutemen, 174; goes to Second Continental Congress, 177; works for Declaration of Independence, 177; made governor of Massachusetts, 178; died, 178.
Addams, Jane, 370–372; becomes interested in social service, 370; portrait of, 370; founds Hull House Social Settlement, 371.
"Agamemnon," The, 270.
Agricultural development, 352–354.
Agriculture, 374–377; machinery used for, 376.
Alamo, capture of the, 281–285.
Albany, Fort Orange becomes, 90.
Algonquin Indians, 49–52.
"Alliance," The, 200–201.
Altamaha River, colony on, 291, 350.
American Red Cross Society, 369–370.
American River, 200–201.
Amerigo Vespucci, *see* Vespucci, Amerigo.
Anderson, Colonel, 325.
Annapolis, founded, 70.
Anthony, Susan B., 361–362; portrait of, 361; early life of, 361; works for cause of woman's rights, 361–362; died, 362.
Anthracite coal, 380.
Antietam, battle of, 338.
Anti-saloon crusade, 366.
Appomattox Court House, Lee's surrender at, 336.
"Ark," The, 69.
Armada, *see* Spanish Armada.
Arthur, President, 369.
Ashland, Clay's home, 297, 300.
Atlantic cable, 268–271.
Augusta; settled, 102.

BALL, MARY, mother of Washington, 115, 116.
Baltimore, colony of, 70.
Baltimore, Lord, *see* Calvert, George *and* Cecil.
Baltimore and Ohio Railroad, started, 263.
Barlow, Captain, 44.
Barry, John, 199–201; early life of, 199; portrait of, 199; captain of the *Lexington,* 199; on the Delaware, 199–200; commands the *Alliance,* 200, 201; first commodore of American navy, 201; died, 201.
Barton, Clara, 367–370; early life of, 367–368; portrait of, 368; goes to the battle field, 368–369; and the American Red Cross, 369–370; goes to Armenia, 369; in the Spanish-American War, 369.
"Battle Hymn of the Republic," 363.
Baxter, ———, 265.
Bell, ———, invents telephone, 268.
Benton, Jessie, 287.
Benton, Thomas H., 249, 253, 287.
Birmingham, Ala., great coal and iron center, 381.
Blackbeard the Pirate, 72.
Black Hawk War, 319.
Blockade of southern ports, 326.
"Bon Homme Richard," The, 197, 198.
Boone, Daniel, 202–210; early life of, 202–203; crosses mountains, 203; and the Indians, 204–209; blazes famous "Wilderness Road," 205; builds Fort Boonesboro, 206; goes to Kentucky, 206; at siege of Boonesboro, 208–209; portrait of, 209; moves to Missouri, 210; died, 210.
Boonesboro, Fort, 206, 207, 208, 217.
Booth, John Wilkes, 329.
Boston, settled, 82; British soldiers in, 129, 169, 172.
Boston Port Bill, 129, 172.
"Boston Tea Party," 162–163, 170–172.
Boulton, ———, inventor, 259.
Bowie, Colonel, 281.
Braddock, General, 123–124.
Bradford, William, 73, 76, 79, 81.
Brandywine, battle of the, 137.
Breckenridge, John, 324.
Brewster, William, 73.
Bridgewater, Duke of, 258.
Buchanan, President, 270.
Buckner, General, 333.
Buffalo, herds of, 24.
Bunker Hill, battle of, 132, 176–177.
Burgesses, House of, 127, 159, 162, 167, 230, 231.

Burgoyne, General, 217; compliments Morgan, 186.
Burke, Edmund, 162, 233.

CABOT, JOHN, 34–37; born in Genoa, 34; voyages of, 34–36; statue of, 35; seeks India and discovers Labrador, 35; honored by king and people on return to England, 35, 36; on second voyage, 36; England claims large part of North America through discoveries of, 37.
Cahokia, 220, 223.
Calhoun, John C., 252, 299, 308–313; early life of, 308; portrait of, 309; works hard for success of army in War of 1812, 309; made Secretary of War, 309; twice elected vice-president, 309; favors nullification, 310; opposes Abolitionists, 310–312; annexes Texas, 312; opposes Compromise of 1850, 312; died, 313.
California, conquest of, 290–291; missionaries in, 292–294; sends greatest number of volunteers to Spanish-American War, 346; admitted as a state, 351; an agricultural state, 353.
Calvert, Cecil, 69–70; and the Indians, 69; locates village of St. Marys, 69.
Calvert, George, 69; prepares to found a colony for Catholics and Protestants, 69; colony named after, 70.
Camden, defeat at, 182.
Campbell, Colonel, 213, 214.
Canada, French in, 49–53, 106–114, 121.
Cape Breton Island, 35.
Cape of Good Hope, rounded by Drake, 39.
Carpenter's Hall, 163, 173.
Carroll, Charles, 263.
Carson, Kit, 287, 288, 290.
Cartier, Jacques, takes possession of Montreal for France, 49.
Carver, John, first Pilgrim governor, 73, 75, 78.
Catholics, 68, 69.
Cattle raising, 377–379.
Cavaliers, 69.
Cervera, Admiral, 347.
Champlain, Lake, discovered, 50.
Champlain, Samuel de, 49–53; portrait of, 49; founds Quebec, 49; and Indians, 49–52; discovers Lake Champlain, 50; died, 53.
Chancellorsville, battle of, 338.
Charles I, friend of Lord Baltimore, 69; gave charter to Puritan colony, 81.
Charles II, and William Penn, 94; gives Pennsylvania to Penn, 96.
Charleston, 101–102, 104; surrenders to Cornwallis, 182.
Charleston earthquake, Red Cross Society relieves suffering caused by the, 369.
Charleston Harbor, 325.
Cherokee Indians, 104, 211, 279, 280.
Chickamauga, 335.
Circular Letter, Adams', 168–169, 173.
Cities, development of, in West, 354.
Civil War, 325–329, 337–341; woman's part in the, 358–359, 362; Clara Barton's part in the, 368.
Clark, Captain William, 239–244; and Lewis sent to explore Louisiana Purchase, 239; and Lewis and the Indians, 239–243; portrait of, 240; and Lewis cross Rocky Mountains, 240, 241; and Lewis reach Columbia River, 241; and Lewis reach the Pacific, 242; and Lewis return to St. Louis, 242; rewarded by Congress, 242; appointed governor of Missouri Territory, 243.
Clark, George Rogers, 216–224, 236; in Virginia, 216; portrait of, 217; becomes a leader in Kentucky, 217; at Harrodsburg, 217; receives aid from Patrick Henry to raise army, 218; at old Vincennes, 218–224; at Louisville, 218; surprises Kaskaskia, 218–219; builds the *Willing*, 220; marches on Vincennes, 220–222; retakes Vincennes, 223; unrewarded, 224; result of his work, 224; died, 224.
"Clark's Grant," 224.
Clay, Henry, 296–302; "mill boy of the Slashes," 296; studies law, 297; goes to Lexington, 297; sent to United States Senate, 297; speaker of House of Representatives, 298; urges war in 1812, 298; and the Treaty of Ghent, 298; and the Missouri Compromise, 298; and the Compromise Tariff Law, 299; the "Pacificator," 299; portrait of, 299; retires to Ashland, 300; and the Compromise of 1850, 300, 301; receives ovation from the people, 301; died, 302.
"Clermont," the first successful steamboat, 259–260.
Coal, 379–380.
Cold Harbor, battle of, 336, 339.
Cold storage of meat, 379.
Colorado, Grand Cañon of the, 24.
"Columbia," The, 238.
Columbia River, discovered by Captain Gray, 238; Lewis and Clark embark on, 242; Fremont on, 288.
Columbus, Christopher, 2–16; 18, 31; boyhood of, 2, 3; goes to Lisbon, 4; plans new route to India, 5; unfairly treated by King of Portugal, 5; seeks aid of Spain, 6; begs bread for his son at monastery, 7; portrait of, 8; first voyage of, 9–13; discovers the New World, 11; names the natives Indians, 12; honored on return to Spain, 13, 14, 15; last voyages of, 15, 16; death of, 16; effect in England of discoveries of, 34.
Committees of Correspondence, 232.
Compromise of 1850, 300, 302, 307, 312.
Compromise Tariff Law, 299.
Concord, battle at, 130, 175.
Confederate States of America, formed, 325; capital of, 328; war between Union and, 325–329.
Congress, 130, 134, 138, 141, 154, 155, 163, 232, 233; First Continental, 172–174; Second Continental, 177; disputes in, 235; Clay in, 298–302; Webster in, 304; Calhoun in, 308–309.
Constitution of the United States, 143, 144 156, 157, 166.
Cooper, Peter, 269.

Corn-fed cattle, 378.
Corn Island, 218; Clark dies on, 224.
Cornwallis, Lord, 136, 137, 213; Washington outwits, 139–140; surrenders at Yorktown, 140; gains victories, 182, 183; Green turns tide against, 185; pursues Morgan, 188; at Guilford Court House, 189; caught at Yorktown, 189; orders Tarleton to catch Marion, 191.
Coronado, Francisco, 24; searches for rich cities, 24; discovers Grand Cañon of the Colorado, 24; finds buffalo, 24; returns home, 24.
Cortés, Hernando, 18–22, 23, 28, 37; invades Mexico, 18; sinks his ships, 18; armor of, 19; attacks the Indians, 20; takes Mexican capital, 19, 20; puts Montezuma to death, 21; conquers Mexico, 21; visits Spain, 21; portrait of, 21; shares Columbus' fate, 22.
Cotton, 227, 228; fields and factories, 374–375.
Cotton gin, invention of, 227–228; present-day machine built along lines of Whitney's, 374.
Cotton-seed oil, 375.
Cowpens, battle of the, 186, 188.
"Cradle of Liberty," 169.
Creek Indians, 104, 249.
Crèvecœur, Fort, 111.
"Croatoan," 46.
Crockett, David, 281, 284–285; boyhood of, 284; enlisted under Jackson, 284; elected to Congress, 284; fights for Texas at the Alamo, 284–285; died, 285.
Cuba, discovered by Columbus, 13; Spanish persecution in, 344–345; United States at war with Spain in behalf of, 344–348; made a republic, 348.
Custis, Martha, 126.
Cuzco, where Pizarro found fabulous riches, 23.

DA GAMA, VASCO, rounds Africa, 28.
Dare, Virginia, first white child of English parents born in America, 45.
Daughters of Liberty, 358.
Davis, Jefferson, president of the Confederacy, 328, 336.
Declaration of Independence, Franklin appointed to help write, 155, 156; made, 177, 178; Samuel Adams worked hard for, 177; Jefferson author of, 229, 232.
"Declaration of Sentiments," 360.
Democratic party, split, 324.
Democratic-Republican party, formed by Thomas Jefferson, 235.
De Soto, Hernando, 24–28; makes an expedition to Florida, 24–26; welcomed at Cuba, 24; portrait of, 25; cruel to natives, 25; fights way northward and inland, 25; discovers Mississippi, 26–27; marches far northward and westward, 27; returns to the Mississippi and dies, 27.
Devine, Dr. Edward T., 370.
Dewey, Admiral George, 345, portrait of, 345.
Diego, son of Columbus, 6, 7.
Dinwiddie, Governor, 121.
"Dogwood Papers," 148.
Dorchester Heights, 133.
Douglas, Stephen A., debates with Lincoln, 321–324; nominated by northern Democrats, 324.
"Dove," The, 69.
Drake, Sir Francis, 37–42; ruined by Spaniards, 37; portrait of, 38; returns to England with Spanish gold, 38; on voyage around the world, 38–40; captures Spanish treasure ships in Pacific, 39, 41, 43; given title by Queen Elizabeth, 40; takes command of fleet to fight Spain, 40; destroys Spanish towns in Cuba, 41; burns Spanish ships, 41; and the Spanish Armada, 42; takes Raleigh's colony home, 45.
"Drake," The, 196.
Duquesne, Fort, 122; captured, 126.
Dutch, explorations of the, 54–59; establish trading posts, 56; Indians and the, 56–57; fur traders, 57–58; settle New Netherland, 58–59; governed by Stuyvesant, 88–90; surrender to the English, 90–91; manners and customs of the, 91–92.
Dutch traders, 56–59.
Dutch West India Company, 88.

"EBENEZER," German colony in Georgia, 102.
Edison, Thomas A., 272–277; boyhood of, 272–273; experiments in telegraphy, 273; receives $40,000 for his inventions, 274; portrait of, 274; builds first laboratory in Newark, 275; builds second laboratory at Menlo Park, 275; invents microphone, megaphone, and phonograph, 275–276; develops the electric light, 276; awarded honors by foreign powers, 276; builds greatest of laboratories at Orange, 277.
"Edward," The, 199.
"Effingham," The, 199.
El Caney, capture of, 346, 347.
Electricity, Edison the wizard of, 275–277.
Electric light, developed by Edison, 276.
Eliot, John, preaches to the Indians, 83–84.
Elizabeth, Queen of England, knights Drake, 40; favors Raleigh, 43, 44; names Virginia, 44.
Emancipation Proclamation, 328.
England, explorations made by, 34–47; claims large part of North America, 37; quarrel between Spain and, 37–42; first permanent settlement in America by, 60–61.
English Electrical Exposition, 276.
Ericson, Leif, discovers Vinland, 1.
Ericson, Thorvald, 1–2.
Eric the Red, 1; discovers Greenland, 1.
Erie, Lake, battle of, 244–245.
Erie Canal, 262.
Eutaw Springs, battle of, 189.

FAIRFAX, LORD, 119, 122, 128; friend of Washington, 120; builds Greenway Court, 120; makes Washington public surveyor, 120; returns to England, 142.
Fair Oaks, battle of, 338.
Faneuil Hall, 169.
Fannin, General, 282.

Farming, *see* Agriculture.
Farragut, Captain David, 327.
"Father of Waters," 112.
Federalist party, 235.
Ferdinand and Isabella, 6, 15.
Ferguson, Colonel, 213; defeated at Kings Mountain, 213–214.
Field, Cyrus W., 268–272; early success of, 269; becomes interested in telegraph lines, 269; conceives idea of connecting Europe and America, 269; aided by Peter Cooper and other wealthy men, 269; success of invention of, 270; portrait of, 270; receives honors from many nations, 271.
Fillmore, President, 308.
Fitch, John, 257.
Five Nations, *see* Iroquois.
Fletcher, Grace, 304.
Florida, De Leon takes possession of, 17; De Soto's expedition to, 24–26.
Flour mills, 376.
Foote, Commodore, 333.
Forbes, General, 126.
Forts, *see under* names of forts.
France, aids Americans, 139; discoverers and explorers of, 49–53; missionaries of, 53, 106–114.
Franciscan friars, 292–294.
Franklin, Benjamin, 124, 147–157; early life of, 147–151; portrait of, 148; in London, 150; editor of *Pennsylvania Gazette* in Philadelphia, 151; founds three great institutions, 151; invents stove, 151; forms first fire department in America, 151; author of *Poor Richard's Almanac,* 151–152; clerk of Pennsylvania Assembly, 152; postmaster-general, 152; plans union of colonies, 153; becomes famed as scientist, 153; experiments with electricity, 153; sent to England to defend colonies, 154; appointed to help write Declaration of Independence, 155, 232; secures French aid for America, 155; helps make treaty of peace, 155; helps to make and signs Constitution, 156, 157; died, 157.
Fraunce's Tavern, 140.
Frederica, 103.
Fredericksburg, battle of, 338.
Fremont, John C., 285–292; early life of, 286; goes to South America, 286; becomes a civil engineer, 286; loves the wild life, 286; portrait of, 287; marries Jessie Benton, 287; receives permission to explore South Pass, 287; unfurls Stars and Stripes from summit of Fremonts Peak, 287; seeks a more southerly route to Oregon and California, 287; reaches Great Salt Lake, 288; goes to Fort Vancouver, 288; makes a circuit of the Great Basin and crosses mountains to California, 289; third expedition of, 290; in Mexican War, 290–291; elected to United States Senate, 291; fifth expedition of, 291; first Republican candidate for president, 291; major-general in Civil War, 292; governor of Arizona, 292; died, 292.
Fremonts Peak, 287.
French, in North America, 49–53, 106–113.
French allies, in Revolutionary War, 139.
French and Indian War, 114, 121, 126, 130.
French in Canada, 121.
Friends, *see* Quakers.
"Friendship," The, 194.
Frontenac, Count, sends Joliet and Marquette to find Mississippi, 53; sends La Salle and Hennepin, 106; "children of," 111.
Frontenac, Fort, 106, 107, 111.
Fruit growing, 353.
Fugitive Slave Law, 365.
Fulton, Robert, 257–263; portrait of, 258; starts life as portrait painter, 258; meets James Watt, 258; becomes interested in driving power of steam, 258; makes trial steamboat in France, 258; builds the *Clermont,* 259; wonderful success of invention of, 260, 261; died, 261.
Fur traders, 56–58, 106–107, 243–244.

GADSDEN, CHRISTOPHER, 173.
Gage, General, 130, 131, 183.
Galena, 332.
Galveston flood, Red Cross relieves suffering caused by the, 369.
Gama, Vasco da, *see* Da Gama, Vasco.
Gates, General, 182.
George II, grants charter to Oglethorpe, 101.
George III, 135, 136, 141, 158, 159, 173.
Georgia, founded, 101–103; planters of, 103–104.
Gettysburg, battle of, 335, 338.
Ghent, *see* Treaty of.
Gibault, Father, 220, 221.
Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 43.
Gist, Christopher, 122.
Goethals, George Washington, 355–356; portrait of, 354; early life of, 355; in Spanish-American War, 355; in charge of construction of Panama Canal, 355–356; appointed governor of Canal Zone, 356.
Gold, discovery of, 291, 350–351.
"Golden Hind," The, Drake's ship, 38, 39, 40.
Gold Fleet, Spanish, 41.
Goliad, massacre at, 282.
Gooch, Daniel, 271.
"Good Man Richard," The, 197–198.
Gore, Christopher, 303.
Grain, 375–377; elevators for, 376.
Grant, Ulysses S., 327, 329, 331–337; early life of, 331–332; in Mexican War, 332; promoted in the army, 333; at Forts Henry and Donelson, 333; portrait of, 333; at Vicksburg, 334; at Gettysburg, 335; made commander of the Union armies, 336; in the "Wilderness," 336; Lee surrenders to, 336; elected president, 337; died, 337.
Gray, Captain Robert, the first to carry the Stars and Stripes around the world, 238; discovers the Columbia River, 238.
Gray, ———, invents telephone, 268.
Great Basin, Fremont explores the, 289–290.

Great Salt Lake, 288.
Green Bay, 108.
Greene, Mrs., 227–228.
Greene, Nathanael, 182–185, 188, 189, 190, 191; portrait of, 182; given command of army in South, 182; goes to Boston and meets Washington, 184; made one of Washington's generals, 184; divides army, 184; on great march, 188; at Guilford Court House, 189; drives British into Charleston, 189; honored by his country, 189; praises General Marion, 191.
Greenland, discovered by Northmen, 1.
Greenway Court, 120–121, 125.
Grenville, Sir Richard, 44.
"Griffin," The, 108–109.
Guam, annexed by United States, 349.
Guatemotzin, statue of, 20.
Guilford Court House, battle of, 189.

HALE, NATHAN, 134, 179–182; in college, 179; statue of, 180; joins Washington, 180; captures British man-of-war, 180; passes safely through British lines, 181; captured, 181; died, 181.
"Half Moon," The, 54, 55.
Hamilton, Alexander, 235.
Hamilton, General, 220, 222.
Hancock, John, 177, 233.
Hanks, John, 317, 318, 323.
Harlem Heights, 134.
Harrison, Benjamin, 142, 232.
Harrison, William Henry, 306, 321.
Harrodsburg, 217.
Harvard Elm, 132.
Harvesting machines, 376.
Hawaiian Islands, annexed by United States, 348.
Hawkins, Captain, 37.
Hayne, Senator, 305.
"Hearts Content," 271.
Helm, Captain, 220.
Henderson, Richard, 205.
Hennepin, a missionary, 106, 107, 110, 111.
Henry, Patrick, 129–130, 153, 158–167, 217, 230, 234; portrait of, 158; opposes Stamp Act, 159; birth and parentage of, 160; early failures of, 160; orator of the Revolution, 160–167; succeeds as a lawyer, 161; first great speech of, 161; elected to House of Burgesses, 161–162; speaks against Stamp Act, 162; sent to Continental Congress, 163; offers resolutions for arming Virginia, 164; defends his resolutions in great speech, 164–165; in forefront of struggle with England, 166; statue of, 166; aided George Rogers Clark in raising an army, 217–218; died, 166.
Henry, Prince of Portugal, 3.
Henry VII, 35, 37.
Henry VIII, 37.
Hermitage, The, 254.
Hessians, The, 135, 136.
Hobkirks Hill, 189.
Homestead Law, 351.
Hooker, 335.
Horseshoe Bend, battle of, 249, 279.
Houston, General Sam, 279–283; lives with Cherokees, 279; in battle of Horseshoe Bend, 279; portrait of, 280; studies law, 280; goes to Congress, 280; governor of Tennessee, 280; visits Washington, 281; goes to Texas, 281; in Texas War with Mexico, 281–283; at battle of San Jacinto, 282–283; elected first president of Texas, 283; sent to United States Senate, 283; died, 283.
Howe, General, 133, 134, 137, 181.
Howe, Julia Ward, 362–364; early life of, 363; writes "Battle Hymn of the Republic," 363; and the Woman's Club, 363–364; portrait of, 364.
Howe, Samuel Gridley, 363.
Hudson, Henry, 54–56; discovers Hudson River, 54; portrait of, 55; cruel to Indians, 55; seeks northwest passage, 55–56; sent adrift by sailors, 56.
Hudson Bay Company, 288.
Hudson River, 54–55.
Hull House, 371.

ICELAND, discovered by Northmen, 1.
Illinois Indians, 111.
Illinois River, 109, 110, 111.
Inca, captured by Pizarro, 23.
Independence, Declaration of, *see* Declaration of Independence.
India, search for new route to, 2–16, 34–37; Magellan first to reach, 31.
Indian corn, taken to England, 45; best crop of the Pilgrims, 79.
Indians, first seen by white men, 12; named by Columbus, 12; Cortés and the Mexican, 18–21; great city of the, 18–21; cruelly treated by De Soto, 25; welcomed Raleigh's sailors, 44; Lane cruel to, 45; hostile to English settlers, 45; Champlain and the, 49–53; Marquette loved by the, 53; carried Champlain's remains to Mackinac, 53; friendly to Hudson but repaid with cruelty, 55; and the Dutch, 56–58, 59; and the Jamestown Colony, 61–66; friendly to Lord Baltimore, 69; Pilgrims and, 76, 78–81, 84–85; John Eliot and the, 83–84; Penn's treaty with the, 98; Oglethorpe made treaty with the, 103; La Salle and the, 107, 110–112; French trappers and, 113–114; in French and Indian War, 114, 121–126; war dance of the, 119; Boone and the, 204–209; fought with British in Revolutionary War, 207–209; Sevier and the, 211–215; Clark and the, 216, 217; friendly to Lewis and Clark, 239–243; missionaries among the, 243–244; 293; Jackson and the, 247–249; War of the Seminole, 252; Houston and the, 279, 280; placed on reservations by U. S. government, 353; *see also* names of Indians.
Indigo, 104.
Iron, 379–381.
Iroquois Indians, 50, 52, 56, 107, 111, 112, 114.
Irrigation projects, 353.
Isabella, Queen of Spain, 6, 8, 15.
Italians, 102.

JACKSON, ANDREW, 245–254, 284; early life of, 246–247; taken prisoner by the English, 246; lawyer before twenty, 247; emigrates to Tennessee, 247; made U. S. senator, 248; in War of 1812, 248–252; winning name of "Old Hickory," 249; fights Indians, 249; at battle of New Orleans, 250–252; portrait of, 252; twice elected president, 252; and the United States Bank, 252–253; and nullification, 254, 310; died, 254.
Jackson, General "Stonewall," 338.
James I, puts Raleigh to death. 47; gave London Company a charter, 60; makes Calvert, Baron of Baltimore, 69.
Jamestown, settled, 61; life in the colony of, 60–66, 71–72.
Jefferson, Thomas, 229–238; early life of, 229; studies law, 230; meets Patrick Henry, 230; member of House of Burgesses, 231; marries, 231; and Committee of Correspondence, 232; and the Declaration of Independence, 232–233; governor of Virginia, 234; minister to France, 234; first Secretary of State, 235; leader of Democratic-Republican party, 235; elected president, 235; portrait of, 235; purchases Louisiana, 236; sends out Lewis and Clark Expedition, 237; elected president second time, 237; "Sage of Monticello," 238; died, 238.
John II, of Portugal, 5.
Johnson, President, 337.
Johnston, General Joseph E., 338, 340.
Johnston, Sarah Bush, stepmother of President Lincoln, 316.
Joliet, 53, 106, 112; with Marquette sets out to find the Mississippi, 53; sails down the Mississippi, 53; died, 53.
Jones, John Paul, 194–198; early life of, 194; enters American navy, 195; portrait of, 195; shows his mettle in West Indies, 196; sent to France, 196; in Whitehaven, 196; on English coast, 197; captain of *Bon Homme Richard,* 197; and the *Serapis,* 197–198; great naval hero, 198.
Jonesboro, 247.

KANSAS-NEBRASKA BILL, 321–324.
Kaskaskia, Clark at, 218, 219, 223.
Keith, Sir William, 150.
Kentucky, Boone in, 204–210, 216.
Kieft, Governor, 59.
King Philip, Indian chief, 84–85.
Kings Mountain, battle of, 184, 213–214.
Knox, General, 201.
Knoxville, 215, 216.

LABRADOR, discovered by John Cabot, 35.
Lachine, 106.
Lafayette, Marquis de, 137, 139, 140, 189; visits Washington after war, 142–143; rewarded by Congress, 143.
Lake Superior, iron "ranges" of, 380.
Lane, Ralph, 44.
La Salle, Robert Cavelier, Sieur de, 106–113; seeks Canada, 106; builds Fort Frontenac, 106; portrait of, 107; returns to France and gets permission to explore Mississippi Valley, 107; sets out for Mississippi, 107; builds the *Griffin,* 108–109; builds Fort Crèvecœur, 111; plans union of Indian tribes, 111; journeys to mouth of Mississippi, 112; takes possession for France, 112; builds Fort St. Louis on Starved Rock, 112; returns to France and brings over colony, 113; killed by disappointed colonists, 113.
"Lawrence," The, Perry's flagship, 245.
Lee, Henry, "Light Horse Harry," 184.
Lee, Richard Henry, 130, 173, 177, 232.
Lee, Robert E., 327, 328, 329, 335, 336, 337–341; at West Point, 337; wins fame and honor in Mexican War, 337; in charge at West Point, 337; in charge of Confederate army at Richmond, 338; defeats McClellan, 338; retreats from Maryland after battle of Antietam, 338; at Fredericksburg and Chancellorsville, 338; at Gettysburg, 338; holds his own in the "Wilderness," 339; plans to join Johnston, 340; and Sheridan, 340; surrenders to Grant, 341; president of Washington College, 341; died, 341; portrait of, 341.
Lewis, Captain Meriwether, 239–244; portrait of, 239; and Clark sent to explore Louisiana Purchase, 239; and Clark and the Indians, 239–243; and Clark cross Rocky Mountains, 240–241; and Clark reach the Columbia River, 242; and Clark reach the Pacific, 242; and Clark return to St. Louis, 242; rewarded by Congress, 242; made governor of Louisiana Territory, 243.
Lewis and Clark Expedition, 237, 239.
Lexington, battle of, 130, 175.
"Lexington," The, 199.
Lincoln, Abraham, 315–329; born in Kentucky backwoods, 315; early life of, 315–319; in Black Hawk War, 319; goes to Illinois legislature, 320; speaks for General Harrison and Henry Clay, 321; goes to Congress, 321; the champion against Douglas, 321; in the U. S. Senate, 322; debates between Douglas and, 322–324; elected president, 324; calls for troops, 325; portrait of, 327; issues Emancipation Proclamation, 328; assassinated, 329; monuments to, 329.
Lincoln, General, 182.
Lincoln, Nancy Hanks, 316.
Livingston, Robert R., helps draw up Declaration of Independence, 232; helps make Louisiana Purchase, 236; aids Fulton, 258, 259.
Locomotive invented, 263.
Loe, Thomas, 92, 94.
London Company, formed, 60.
"Lone Star Republic," 283.
Longstreet, William, 257.
Lookout Mountain, battle of, 335.
Los Angeles, 354.
Louisiana Purchase, 236–238; Lewis and Clark explore territory obtained by, 237, 239–244.
Louisiana Purchase Exposition, 237.

Louisville, 218.
"Luzerne," The, 201.

McCLELLAN, GENERAL, and Lee, 327, 338; at Antietam, 338.
Mace, Samuel, 46.
McKinley, William, 342–349; early life of, 342–343; in the Civil War, 343; becomes a successful lawyer, 343; portrait of, 343; in Congress, 344; and the Spanish-American War, 344–348; assassinated, 349.
Madison, James, 250, 298.
Magellan, Ferdinand, 28–31; portrait of, 28; first to sail around earth and prove it round, 28–31; first to cross and name Pacific Ocean, 30; visits the Philippines, 30; killed defending his sailors, 31.
Magellan, Strait of, discovered, 30; Drake sails through, 38.
"Maine," The, 345.
Manhattan Island, trading posts established on, 56; purchase of, 58.
Manila, bay, 345; city of, 347.
Manufactures, 379–381.
Marconi, invents wireless telegraphy, 268.
Marianas, 30.
Marion, Francis, 184, 189–192; portrait of, 190; the "Swamp Fox," 190, 191; sets free 150 prisoners, 191; honored by friends, 192.
Marquette, Father, 53, 106, 112.
Maryland, 68–70.
Massachusetts Bay, Colony of, 82, 83.
Massasoit, Indian chief, 78, 79, 80, 84.
"Mayflower," The, 73–75, 77, 78, 80, 81.
Meat packing, 354, 377–379.
Megaphone, 275.
Menlo Park, Edison's laboratory at, 275–276.
"Merrimac," The, 326–327.
Mexican Indians, 18–21.
Mexico, invaded and conquered by Cortés, 18–22; mines of, 22; war between Texas and, 281–285; war between United States and, 300, 312; Fremont in war with, 290–291; Grant in war with, 332; Lee in war with, 337.
Microphone, 275.
"Mill boy of the Slashes," 296.
Mims, Fort, massacre at, 249.
Mines and mining, 353, 379–381.
Minuit, Peter, first governor of New Netherland, 58.
Minutemen, 174–175, 182.
Missionaries, 53, 106–114, 243.
Missionary Ridge, battle of, 325.
Missions, in the Southwest, 292–294.
Mississippi River, discovered by De Soto, 26, 27; explored by Joliet and Marquette, 53; La Salle reached mouth of, 112; western boundary of United States, 224, 236.
Mississippi Valley, La Salle explores the, 107, 109–113.
Missouri, state of, 210, 238, 298.
Missouri Compromise, 298, 321.
Missouri River, Falls of the, 240.
Mohave Desert, 290.
"Mohawks," 171.
"Monitor," The, 326–327.
Monmouth, battle of, 138, 139.
Monroe, James, 236, 309.
Monterey, 291.
Montezuma, 20.
Monticello, home of Jefferson, 231, 232, 234, 237, 238.
Moravians, 102.
Morgan, General, 184, 185–189; fights French and Indians, 185; helps capture Burgoyne, 186; complimented by Burgoyne, 186; at battle of Cowpens, 186, 188; portrait of, 186; joins Greene, 188; last days of, 188–189.
Morristown, 137.
Morse, Samuel F. B., 264–268; interested in electricity, 264; plans instrument, 265; meets helper in Alfred Vail, 265; gets government aid, 267; portrait of, 267; receives rewards and honors, 268; died, 268.
Moultrie, Colonel, 182.
Mount Vernon, 116, 119, 121, 123, 128, 129, 141, 142, 143, 145.
Murfreesboro, 335.
Murray, Mrs., entertains Lord Howe, 133.

NAPOLEON, sells Louisiana Territory to the United States, 236.
Nassau, Fort, 56.
Natick, Mass., 84.
National Woman's Suffrage Association, 361.
Necessity, Fort, 123.
Negro slaves, *see* Slavery.
New Amsterdam, 58, 91, 92; becomes New York, 90.
New England, Puritans in, 68, 81–86; Pilgrims in, 73–81; industries, manners, and customs of colonists in, 85–86.
New France, 52; trappers, soldiers, and missionaries of, 113–114.
New Netherland, 88–90; settlement of, 58–59; industries, manners, and customs of, 91–92.
New Orleans, 236; battle of, 250–252.
Newport, Captain, 60, 62.
New York, New Amsterdam becomes, 90; William and Mary give representative assembly to, 90; British in, 133; Washington inaugurated in, 143–144.
Nez Percé Indians, 241, 243.
"Niagara," The, 245.
Niagara River, 108, 109.
"Niña," The, 10, 13.
"Nolichucky Jack," 212–216.
Nolichucky River, 212.
"No-Man's-Land," 203.
Northmen, voyages of, 1–2; in Iceland and Greenland, 1; discover Vinland, 1.
"North River," The, 260.
Nullification, and President Jackson, 254, 310; Webster's great speech on, 305–306; Calhoun favors, 309–310; South Carolina and, 253–254, 310.

OGLETHORPE, JAMES, 100–103, 104; friend of the unfortunate, 100; portrait of, 101; settles Georgia, 102–103; died, 103.

"Old Hickory," 249.
Old North Church, 174.
Old South Church, 169, 171.
Orange, Fort, 56, 57, 90.
Orange growing, 353.
"Oregon," The, 355.
Oregon Country, Lewis and Clark Expedition sent to, 237, 243; sought by fur traders and missionaries, 243–244; United States and Great Britain occupy, 244; northern boundary established in, 244; Benton speaks on the, 287.

"PACIFICATOR," The, 299.
Pacific Northwest, 353.
Pacific Ocean, named by Magellan, 30.
Pakenham, General, 251.
Palos, 7, 9, 13, 15.
Panama-California Exposition, 356.
Panama Canal, 354–356.
Panama-Pacific International Exposition, 356.
Parker, ———, 243.
Parsons' Case, The, 161–162.
Patagonia, 29, 38.
Patroons, The, 58–59, 89.
Paul, John, *see* Jones, John Paul.
"Pelican," The, Drake's ship, 38.
Penn, Admiral, 93, 94, 95, 96.
Penn, William, 92–98; becomes a Quaker, 93; sent to Paris and Ireland, 93–94; portrait of, 94; King Charles and, 94; founds Pennsylvania as home for Quakers, 95–98; invites all persecuted people, 96; founds Philadelphia, 97; treaty with the Indians, 98; died, 98.
Penn's Woods, 96.
Pennsylvania, founded, 95–96; coal, in 379–380.
Pennsylvania, University of, founded, 151.
"Pennsylvania Dutch," 98.
"Pennsylvania Gazette," 151.
Perry, Oliver Hazard, 244–245; midshipman at fourteen, 244; in war against Barbary States, 244; ordered to Lake Erie, 244; battle of Lake Erie, 244–245; portrait of, 245; highly honored, 245.
Peru, Pizarro in, 23.
Petersburg, siege of, 336.
Philadelphia, 137; founded, 97; British at, 138; first Continental Congress at, 172; Second Continental Congress at, 177.
Philip, *see* King Philip.
Philippines, Magellan visits, 30; United States pays Spain for, 347.
Phonograph, The, 276.
Pickett, General George E., 338.
Pierce, President, 269.
Pilgrims, The, 73–81; seek Holland, 73; land in America, 74–77; and the Indians, 76, 78–81, 84–85; settle at Plymouth, 77; build homes in the forest, 77; celebrate Thanksgiving, 80; industries, manners, and customs of, 85–86.
"Pinta," The, 10, 11, 13, 14.
Pinzón, 7; sails with Columbus, 10.
Pitt, Fort, 126, 218.
Pitt, William, 126, 154, 162, 233.
Pittsburgh, iron and steel center of America, 381.
Pittsburg Landing, 273, 334.
Pizarro, Francisco, 23–24; marches army to Cuzco and finds vast wealth, 23; killed by his men, 24.
Planters, industries, manners, and customs of the southern, 103–104.
Plymouth, landing place of the Pilgrims, 77; colony of, 83.
Plymouth Rock, 77.
Pocahontas, 66–68; rescues John Smith, 64; carries corn to settlers, 64; warns settlers of danger, 65; marries John Rolfe, 66; received as a princess in England, 67; portrait of, 68; died, 68.
Ponce de Leon, 17–18; takes possession of Florida, 17; died, 18.
"Pony express," 351.
"Poor Richard's Almanac," 151, 152, 197.
Pope, General, 338.
Portland, 354.
Porto Rico, annexed by United States, 349.
Port Royal, founded, 49.
Potato, white, taken to England, 45.
Powhatan, famous Indian chief, 63, 64, 65, 67.
Prescott, Colonel, 176.
Princeton, 136.
Protestants, 68, 69, 102.
"Puffing Billy," 263.
Puritans, 68, 70, 81–83, 85; in England, 81; seek America, 81; at Salem, 81; found Boston, 82, 83; found colony of Massachusetts, 92.
Put-in-Bay, 244.

QUAKERS, 92–100; called themselves Society of Friends, 99.
Quebec, founded, 49; fall of, 114; expedition against, 126.

RAILROADS, 263–264, 352.
Raleigh, Sir Walter, 42–47; Drake carries back to England colony of, 41; as student, soldier, seaman, 42–43; plants colonies in America, 43–46; portrait of, 44; wins favor with Queen Elizabeth, 44; put to death, 47.
"Raleigh," The, 200.
"Ranger," The, 196, 197.
"Ranges" of Lake Superior, 380.
Red Cross Society, 345, 368–370.
Reed, Deborah, wife of Franklin, 149, 151.
Refrigerator cars, 379.
Republican party, 291, 322.
Resources and industries of the United States, 374–381.
Revere, Paul, 172, 174.
"Revolution," The, 361.
Revolution, War of the, 207, 209, 211, 224, 246, 247; debt of the, 235; woman's part in the, 358.
Rice, in the South, 104.
Richmond, 327, 328, 329.
Roanoke Island, 44, 45.
Rochambeau, General, 139.
Rocky Mountains, 240, 243.
Rolfe, John, 66, 67.

Rolfe, Thomas, 68.
Roosevelt, Theodore, 346, 370.
Rosecrans, General, 335.
"Rough Riders," 346.
Rumsey, James, 257.

SACAJAWEA, statue of, 241.
Sacramento Valley, 289, 290.
"Sage of Monticello," 238.
St. Francis, 292.
St. Gaudens, statue of Lincoln by, 328, 329.
St. John's Church, 163.
St. Joseph River, 109, 110.
St. Lawrence River, French on the, 49, 50, 52.
St. Louis, 210, 242.
St. Louis, Fort, 112.
St. Marys, 69.
Salem, colony at, 81, 82.
Samoset, 78.
Sampson, Rear-Admiral, 347.
San Antonio, 284.
San Diego, mission at, 292–293.
San Francisco, 354; Red Cross relieves suffering caused by earthquake at, 369.
San Jacinto, battle of, 282–283.
San Juan, 346, 347.
San Salvador, discovered by Columbus, 12.
Santa Ana, General, 282, 283, 284.
"Santa Maria," The, 9.
Santiago, 346, 347.
Savannah, founded, 102; captured by British, 182.
Schley, Commodore, 347.
Schuyler, Philip, 132.
Scott, General, 254.
Seminole Indians, war with the, 252.
"Serapis," The, 197, 198.
Serra, Junipero, 292, 293.
Settlement, *see* Social Settlement.
Sevier, John, 210–216, 247; goes to school at Fredericksburg, 210; famous Indian fighter, 210; captain in Washington's regiment, 210; portrait of, 211; at siege of Fort Watauga, 211–212; Kate Sherrill and, 211–212; moves to the Nolichucky, 212; fights battle of Kings Mountain, 213–214; destroys Indian towns, 214; governor of Tennessee, 215; died while working, 215.
Shafter, General, 346.
Shawnee Indians, 216.
Shelby, Colonel, 213.
Sheridan, General, 340.
Sherman, Roger, 232.
Sherrill, Kate, 211–212.
Silver, 351.
Slavery, in Virginia, 71; in the South, 229; Calhoun on question of, 310–312; Lincoln's attitude toward, 318, 320; Harriet Beecher Stowe in behalf of freedom from, 365.
Sloat, Commander, 291.
Smith, John, 61–66, 77; portrait of, 61; as a soldier, 62; and the Indians, 62–65; saved from death by Pocahontas, 64; returns to Jamestown, 64; returns to England, 66; on last visit to America, 66; meets Pocahontas in England, 67.
Snake River, Lewis and Clark on the, 242.
Social Settlement, Jane Addams and the, 371.
"Soldier's Rest," Morgan's home, 188.
"Sons of Liberty," 162, 168.
South Carolina, and nullification, 253–254, 310.
South Pass, 243, 287.
Spain, in America, 11–16, 18–28; Englishmen check progress of, 37–42; missions of, 292–294; war between United States and, 344–348.
Spanish-American War, 344–348; Goethals in the, 355; Clara Barton and the Red Cross in the, 369.
Spanish Armada, The, 42.
Spanish missions, in the Southwest, 292–294; in California, 292–293; treatment of Indians at, 293; present condition of, 294.
"Speedwell," The, 73, 74.
Spottsylvania, battle of, 336, 339.
Squanto, friend of Pilgrims, 78, 79, 80.
Stamp Act, 129, 154, 158–160, 162, 168, 230.
Standish, Miles, 75, 76, 78, 79, 80; portrait of, 78.
Stanton, Elizabeth Cady, 359–360; early life of, 359–360; portrait of, 359; called woman's rights convention, 360; died, 362.
Stanton, Henry B., 360.
Starved Rock, 110, 111.
Steamboat, invented by Fulton, 257–260; used on all rivers, 260–261.
Steel, manufacture of, 381.
Stephenson, George, 263.
Steuben, General, 138.
Stewart, Boone's companion, 204.
Stowe, Calvin E., 365.
Stowe, Harriet Beecher, 364–365; early life of, 364–365; in behalf of freedom for slaves, 365; writes *Uncle Tom's Cabin,* 365; died, 365; portrait of, 365.
Strait of Magellan, *see* Magellan.
Stuyvesant, Peter, 87–91; in West Indies, 87; portrait of, 88; governor of New Amsterdam, 88–90; makes strict laws, 88; disputes with people, 89; surrenders to English, 90–91.
Suffrage, Woman, 360, 361–362.
Sumter, Fort, 325.
Sumter, Thomas, 184.
Superior, iron "ranges" of Lake, 380.
Sutter, Colonel, 290.
Sutter's Fort, 289.

TARIFF LAW, compromise, 299.
Tarleton, Colonel, sent to capture Morgan, 185–187; defeated at battle of the Cowpens, 186–188; stories of, 187–188; sent to capture Marion, 191.
Tea Tax, 129, 162–163, 168–170, 231.
Tecumseh, 249.
Telegraph, invented by Morse, 264–268; Marconi invents wireless, 268; Edison and the, 273–274.
Telephone, invented by Bell and Gray, 268.
Temperance, *see* Woman's Christian Temperance Union.
Tennessee, 215, 247, 248.

Texas, 281–285, 312.
Thanksgiving, first American, 80.
Threshing machines, 376.
Ticonderoga, 132.
Tobacco, chief crop of Virginia planters, 71.
Tonti, comes to America with La Salle, 107; goes to hunt the *Griffin*, 109, 110; at Starved Rock, 111, 113; in command of Fort St. Louis, 112.
Tories, 169, 190.
Trade routes, old, 2; Turks destroy, 3.
Trading posts, 56.
Transportation, development of, 351–352.
"Traveler," Lee's horse, 341.
Travis, Colonel, 281.
Treaty of 1783 (Revolution), 140, 155.
Treaty of Ghent (War of 1812), 298.
Treaty of 1846, 244.
Trenton, 135.
Turkey, 45.
Tyler, President, 396, 312.

"UNCLE TOM'S CABIN," 365.
Union-Pacific Railway, completed, 352.
United States, resources and industries of the, 374–381.
United States Bank, President Jackson and the, 252–253.

VAIL, ALFRED, 265.
Valley Forge, 137, 138.
Van Buren, President, 254.
Vancouver, Fort, 288.
Van Rensselaer, a patroon, 58.
Vernon, Admiral, 116.
Vespucci, Amerigo, 16.
Vicksburg, siege of, 334.
Victoria, Queen, 270.
Vincennes, campaign against, 218–224.
Vinland, visited by Northmen, 1.
Virginia, 60, 130, 163, 166; named by Queen Elizabeth, 44; colony planted in, 46; Charles I gives Baltimore a part of, 69; slavery introduced into, 71; life in the colony of, 71; industries, manners, and customs of, 71–72; old days in, 126–129; the change in, 141.

WABASH, Clark and his men in the "drowned lands" of the, 221–222.
War of 1812, heroes of the, 244–254; Perry in, 244–245; Jackson in, 248–252; Clay's part in, 298; treaty of, 298; Webster's part in, 304; Calhoun's work in, 309.
Warren, General Joseph, 177.
Washington, Augustine, 115.
Washington, George, 114–145, 153, 166, 173, 180, 182, 184, 234; birthday and birthplace of, 115; mother of, 115; a skilled woodsman, 118; meets Lord Fairfax, 119; as a surveyor, 119–120; in the wilderness and at Greenway Court, 119–121; as a soldier against the French, 121–123; builds Fort Necessity, 123; joins Braddock's army, 123; visits Boston, 125; meets Martha Custis, 126; at Fort Duquesne, 126; married, 126–127; elected to House of Burgesses, 127; at Mount Vernon, 128–129; modesty of, 128, 131; sent to Continental Congress, 130; made commander in chief of American armies, 130, 155, 177; takes command of army, 132; appoints Schuyler to take command in New York, 132; outwits Howe, 133; retreats but fights, 134; at Trenton, 135–136; defeats British at Princeton, 137; at battle of Brandywine, 137; at Valley Forge, 137–138; at Yorktown, 139–140; portrait of, 139; bids farewell to army and returns to Mount Vernon, 140–142; elected first president, 143–145, 234; loved by the people, 143; character of administration of, 144; reëlected president and refuses third term, 145, 237; died, 145.
Washington, Lawrence, 116, 117, 121.
Washington, William, 184, 185, 186, 187.
Watauga, Fort, 211, 212.
Watt, James, 258, 259.
Webster, Daniel, 302–308; early life of, 302; best student at Dartmouth, 303; studied law, 303; married, 304; in Congress, 304; opposed nullification, 305, 306; portrait of, 306; Secretary of State, 306, 308; supported the Compromise of 1850, 307; died at Marshfield, 308.
Wesley, John and Charles, 103.
West, Benjamin, 258.
West, The New, 350–354.
West Indies, Columbus discovers and explores, 13, 15; devastated by Drake, 41; Paul Jones' expedition to, 196.
Wheat, 353, 375–376.
Whig party, The, 299, 300, 321, 324.
White, John, 45, 46.
Whitehaven, Paul Jones' exploit at, 196.
White Plains, 134.
Whitman, ——, missionary, 243, 244.
Whitney, Eli, 226–229; in his father's tool shop, 226; goes to Savannah, 227; invited to Mulberry Grove, 227; becomes interested in cotton, 228; invents cotton gin, 228; effect of cotton gin invented by, 375.
"Wilderness," fighting in the, 336, 339.
"Wilderness Road," The, 205–206.
Willard, Frances E., 366–367; early life of, 366; and the Woman's Christian Temperance Union, 367; died, 367; portrait of, 367.
William and Mary, 90.
Williamsburg, 159, 163, 230.
"Willing," The, 220, 223.
Wilson, President, 356.
Winslow, Edward, 73.
Winthrop, John, 81–83, 147.
Wireless telegraphy, 268.
Wolfe, General, 114, 126.
Woman's Christian Temperance Union, 367.
Woman's Club, 363–364.
Woman's rights, 360–362, 364; Elizabeth Cady Stanton and, 360; Susan B. Anthony and, 361–362; Julia Ward Howe and, 364.
Woman's rights convention, 360.

Woman suffrage, 360, 361–362.
Women of our nation, 358–372.
Wood, Colonel Leonard, 346.
World s Columbian Exposition, 16.
World's Woman's Christian Temperance Union, 367.
Wyeth, Nathaniel, 243.

YADKIN RIVER, Greene crosses, 188; Boone on the, 203; Boone returns to home on the, 205.
York, Duke of, 89.
Yorktown, victory at, 139–140, 189.

CALIFORNIA STATE SERIES
APPROVED BY STATE BOARD OF EDUCATION

CALIFORNIA

THE STORY OF OUR STATE

PERCY FRIARS VALENTINE
Instructor in History and Civics
San Francisco State Normal School

Copyright, 1916
By The People of the State of California

THE TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

THE SPANISH EXPLORERS AND PRIESTS WHO INTRODUCED CALIFORNIA TO THE WORLD 3
The Days of the Sea Rovers 3
The March of Portola 6
Junipero Serra and His Great Work 10

THE RUSSIANS IN CALIFORNIA 15
Their Coming and Going 15

THE DAYS OF SPANISH CALIFORNIA 17
How the Spanish Built 17
The Rancho and Its Life 18

HOW THE AMERICANS CAME AND OPENED A HIDDEN TREASURE . . 21
The Strangers 21
California Won for the United States 24
James Marshall Discovers Gold 28
The Days of Gold 31

THE MAKING OF A STATE 36
California Joins the Union 36
Stirring Times 39
The Coming of the Railroad 44
Forging Onward 45

THE THINGS THAT HAVE BEEN DONE 52
The Recent Years 52
Triumphs in Literature and Art 61

TODAY AND TOMORROW 63

CALIFORNIA STATE FLAG

The Bear Flag was used by the American party in revolt against Mexican authority in 1846, and was adopted by an act approved February 3, 1911, as the California State Flag.

CALIFORNIA
THE STORY OF OUR STATE

THE SPANISH EXPLORERS AND PRIESTS WHO INTRODUCED CALIFORNIA TO THE WORLD

THE DAYS OF THE SEA ROVERS

1. Following Columbus. No man ever carried greater news to a people than did Columbus. Westward, across the Sea of Darkness, there was land! Columbus and others thought it was India for a while; but not for long. Brave sailors soon found that a great new continent lay to the west. There was an unknown land where strange natives lived, where gold could be found, and kings and men made rich. There was a land promising adventure, where fame could be won, and where conquests could be made for the princes of Europe. And there, too, was a savage people whom the good missionaries of the church could convert to Christianity. Is it any wonder that daring men got ships and crews and soldiers, and sailed to the great New World?

The lure of the New World

You have learned of some of these men,—of Balboa, who led his followers across the Isthmus of Panama and discovered the blue Pacific; of De Soto, who guided his band of explorers through the wilds of an unknown continent to the shores of the Mississippi; of Magellan, the first man to sail westward across the Pacific; of Cortes, who, with gun and sword, won the land of Mexico for the Spanish king.

Great explorers

2. The California Indians. While these men and many others were exploring and conquering parts of the New World, California remained unknown to the white men. But there were people of the Indian race living here. In the north lived the Modocs and other strong, rugged tribes. They were a powerful, fighting race, very much like the Indians of the East.

The original Californians

Among the islands off our southern coast were other large, strong tribes. But in the larger part of the state lived Indians of a very different kind. They were smaller, more peace-loving, and lazier than the Indians of the north.

They lived a barbaric life

These Indian people knew little about clothing. Indeed, the men and children had very little to protect them from the summer's sun and the winter's rain. The women wore a kind of rough skirt made from braided grass, and over their shoulders sometimes hung a cloak made from the skin of a deer or from rabbits' fur.

The Indians lived together in little villages of wretched huts. These huts were made by sticking willow branches into the ground, in the form of a circle, and fastening them all together at one place at the top. Over these branches a covering of matted grass was placed, and the house was done.

The women did the work

As it has been with all Indian tribes, the women did most of the work. They took the part of carpenters, and built the houses; they did the cooking and took care of the babies; they hunted for berries and acorns, wove baskets from grass, and made their own clothing. This left nothing for the men to do but to hunt for fish and game. The men might have done a little farming, if they had known how; but planting seeds and raising their own grain was something they had never learned.

Such were the Indians who lived in the larger part of California when the great explorers and discoverers were making their voyages. They were a simple and harmless people. For centuries they lived in the valleys and hills without seeing a single white man; and no white man saw them. But all this was to be changed.

Cabrillo discovers California

3. Voyages Along the Coast. In the year 1542, just fifty years after the discovery of America, two clumsy, old fashioned ships sailed along the coast of California. From their mast-heads, above the swelling sails, floated the flag of Spain. Upon

the high deck of the foremost vessel stood a stern, weather-beaten man. He was Juan Cabrillo, the discoverer of California.

The Spaniards had already found what we call the Peninsula of Lower California, and had made some settlements there. It was Cabrillo's part to lead the way to the land that now makes up our great state.

He almost finds the Golden Gate

Driven by a high wind, he plunged northward till he reached San Diego bay. Here he stopped for a while, being the first white man to touch its sands. Again he put to sea, and after many days sighted another harbor. This was our famous Monterey bay. Into it he sailed, but the weather was so stormy that no landing could be made. The brave captain pressed farther northward. After days of hardship, battered by the winds of winter, he came almost within sight of the Golden Gate. And here, never dreaming of the fine harbor so close at hand, he turned back.

SPANISH SHIPS OF CABRILLO'S TIME

For a great many years no other explorer touched our shores. A few merchant ships, sailing from the Philippines, came within sight of the land but did not stop. They continued their voyage to Mexico and on to Spain. But one day in June in the year 1579, a vessel heavy-laden with gold and other treasure landed on the sands of a little inlet, thirty miles north of the Golden Gate. It was the vessel of Sir Francis Drake, a great English seaman.

Drake makes a landing on the coast

Robbing the ships and towns of his Spanish enemies as he came, Drake had crossed the Atlantic, sailed around South America, then north along our western coast. Deciding that

The Indians worship him

his ship was in need of repair, he sought a harbor, and landed at what we now call Drake's bay, in his honor. Here he stayed for a month, worshipped by the natives, who thought he was a god. Every day, in company with his officers, Drake took journeys inland. It seems very strange that in all this time he did not discover the great bay of San Francisco. He finally sailed away, much to the regret of the Indians, after placing a monument there on which words were engraved which said that the land was claimed in the name of the queen of England.

SIR FRANCIS DRAKE

Viscaino lands at many places

After Drake, a few other daring explorers came. The best known of these was Sebastian Viscaino, a Spaniard. Seeking good harbors where the ships from the Philippines might rest, this man visited San Diego bay, Santa Catalina island, Monterey bay, and several other places. This was in 1602, five years before the settlement of Jamestown on the Atlantic coast.

For a hundred and fifty years after Viscaino, no important voyages were made along our coast. No explorers went into the land. California seemed to be forgotten.

THE MARCH OF PORTOLA

Spanish dominion in the New World

4. New Spain. While the English colonies in North America were growing and prospering, Spanish colonies were being made in Central and South America. Cortes, the conqueror of Mexico, and Pizarro, the conqueror of Peru, had begun these settlements. After them, many Spanish towns had grown up and were inhabited by men who had come to the New World to seek their fortunes. Many priests also had come to this new Spanish land to build missions and to convert

the Indians to Christianity. On the mainland of Mexico, and on the peninsula of Lower California, the Spaniards had grown to be quite powerful. There was a royal governor appointed by the Spanish king. Their country was called New Spain.

Because of the discoveries of Cabrillo, Viscaino and others, the Spaniards claimed the land lying north of Mexico—all the land that now makes up the southwestern states of our Union. California was theirs, but they took no steps to explore it. To them it was but a great, unknown wilderness, inhabited only by Indians and wild animals.

An expedition is planned

At last, however, the governor of New Spain decided to send men northward to see what the country of California was like. They were given orders to make an exploration and to build forts.

Explorers set out by sea and land

5. Portola's Expedition. Part of the little army of explorers set sail from La Paz, in Lower California, and headed for the bay of San Diego by the sea route. The others started overland in two parties, under the leadership of Gaspar de Portola, a Spanish captain. With Portola went a famous Catholic priest, Father Junipero Serra. The year of the expedition was 1769, just six years before the Revolutionary war, which began in 1775.

Portola's band of adventurers

Portola's party would have been an interesting one to see. At its head rode the captain in his armor, and close behind him came the other officers of the expedition. After these were mounted Spanish soldiers, wearing breast plates made from the hides of steers, and carrying lances, guns and leather shields. Next came the foot soldiers; and with them were the priests who bravely made the journey afoot, unwilling to ride when others had to walk. Following these were Mexican Indians, leading mules on which were laden the food and other provisions. At the rear, in a great cloud of dust, a herd of cattle struggled along, driven by Indians.

They struggle through a barren land

Many were the trials and hardships of Portola and his companions. For fifty-one days they toiled over burning sands and through rocky passes. Many of the men were taken sick and had to be carried in litters. But day after day, in spite of weariness and discouragement, they pushed on. Where all men were brave, none was braver than the *padre,* Junipero Serra. Suffering great pain from a wounded leg, he marched each day with the strongest men. His companions urged him to take a horse, or be carried like the other sick men, but he would not heed them. The great purpose of his life was to build missions and teach Christianity to the natives of the new land.

JUNIPERO SERRA
The Father of the Missions

San Diego bay is reached

At last the weary journey came to an end. One day the foremost riders reached a hilltop, and there before them were the blue waters and the white sands of San Diego bay. And better still, on the beach were the tents of those of their party who had come in ships. The object of the expedition had been won. It was the first step in the building of our state.

Junipero Serra founds the Mission San Diego

6. Mission San Diego. Now came the time for which Father Serra had hoped and prayed. The first mission was to be built, and this Christian man could begin his great work among the heathen. With care, he and his followers unpacked the bells which they had brought for this one purpose. These were hung from a tree, and while a converted Indian solemnly rang the chimes, Father Serra stood forth holding a cross. As the sound of the bells floated out upon the still air, the rest of

the party broke forth in a pious hymn. Then a sermon was preached. In this simple way was founded the Mission San Diego, the first of the many missions now so famous in California.

7. San Francisco Bay Discovered. Governor Portola took possession of San Diego bay in the name of the King of Spain. Then, with a band of picked followers, he turned again northward. This time his object was to find the bay of Monterey, and build a fort there. The hardships of this second **journey** were as great as those of the first. The land was unknown and full of unfriendly Indians. Steep mountains and swift rivers were to be crossed. The supply of food ran low. Many of the men were taken sick and had to be carried in hammocks swung between mules. Amid such trials, the brave party marched on in search of Monterey bay.

The first journey through California

The strange part of the story is that the men found the bay for which they were looking but did not know it when they saw it. It did not seem to be the bay which Viscaino who had been there one hundred and fifty years before had written about. There was nothing to do but to press on. Winter had begun to set in, and the rains fell. Nearly all the men were now sick. In this sad condition the party reached a spot near Montara. This place is on the ocean shore just south of San Francisco. Here the weary men camped and rested.

Monterey bay found but not recognized

There was a soldier in the party named Ortega. This man, with a few companions, went out to explore, while the others stayed in camp. For three days Ortega and his friends tramped over the hills that lie south of the Golden Gate. Mounting a hilltop, they saw spread out before them the placid waters of a great and unknown bay. It was the harbor of San Francisco, peacefully awaiting the day when the commerce of the world should ride upon its waters.

Portola's party discovers San Francisco bay

When they reached Portola, in camp, Ortega reported what he had seen. But Portola decided that the men were too weak

The first ship enters the Golden Gate

to go forward. They must return without loss of time. And so the party turned back, carrying to their comrades at San Diego the news of the fine new harbor. Six years later a Spanish ship, the *San Carlos,* entered and explored the port of San Francisco. That was in the year 1775, the year of the battle of Bunker Hill.

JUNIPERO SERRA AND HIS GREAT WORK

8. A Noble Life's Work. In the history of California there is no greater name than that of Father Junipero Serra. This noble man truly believed that God had appointed him to teach Christianity to the Indians of our land. In this work, he suffered pains and endured hardships that would have meant death to many men. But there was none like Father Serra. Though weak and crippled through most of the years of his life, he had a strength that others had not. His strength was in his sure belief that God would let him live to do his work because it was a good work. This firm belief, this deep faith, made him unconquerable. And that is why he succeeded where others would have failed.

The strength and faith of Junipero Serra

MISSION SAN CARLOS AT CARMEL

Junipero founds the Mission San Jose

Seeing the Mission San Diego well begun, Father Serra turned his eyes northward. It was his purpose that the second mission should be founded at the bay of Monterey. An expedition was soon organized, and in due time set sail. With it went Father Serra and other priests. They landed on the shore of Monterey, and amid the ringing of chimes and the chanting of hymns, and with the wondering natives looking on, the second

mission was founded. San Carlos, it was called, but is now known as Carmel mission.

With the priests had come Spanish soldiers. These men built a fort, and took possession of the land in the name of the king of Spain. In time a settlement grew up there, and, together with the fort, it became known as the presidio of Monterey. It was the first capital of California.

Monterey is built

San Carlos became the home mission of Father Serra. There he had his altar, and there he lived from time to time. But his great work was not yet done. Under his direction, seven other missions were built. Serra was the father president of them all, and from his home at San Carlos, he traveled afoot from one to the other. From San Diego to San Francisco the Indians came to know him and to love him. In their sickness and trouble he visited them. At their festivals he shared their pleasures. He taught them to raise their own food and to clothe their bodies. He taught them his religion. When he died thousands of sorrowing natives followed his body to the grave.

Junipero converts and befriends the Indians

The work begun by Father Serra was continued by faithful priests after his death. Besides the nine missions founded by him, twelve others were built, the last at Solano, in 1823. We need not name all of them here. Several still stand, but in a sad condition of ruin. Among the more interesting of these are the following: the Mission San Juan Capistrano; those at Santa Barbara, San Gabriel, San Luis Obispo, Carmel, and San Diego; the Mission Dolores at San Francisco; and the Missions San Juan Bautista, San Miguel, San Luis Rey and Santa Inez.

Many missions are built

9. Life at the Missions. While the American colonies were fighting for independence, and during the first few years of our Republic, the peaceful mission life was going on. Between the new American nation on the east and the Spanish

Cut off from the rest of the world

land of California on the west stretched a vast, unknown continent. California was almost cut off from the rest of the world. Once in a while a trading ship entered the harbor of San Diego or Monterey or San Francisco. At times Spanish priests, merchants, or soldiers could be seen traveling along the highway that led from mission to mission, almost the length of the state. This highway was called the Camino Real, which means Royal Road. It has recently been marked by iron posts, with a bell at the top of each, and the name "El Camino Real," so that loyal Californians shall remember it.

SCENE AT MISSION DOLORES BEFORE THE PADRES WENT AWAY

The Indians settle about the missions

The priests had brought with them seeds of the olive and of fruits, twigs of the grapevine, and grains. These were planted, and before long each mission was a garden spot. The Indians soon learned the ways of the whites. Thousands of them built their dwellings near the missions. They became like children and looked upon the priests as their fathers.

They are taught useful trades

Each mission was the center of a busy and peaceful life. Guided and taught by the priests, the Indians learned to plow the fields and gather the crops. Trades were taught, and on working days could be seen weavers, harness and saddle makers, basket makers, carpenters, workers with adobe bricks, blacksmiths, herdsmen, servants, all busy at their tasks. Each day at vespers the chimes were rung and prayers were said. On holy days and Sundays a hush fell over the scene, and the Indians, silent and worshipful, went in to services.

10. The End of the Missions. In 1821 the people of Mexico rebelled against Spain, and won their independence. After that, California was a part of the Mexican nation. It was not long before the Mexican government sent forth an order which said that all the priests must give up their missions and their lands. And so the priests sadly gathered the holy things from the churches and went away. The sorrowing natives followed them along the roads, pleading with them to return.

The priests sent away

MISSION SAN LUIS REY

In this way ended the mission days in California. But the good work done by the priests lived after them, and shall never be forgotten. The sad state of the missions after the padres left is thus described by one of our writers:*

"Some of the mission buildings, many of the flocks, and much of the land fell into the hands of men who had no possible right to them. Orchards and vineyards were cut down, cattle killed and stolen, and there was only ruin where a short time before there had been thousands of busy people leading comfortable lives. Soon the churches were neglected and began to crumble away, bats flew in and out of the broken arches, squirrels

The missions fall into decay

*Bandini: *History of California,* Chap. IV.

chattered fearlessly in the padre's dining room, and the only human visitor was some sad-hearted Indian worshiper, slipping timidly into the desolate building to kneel alone before the altar."

Why Indians were helpless

Valuable as was the training which the *padres* gave the Indians, it was not as permanent as it might have been, because it did not effectively teach the Indians to take care of themselves. That is why helplessness and poverty came to them after the *padres* went away.

The Spanish settlers

Before the missions were closed, many Spanish people had come to live in California. They built houses and towns. In many parts of the state were great cattle ranches owned by Spanish gentlemen. After the closing of the missions these people remained. They made California a valuable part of the Mexican republic. Before telling about them, however, a word must be said about the Russians in California.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* While the explorations of the New World were going on, Indians were living in California. *2.* Fifty years after the discovery of America, Cabrillo visited San Diego and Monterey bays. *3.* The Englishman, Drake, following Cabrillo, visited the coast. *4.* In 1602 Viscaino came. *5.* The governor of New Spain decided to send explorers into California. *6.* Portola and Junipero Serra reached San Diego and founded a mission. *7.* Portola led a party northward and discovered San Francisco bay. *8.* Junipero Serra built many missions for the purpose of converting the Indians. *9.* The Indians at the missions were taught the ways of civilization. *10.* Mexico revolted from Spain and put an end to the mission life.

Study Questions. *1.* What objects led explorers and travelers to the New World? *2.* Describe the life of the early California Indians. *3.* Tell about the voyage of Cabrillo. *4.* Why is Sir Francis Drake remembered in California history? *5.* Why do we remember Viscaino? *6.* What land

was called New Spain, and how did the Spaniards secure it? *7.* Why was Portola sent into California? *8.* Describe Portola's expedition. *9.* Tell about the founding of the Mission San Diego. *10.* Tell the story of the discovery of San Francisco bay. *11.* What was Junipero Serra's purpose in founding the missions of California? *12.* What was strong and good about Serra's character? *13.* Describe the life at the missions. *14.* What brought an end to the mission life?

Suggested Readings. COLUMBUS TO CORTÉS: Hunt, *California the Golden,* 1–23.

CALIFORNIA INDIANS: Winterburn, *The Spanish in the Southwest,* 9–42; Bandini, *History of California,* 19–47; Hunt, *California the Golden,* 41–52; Markham, *California the Wonderful,* 47–66.

CABRILLO: Bandini, *History of California,* 48–77; Winterburn, *The Spanish in the Southwest,* 83–86; Hood, *Tales of Discovery on the Pacific Slope,* 93–97.

DRAKE: Bandini, *History of California,* 57–66; Hunt, *California the Golden,* 32–34; McMurray, *Pioneers of the Rocky Mountains and the West,* 201–224.

VISCAINO: Bandini, *History of California,* 67–73; Hunt, *California the Golden,* 35–39; Hood, *Tales of Discovery on the Pacific Slope,* 75–81.

PORTOLA: Hood, *Tales of Discovery on the Pacific Slope,* 101–108; Eldredge, *The March of Portola,* 15–46.

JUNIPERO SERRA AND THE MISSIONS: Winterburn, *The Spanish in the Southwest,* 97–170; H. H. Jackson, *California and the Missions,* 3–101; Bandini, *History of California,* 74–105; Hunt, *California the Golden,* 71–102; Sexton, *Stories of California,* 8–19; Snedden, *Docas;* Markham, *California the Wonderful,* 67–86.

THE RUSSIANS IN CALIFORNIA

THEIR COMING AND GOING

11. Settlements Made. During the one hundred years between 1700 and 1800, bold Russian trappers and fur hunters were crossing from Siberia to Alaska. Several trading posts

and settlements were made by them in Alaska, and that country became a Russian land.

The Russians come southward and build settlements

In the early days of the California missions, the Russians began to come southward from Alaska. They wished to set up other trading posts in parts of the country where furs could be had. With this idea in mind, a party of them sailed down the coast of California to Bodega bay, ten miles north of the Russian river. Here they purchased some land from the Indians, for which it is said they paid "three blankets, three pairs of breeches, three hoes, two axes, and some trinkets."

OLD RUSSIAN CHAPEL AT FORT ROSS

Thirty-five miles farther north, they built another settlement at what is now Fort Ross. This place became the headquarters of the governor of the Russian settlements in California. About sixty wooden buildings were put up, among them a rough fort and a Russian church. The inhabitants of both settlements raised a few cattle, but their business was mostly hunting for furs and trading with the Indians.

Captain Sutter buys them out

12. The Russians Leave. The Spanish were very jealous of the Russians in California. It was feared that the Russian government might get the ownership of a large part of the state. But before long the Russians decided to leave. Probably they did not find the fur business so profitable as they had expected. In 1839 they sold their cattle and horses, one of their little ships, their cannon and muskets to Captain John A. Sutter. That was the end of the Russian settlement in California. The old Russian church at Fort Ross still stands to remind us of them.

THE DAYS OF SPANISH CALIFORNIA

HOW THE SPANISH BUILT

13. The Presidios. During the early days of the missions, the Spanish government sent soldiers into California. The purpose of these soldiers was to guard the settlers against the Indians and to protect the land in case other nations should try to get it. Four forts were built in different parts of the state to serve as headquarters for the soldiers. About these forts small towns grew up, and were called *presidios*. By presidio was meant a fortified town. The four settlements begun in this way by the Spanish were Monterey, San Francisco, San Diego and Santa Barbara. Of these towns, Monterey was the most important. For over fifty years it was the leading settlement. During most of that time, the Spanish governor lived there. It was the capital of California until 1845, when Los Angeles was made the capital.

Fortified towns are built

14. The Pueblos. When any nation gets new land, it tries to persuade settlers to go there. Settlers make land valuable, because they build towns and roads, and grow crops and raise cattle. The priests and explorers who first came into California sent word to Spain that here was a land of wonderful soil and climate. It only needed settlers, they said, to make it one of the greatest colonies under the Spanish flag.

Settlers are needed

In order to get the people to come here, Spain began the building of settlement towns, called *pueblos*. To build a pueblo, a fine site was chosen. Then a plaza was laid out, near the center. About this, in the form of a square, were built a church, a council house, a home for the chief officer, and other public buildings. To all settlers who wished to come land was given free, and they were loaned enough cattle and farming tools so that they could support themselves. In this way San Jose, Los Angeles, and Santa Cruz were begun.

Newcomers encouraged

The comfortable adobe homes

15. The Houses. The old Spanish houses in California were built of the same material that the *padres* had used in building the missions. They were made of *adobe*. By that we mean that they were built of mud bricks baked in the sun. The inside and outside of each house was plastered with a coating of mud, and painted with white lime. They were one or two stories in height, and covered on the roof with red tiles. Many of them were large and handsome mansions. They made very comfortable homes, protecting the family from the heat of summer and the cold of winter. The larger houses all had long, tile-roofed porches, where the children played, and where the family gathered in the warm evenings. Here, on the summer nights, could be heard the music of mandolin and guitar, and often the clicking of feet in the Spanish dances.

THE RANCHO AND ITS LIFE

Cattle raising is carried on

16. What a Rancho Was. While the missions and presidios were being built, great cattle ranches were growing up about them. A cattle ranch was called a *rancho,* and the ranchers were known as *rancheros.* From Sonoma to San Diego the rancheros had built their fine adobe houses, and turned loose their vast herds of cattle and sheep on the hills and fields. Their business was the selling of hides and tallow, and to get these, ships came from other parts of the world.

17. A Visit to a Rancho. Let us imagine that we are riding up to one of these ranchos to pay a visit. There is the ranchero with his sons, prancing toward us on their high-spirited horses. And such men to see, with their velvet trousers and jackets of green or gold or black, all decorated with lace and gems; with their high, broad-brimmed felt hats ornamented with gold and silver; and with their saddles and bridles studded with the same precious metals. Dashing up to meet us, in a cloud of dust, are the cow-boys—the *vaqueros*

Handsomely dressed horsemen

as they were called. There are Indian servants going about their many chores. Some of them come up and take our horses.

Señoras and señoritas

We are met with a hearty welcome. The owner and his sons take us to the house. They lead us to the shaded porch, and here we meet the *señora,* the owner's wife. She introduces us to the *señoritas,* her daughters, dark-eyed, laughing girls dressed in broad skirts of rich material, loose white waists, and bright colored sashes. About them, on the floor of the porch, the smaller children are playing.

Their fine hospitality

Our Spanish friends show us every attention, for these people are among the most hospitable in the world. We are led to the guest-room, where Indian servants help us to get rid of the dust of our journey. We are taken in to dinner with the family, where we dine on *frijoles, chili con carne,* and other Spanish dishes. And if we are lucky, a *fandango,* or dance, is held in the evening.

The love of the dance

18. The Fandango. Among these Spanish-Americans, a fandango was a happy event. Early in the evening, from nearby ranchos, the guests begin to arrive. In laughing parties, riding horse-back, they come,—handsomely dressed ladies, dashing Spanish gentlemen with rattling spurs. After the joyous greetings, musicians appear, and strike up a tune on their mandolins and guitars. And then the fandango begins. Up and down, in dance after dance, the laughing partners swing. They never seem to grow weary. Not till the wee hours of the morning does the party break up; and then it is to talk of the next fandango.

Adventures with the cattle

19. The Rodeo. Perhaps, during our visit to the rancho, a *rodeo* is held. This is the greatest sight of all. Once a year the owners of the neighboring ranchos get all their vaqueros together and ride out after the cattle. For miles and miles, over hills and fields, the cow-boys sweep along, driving in the cows and steers. Then the exciting work of branding the cattle begins. Each one must be marked with the owner's

sign so that it can be told apart from the cattle of the other ranchos. You may be sure the wild bulls and cows do not like this kind of treatment. Many of them put up a fight, and must be lassoed and thrown upon their haunches. Sometimes a savage steer breaks from the herd and runs. Then off after the runaway goes a vaquero. He catches up with the steer, grasps its tail, gives a twist and a pull, and the unhappy animal

A RODEO AT SAN GABRIEL

goes head over heels. Many are the daring feats of horsemanship; great is the excitement.

Such were the people who lived on the ranchos of California for many years after the Revolutionary war. During that time, as we learned, Mexico and California broke away from Spain, and California became a part of the Mexican republic. But except for the closing of the missions that made little difference in the life of the state. It was the coming of the Americans to California that brought the great change.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Russians entered California seeking furs. *2.* They made settlements at Bodega bay and Fort Ross. *3.* The Russians left California. *4.* The Spaniards in California built fortified towns, called presidios. *5.* Monterey was the capital. *6.* To encourage settlement, pueblos were built, and land was given free. *7.* The Spaniards built comfortable adobe houses. *8.* There were many cattle ranches, called ranchos. *9.* The people of the ranchos were hospitable and pleasure loving. *10.* Each year a rodeo, or cattle-branding, was held.

Study Questions. *1.* Why were the Spaniards jealous of the Russians in California? *2.* What still remains to remind us of the Russians? *3.* What was the purpose of a presidio? *3.* Tell how Spain encouraged settlers to come. *4.* Which towns began as presidios, and which ones as pueblos? *5.* Describe a Spanish-California house. *6.* What was a rancho? *7.* Describe an imaginery visit to a rancho. *8.* Describe a fandango. *9.* Describe a rodeo.

Suggested Readings. RUSSIANS IN CALIFORNIA: Hunt, *California the Golden,* 113–119; Bandini, *History of California,* 130–133.

LIFE IN SPANISH CALIFORNIA: Hunt, *California the Golden,* 103–112; Bandini, *History of California,* 106–127; Winterburn, *The Spanish in the Southwest,* 171–190; Sexton, *Stories of California,* 20–29; Markham, *California the Wonderful,* 87–96.

HOW THE AMERICANS CAME AND OPENED A HIDDEN TREASURE

THE STRANGERS

20. Captain John A. Sutter. The rich land of California, with its lovely climate, its rolling valleys, and its inviting water courses, could not remain unknown to the rest of the world. News of its greatness went abroad, and among the first to heed its call was Captain John A. Sutter. This interesting man was a citizen of Switzerland who had served as an officer in the French army.

The news of California

Captain Sutter builds a fort

It was Sutter's purpose to build a colony, and Governor Alvarado gladly let him have a great tract of land. This land was located where the city of Sacramento now stands and stretched for miles around. Here Sutter built an adobe fort, and set up the cannon which he had bought from the Russians at Fort Ross. Within a few years he had over a thousand acres of grain growing, and was in possession of great herds of cattle. His rancho was probably the richest and most prosperous in the state.

Caravans of Americans arrive

21. The Goal of the Emigrant Trains. Captain Sutter's fame is due mostly to his great friendship for the American government and its people. In his day the first of our countrymen began to arrive in California. To these newcomers, Sutter held out a welcoming and a helping hand. In the beginning a few weary travelers, with their pack animals, struggled over the Sierras from the East. Later, caravan after caravan of them, men, women and children, made its appearance. In long trains of canvas-covered wagons drawn by oxen or horses, they came. Across the wide plains, where the thundering buffalo herds were, and the Indians roamed; through the dangerous and unknown passes of the Rockies; past the Great Salt Lake, where the scorching desert was; and across the towering Sierras, their journey led them. To all of them, Sutter's name was known; and for most of them, Sutter's fort was the goal for which they were striving.

SUTTER'S FORT IN 1846

22. Tragedy of the Donner Party. In the year 1846 a party of emigrants from Illinois toiled westward toward Cali-

fornia. In a long line of "prairie schooners," as their canvas-covered wagons were called, they struggled through the sands and rocky passes of Utah. They had decided to take what they thought was a short-cut past the Great Salt Lake. But in taking this they made a sad mistake, for it was so difficult that they were delayed a great many days. Food began to give out, and the emigrants knew that it would not last to the journey's end. In despair, they sent two of their party ahead on horseback to secure aid at Sutter's fort.

The Donner party crosses the plains

For weeks and weeks, almost starving, the party plodded on. In the fall of the year, when hope was nearly gone, they drew toward the summit of the Sierra Nevada mountains; and there they met one of the men who had gone forward to bring them help. He brought with him seven mules laden with provisions. How glad a sight it must have been to the men and women and children of the weary party. But how soon their gladness was to change to despair! For one day the mountains took on a gloomy look, black clouds rolled up, and a chill wind blew. It was the beginning of winter. Gently, at first, but falling faster and faster, the snow came. For days and days it fell. It piled up on the mountain sides and blocked the valleys. To go forward was impossible.

Winter overtakes them in the Sierras

They made their winter's camp on the shore of a little lake. We now call it Donner lake, in honor of the unfortunate party. It lies near the town of Truckee, not far from where the Central Pacific railroad crosses the summit. In dark little cabins made from logs, eighty-three human beings began the long winter. The storm raged and the snow-banks piled higher and higher. To go beyond the cabins meant death from the wild beasts; or if not, it meant the slower death of freezing in the storm. Inside, starvation was doing its sure and deadly work. The suffering and horror of that winter are too terrible to be told. In the latter part of February help reached the

They starve in a prison of snow

party from Sutter's fort. Of the eighty-three people who were snowed in, only forty-two survived.

Sturdy Americans arrive

23. The Americans Move In. Fortunately, no other party had so terrible a time as the Donner party. But all who crossed the plains had many hardships. The story of these American pioneers is one of the most interesting in the history of our nation. They were brave and sturdy men and women, and no land has ever had a finer people for its founders. *Gringos,* the Mexicans called them. It was these hardy Americans, these *Gringos,* who laid the foundation of American power in California.

California begins to be American

In the days when the first American pioneers were coming to California, the state still belonged to Mexico. The Mexican flag waved over the custom house at Monterey and over the presidio forts. The Spanish language was the common language of most of the people. But more and more the English tongue was heard in the towns and through the country. American customs and American ways of dress became more and more common. Men began to see that California was becoming American, even if the Mexican flag did float over the land.

CALIFORNIA WON FOR THE UNITED STATES.

Captain Fremont arrives

24. The Fremont Expedition. Now there came to be much talk of war between the United States and Mexico. There was a quarrel between our government and Mexico about the boundary line of Texas. While the war talk was going on, President Polk sent Captain John C. Fremont with a party of sixty men, to California. His duty was to find out the best routes of travel into the state, and to discover other things which President Polk wanted to know.

Fremont made the journey overland into California, and rode directly to Monterey. Here he asked Jose Castro, the Mexican general, for permission to survey the country near the Colorado

river. Castro gladly granted so peaceful a request. But before long he began to wish he had not done so. Fremont did not go toward the Colorado river at all. General Castro said to himself: "That American is trying to find out secrets. He wants to help his government win California." So Castro sent soldiers after Fremont, with orders that he should get out of the state.

He is ordered to leave

Instead of leaving the state, Fremont turned northward. As he approached the Oregon boundary, Lieutenant Gillespie overtook him with a message from President Polk. We are not sure just what the news was which the messenger brought, but it made Fremont turn back into California. As he and his sixty men rode southward, a great many Americans came forth to join them. These Americans felt sure that there must really be war now between Mexico and the United States. They knew that Fremont would be a leader in that war; they knew he would try to win California from Mexico, and they wanted to fight by his side.

Armed Americans join him

SONOMA IN 1846

25. The Bear Flag Rebellion. Now there occurred what is famous as the "Bear Flag Rebellion." Near the little town of Sonoma, Fremont's followers found a party of Mexicans with one hundred and fifty horses belonging to the Mexican general, Castro. The Americans captured these horses. That was the first warlike act in the conquest of California.

They capture some horses

On June 14, 1846, a crowd of Americans surrounded the house of General Vallejo. This man was the Mexican officer

General Vallejo is made prisoner

in charge of that part of the state. The Americans were indeed a rough-looking lot. Mounted on horseback, wearing soiled leather jackets and leggings, and carrying pistols and guns, they were enough to frighten even the brave General Vallejo himself. There was nothing for this Mexican officer to do but to surrender. This he did, and was taken by Fremont to Sutter's fort. Here he was treated very kindly by Captain Sutter, but was held a prisoner.

The Americans who had captured General Vallejo held possession of Sonoma. Still they were not sure that there was war between Mexico and the United States. The truth was that war had been declared between the two countries a month before. If the Americans had known that war was going on, they would have raised the stars and stripes. Not knowing it, they decided to have a flag of their own. Taking an old white cloth, they roughly drew on it, in ink, a bear and a star. On the lower edge they sewed a strip of red, and painted on it the words, "California Republic."

They make a flag and start a republic

The men raised their new banner on the flagstaff of Sonoma. Then they wrote out a sort of declaration of independence, and some rules of government. But the brave little republic was to last only a short time. In a few weeks news came that war between our country and Mexico had begun. When they heard this news, the Americans gladly pulled down their California flag, and in its place patriotically unfurled the flag of our nation.

The banner of the bear has not been forgotten. It is today our state flag. On Admission Day you will see it floating beside our national colors, and often you will see it carried in processions.

26. The American Conquest Completed. It was in 1846 that our government declared war on Mexico. In July of that year, Commodore John D. Sloat sailed into the harbor of Monterey and raised the stars and stripes over the custom house.

From the flagship in the bay boomed out a salute of twenty-one guns. In the town a proclamation was read, saying that California was now American soil.

The Americans take possession

A few days later Commodore Stockton arrived and took charge. He made Captain Fremont the commanding officer of the land forces. From town to town the Americans marched. In each place they raised the American flag, and took possession in the name of the United States. There was no army ready to fight them. The people did not seem to care. In this way the land from Monterey to San Diego was taken.

Some fighting occurs

Not long afterward, General Stephen Kearny led a small army of Americans into California from the southwest. General Andres Pico with some Mexican forces met him at a rancho called San Pasqual. This rancho was located near the present town of Ramona, a short distance northeast of San Diego. Here a battle was fought and several Americans were killed. The Americans were in smaller numbers than their enemies, and were driven back. Timely help from Commodore Stockton at San Diego was all that saved the day.

Revolt in Los Angeles

It was on August 13, 1846, that Commodore Stockton with a small force of Americans, entered the town of Los Angeles, raised the American flag, and declared that section of the country a part of the United States. The Commodore then left Los Angeles in charge of Lieutenant Gillespie, and departed for the north. It was not long after that the native Californians in that part of the state became angry at the Americans who had come in and taken their country, and they rose in revolt. They drove Lieutenant Gillespie and the Americans out of Los Angeles.

More fighting

News of the revolt was sent to Stockton, and he hastened south in a cruiser. With a force of about 600 bluejackets and soldiers, he marched forth to meet the Californians, who had banded together under General Flores. The two little armies

met at a place called Paso de Bartolo, on the San Gabriel river near Los Angeles. Two men were killed and several wounded on each side. The Californians were forced to retreat, but they made a second stand on a plain near Los Angeles. Here took place a skirmish known as the fight of the Mesa. After a little bloodshed the Californians again retreated, and most of them scattered to their homes. Shortly after this the leaders

A treaty

SUTTER'S MILL WHERE GOLD WAS DISCOVERED

of the Californians met with Captain Fremont at the Rancho de Cahuenga, near San Fernando. Here a treaty was signed, in which the Californians were pardoned for revolting, and in return promised never to take up arms again against the United States. The American conquest of California was now over.

JAMES MARSHALL DISCOVERS GOLD

27. A Sawmill Is Built. James Marshall worked for Captain Sutter. One day Sutter went up to him and said something like this: "Marshall, I want you to take some men and go up along the American river. Try to find a good place to build

a sawmill and put up a waterwheel. If we are to make any improvements here we must have lumber, and in order to get lumber we must have a sawmill to cut it."

James Marshall ascends the American river

So Marshall and his men started on the journey that was to make himself and California famous all over the world. For several days they traveled through the wilds along the river. After hard searching, they found a good place to set up the mill. It was located at a spot called *Culloomah* by the Indians, a name which the Americans shortened to Coloma. The place was forty-five miles east of Sutter's fort.

With the help of Indians, the men cut rough logs and built the mill. They dug a ditch, or "race," to carry the water to the wheel; and they made and put up the wheel itself. And now all was ready.

A great discovery

28. Eureka! Gold! Marshall turned the water into the ditch, and each morning he walked along the bank to see that there were no leaks or breaks. One morning he saw something glittering in the ditch. He stooped and picked it up and saw that it was a yellow metal. He put it on a stone and pounded it with a rock. It was soft and did not break. It was gold!

Had Marshall been a Greek, he might well have cried, "Eureka!" which would have been his way of exclaiming, "I have found it!" He had indeed found the secret treasure which was to make California the richest land in the world.

A wild search for wealth is begun

29. The Great Gold Rush. It was in January, 1848, that the discovery was made. The news spread like wildfire. Within a few weeks, men were stumbling through the brush along the rivers, laden with picks and shovels and hoes and pans, all in a wild search for wealth. Men left their families and their daily work, and rushed off to the mines. Doctors, soldiers, workingmen, sailors, lawyers, all caught the "gold fever" and joined the mad rush.

The news reached the East; it traveled to South America, to Australia, to England, to France, to Germany. From all

parts of the world the fortune hunters began to arrive. Ship after ship brought them into San Francisco bay. Officers and crews left their vessels and went off to the mines. New crews could not be hired at any price. The bay became a very forest of masts, so many and so close together were the deserted ships.

Men come by three routes

Men came from the Eastern states by three routes. Many took the long voyage "around the horn,"—that is, they came around South America. Others went by ship to Panama, crossed the Isthmus as best they could, and took their chances on getting another vessel on the Pacific side. Great numbers of them made the weary journey overland, across the plains. In prairie schooners, on horse back, even on foot they came, thousands of them. The sufferings of those who crossed the plains would be too sad a story to tell. It was a journey that only strong men should have undertaken. From sickness, exposure and hardship, many of them died. Their horses and their cattle often fell by the wayside. It was said that the route across the continent was marked by the bones of man and beast.

STATUE OF JAMES MARSHALL WHO DISCOVERED GOLD AT COLOMA

Thus came an army of fortune hunters to California. We call them

Argonauts

Argonauts, because they were in search of a golden fleece, like Jason and the Argonauts of old. We also speak of them as "forty-niners," a name given them because so many came in the year 1849. By the end of that year, 100,000 of them had arrived and scattered to the gold fields.

THE DAYS OF GOLD

A dream come true

30. El Dorado. When the Spanish explorers came to America, they were led by dreams of gold. Each one of them hoped that he would find a country full of golden riches. In North America, or in South America, somewhere, *El Dorado,* the "golden land," was to be found. Long, long after the days of the explorers, the thought of El Dorado lived in the minds of men. When gold was discovered in California, it was only natural that people should say, "Here, at last, is El Dorado, the golden land of which the Spaniards dreamed." So the name was given to our state in those days.

PANNING GOLD IN EARLY DAYS

The golden fleece

And it surely was a "land of gold." In the famous year 1849, the amount of wealth taken from the mines was $40,000,000. Each year the sum grew. In 1853, $65,000,000 was removed from the streams and the mountain sides. Tales of riches found in a day, stories of wonderful "strikes" of gold, were on every man's tongue. Is it any wonder that fortune-hunters came from all corners of the world?

31. How Mining Was Done. Beside the streams and on the hillsides of the Sierras, the miners' "diggings" were to be found. To these "diggings" a steady stream of prospectors came, traveling from San Francisco and other new-born towns. Each prospector had his "outfit," made up of pick, pan, shovel, bacon, beans, flour, and a few other needed things. Up the rocky canyons they trudged by thousands and scattered along the countless streams.

Miners scatter along the streams and pan for gold

Where mountain water flowed, men could be seen crouching with iron pans. These pans they would half fill with gravel and sand. Then they would dip water into them, and shake them slowly to and fro. They would gradually pour out the water, and with it the loose dirt and gravel, until, if they were lucky, there would be nothing left but pieces of gold. This way of mining was called "panning," and in the early days was very common.

MINER AND ROCKER

Most of the men who mined along the streams, however, used what was called a "cradle" or "rocker." This got its name because it looked so much like a baby's cradle with one end knocked out. Along the bottom of it was fastened a piece of iron with holes punched in it. The earth was dumped into the cradle and water poured upon it. Then the cradle was rocked rapidly. The water would carry the sand and gravel away, while the gold, being heavier, would sink through the holes, or rest on the bottom of the cradle.

The "cradle"

Hillsides washed away

Mining along the streams or on the surface of the ground, was called "placer" mining. Mining was also carried on by digging holes into the earth. Sometimes companies of men, if they had money enough, would build great wooden flumes, or pipes. These would be made to carry large streams of water for long distances. These streams would then be shot through nozzles against the hillsides. This would wash away the hillsides, and the loose dirt would be allowed to run over what were called "sluice boxes." These were made so that they would catch the pieces of gold as they were washed through them. This kind of mining is known as "hydraulic" mining. It is still carried on in some places.

River channels filled

Hydraulic mining as then done was a bad thing. It tore great holes in the hills and washed many of them away. The water carried the loosened earth down into the rivers, almost filling them, and making them very shallow. Because of this, the state has suffered ever since. The rivers have not been able to carry the high waters of winter and spring, and the lands about them have been flooded. Great levees, costing millions of dollars, have had to be built in order to protect the farm lands in the valleys. Several years ago the state put an end to nearly all the hydraulic mining.

Life is rough and free

32. Life in the Camps. Near the mines many little towns or mining camps grew up. If you had visited one of these camps, you would have seen a few straggling houses made of rough, unpainted logs and boards, a hotel or two, restaurants, stores and places where men gambled and drank. You would have seen groups of men standing about, dressed in red flannel shirts, trousers tucked into high boots, and broad-brimmed hats. There would be prospectors setting out for the mines, carrying their packs, or driving before them horses or donkeys laden with heavy burdens. Rough talk in many languages could be heard; joking, laughter, and once in a while the noise of a fight. Very seldom was a woman or child to be seen. In the stores would be a great display of bacon, flour, beans, tobacco, miners' clothing, pans, picks, axes and shovels, with prices high beyond belief. Such was a mining camp in the days of '49.

A PRAIRIE SCHOONER ARRIVING AT COLOMA IN 1849

There was some lawlessness

Much has been written about the bad life in these camps. It is true that many men gambled away their hard-earned gold or spent it for drink. It is true also that some of them would fight, and that once in a while a man would be killed. But it must be remembered that California had not yet been made into a state. These men had no laws. Besides, the gold had drawn bad men as well as good to the mines. For a while the worse sort did as they pleased. Later, as we shall see, the good citizens made laws which everyone had to obey. Then life was safer and better for all.

Strong men and brave

Many people think only of the bad side of the mining camp life. We should think rather of the good side. The miner's life was full of toil and danger; it made men strong and brave. There was great friendship, and men freely gave their gold and risked their lives to help their comrades. Clothes did not make a man; neither did wealth or family. Men were judged by the good that was in them. It was a life in which those who were strong, kindly and honest must win honor and success; a life in which scamps and criminals must be found out and hated by their fellows.

To the glory of California, most of these Argonauts were the right kind. They were true sturdy Americans. In the face of trials and hardships, in a land without laws, they built a great state, enforced right and punished wrong. We honor them for it.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Captain Sutter came to California, built a fort, and established a rancho. *2.* Many Americans traveled across the plains to California in prairie schooners. *3.* The Donner party was snowed in at the summit of the Sierras, and many perished. *4.* Captain Fremont, with a party of sixty, was sent to California by President Polk. *5.* The people thought Fremont had come to stir up a rebellion against Mexico. *6.* Americans near Sonoma revolted

and adopted the Bear Flag. *7.* Commodore Sloat sailed into Monterey bay and raised the stars and stripes. *8.* Americans under Fremont marched through California and took possession. *9.* Some small battles were fought in the south. *10.* James Marshall discovered gold on the American river. *11.* There was a mad rush to the gold fields. *12.* The miners used pans and rockers along the mountain streams. *13.* A great deal of hydraulic mining was done. *14.* Rough mining camps sprang up in many places. *15.* Bad men and good men mixed together in the mining camps.

Study Questions. *1.* What attracted the immigrants who came to California before the days of gold? *2.* Where was Sutter's fort located? *3.* By what means of travel did the immigrants come to California? *4.* Tell the story of the Donner party. *5.* Why did the Mexicans look with suspicion upon Captain Fremont and his party? *6.* What was the first warlike act in the conquest of California? *7.* What war broke out, shortly after, between our country and another country? *8.* What did this war have to do with the American conquest of California? *9.* What was the origin of the Bear Flag? *10.* Why was the capture of the towns of California an easy thing for the Americans? *11.* Tell about the revolt of the Californians against the Americans in southern California. *12.* Tell the story of the discovery of gold. *13.* Describe the gold rush. *14.* Why were the gold seekers called "Argonauts"? *15.* Why was California called "El Dorado"? *16.* Tell how placer mining was done. *17.* Why was hydraulic mining a bad thing? *18.* Picture a scene in a pioneer mining camp. *19.* Why was mining camp life a test of a man's character?

Suggested Readings. Captain Sutter: Hunt, *California the Golden,* 152–161.

The Donner Party: Hunt, *California the Golden,* 162–168.

The Conquest of California: Hunt, *California the Golden,* 169–185; Bandini, *History of California,* 136–146; Sexton, *Stories of California,* 30–36; Drake, *The Making of the Great West,* 256–263.

The Days of Gold: Hunt, *California the Golden,* 187–209; McMurry, *Pioneers of the Rocky Mountains and the West,*

94–113; Barstow, *The Westward Movement*, 103–118, 175–198; Bandini, *History of California*, 147–172; Drake, *The Making of the Great West*, 271–284; Sexton, *Stories of California*, 37–66; Elson, *Sidelights on American History*, Vol. I, 243–262; Wright, *American Progress*, 268–298; Mowry, *American Pioneers*, 187–215; Markham, *California the Wonderful*, 102–147.

THE MAKING OF A STATE

CALIFORNIA JOINS THE UNION

33. A Time of Waiting. We have learned how the United States won California when the Mexican war broke out in 1846. In 1849 the people were still waiting for American laws to govern the land.

Some people thought that we should have what is called a "territorial" government. Such a government was given to parts of our country before those parts became regular states. While some people were thinking that California should be made into a territory, others were planning to make it into a state at once. But of course it could not be a regular state till Congress allowed it to be so.

The American army in charge

People were thinking this over while the great gold rush was going on. The state was still under the control of the United States army which had remained here after the Mexican war. General Bennet Riley was, for most of the time, the commander, and acted as governor. The people did not wish to be under the army. They wanted to rule themselves.

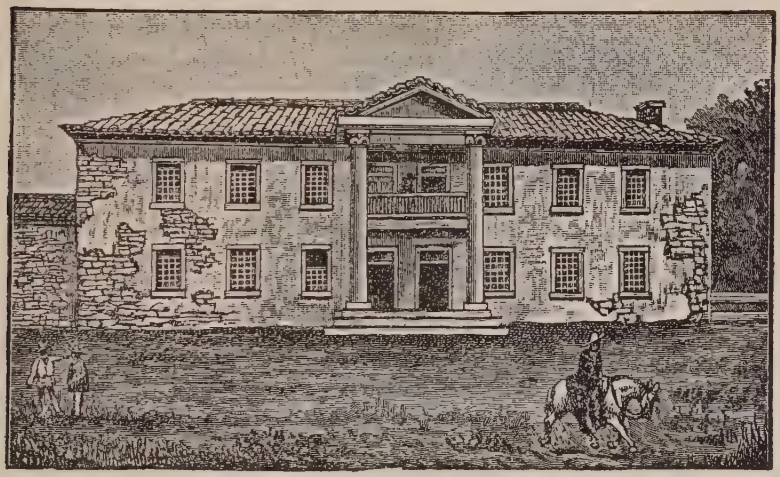
People want their own laws

Why did the people desire laws and a government? The question is not hard to answer. Wherever Americans go, they want justice, peace and good order. They want to be able to carry on their business, and bring up their families in safety and comfort. They want laws to help them build schools and roads and towns. They want to live in the right way. They

want to keep people from doing wrong. For all these reasons, the people of California desired a government of their own.

34. Laws are Made at Last. Three years passed, and the land was still under the rule of the army. At last, something was done. General Riley knew what the people wanted so he decided to help them. He sent out a call for a great

A call sent out



COLTON HALL

At Monterey, where the first Constitution was made

meeting, or convention, to be held at Monterey. The purpose of the convention was to make rules by which the people could govern themselves.

From San Diego, Los Angeles, San Francisco, Stockton, and Sacramento, from mining camp and town, the best and wisest men were chosen. They traveled to Monterey and met in a stone building known as Colton hall which still stands as a monument to the great work done there.

The men of the convention decided that California ought to be a state and not a territory. So they began the writing of a

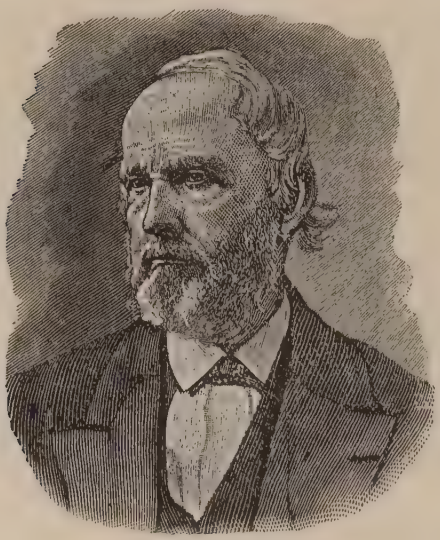
A constitution written

State Constitution. A constitution is a set of rules telling how the government shall be run. The one written at this convention is known as the Constitution of 1849.

No slavery

At that time there was slavery in the Southern states of our country. So the question was asked: "Shall California be a slave state or a free state?" To the honor of the men of the convention and to the credit of California, the question was decided in the right way. There should be no slavery here. California stood for freedom.

First American governor



PETER H. BURNETT
California's first Governor

Many wise provisions were placed in the Constitution. Among them was a plan for free state schools. Soon an election was held, at which all the citizens had a chance to vote for the Constitution or against it. Almost everyone voted for it. At the same time the first American governor of the state was elected. His name was Peter H. Burnett.

The convention decided that the town of San Jose should be the capital of the state. In a very short time, however, Vallejo was made the capital, and afterward the town of Benicia. In 1854 Sacramento was made the capital city, and the capital has not been changed since that time.

35. Admission Day. When California asked Congress if it could enter the Union as a state, there was great speaking and debating among the nation's lawmakers at Washington. If California became a state, it could send men to Congress. Because California was against slavery, its men in Congress would vote against slavery. The Southern states did not want anything like that. For a time it looked as though California might have to stay out of the Union and be a territory after all. At last Congress agreed. On the ninth day of September, in 1850, California was admitted to the Union. It became a state among the other states.

A state at last

That is why we celebrate September ninth of each year as Admission Day. It is the birthday of California.

STIRRING TIMES

36. Old Days in San Francisco. When Marshall discovered gold San Francisco was but a village on the sands. Within a year after that time it had become a large and busy city. It was the gateway to the golden state. Into its harbor poured a stream of newcomers from all parts of the world. Down from the mines came thousands of Argonauts with their gold. Stores, hotels, lodging houses, banks, warehouses, offices, and places of amusement were built by the score to meet the needs of all these people. There was no time to put up stone or brick buildings. The best were made of wood, with partition walls of cloth. Hundreds of houses were nothing more than tents.

A city made in a year

Busy and exciting was San Francisco's life. Men crowded the streets. Many were dressed in rough miners' costumes; many others wore fine clothes. But how men dressed made no difference. There were other and more important things to think of. News from the mines, plans of business men, the price of land, the building of stores, the getting of fortunes,—

The busy and exciting life

these were the thoughts that filled men's minds; these were the subjects about which all men talked.

The coming of the mail

The great event of the month was the coming of the steamer carrying the mails. Guns were fired and bells were rung to announce its arrival. Then from hotels and offices, from tents and cabins and stores, men rushed pell-mell to the post office. In a long line they stretched down the street, waiting their turn

SAN FRANCISCO IN 1849

for the news. Men often paid large sums of money for a place at the head of the line, so eager were they for papers and letters from home.

Fires rage and destroy

Between Christmas of 1849 and June of 1851, six great fires swept over San Francisco. The houses of wood and cloth burned like matches. Millions of dollars' worth of property was destroyed. Six times the fire wrought its havoc, and six times the city arose from its ashes as if by magic. And each time it arose to a greater and busier life. Fire alone could never stop its growth. Disaster could never weaken the courage of its people.

37. The Vigilance Committees. Most of the men of San Francisco were good and honest citizens, but there were many criminals and scamps as well. There were men who scorned an honest living and got money by stealing, cheating and other crimes. These men became a disgrace and a terror to the city. Merchants were robbed in their stores. Citizens were attacked in the streets, and their money and valuables stolen. Men were murdered. The desperadoes who did these things were well named the "hounds." There was a band of them, and they worked together. And the most disgraceful part of it was that many of the police and other officers of the city were on their side and protected them.

The crimes of the "hounds"

The good citizens of the city stood this sort of thing for a while. Then they took matters into their own hands. They formed what is known as the Vigilance Committee of 1851. The two hundred men of this committee swore by their honor and their lives that they would protect the people and their property against the "hounds." Within a short time four different murderers were captured, given trial, and sentenced to death. The men paid the penalty for their crimes in the public square of the city. Many evil-doers were sent out of the state, and others fled in terror.

The evildoers punished

For a while the bad characters that were left hid in fear, and were quiet. But before long the robberies and murders were worse than ever. Over a thousand citizens were killed within a few years. And now the famous Vigilance Committee of 1856 was formed. Six thousand honest and respectable men joined its ranks. They formed a military battalion, with guns and cannon. The headquarters of the committee was protected against attack by rows of sacks filled with sand. The people called it "Fort Gunny-bags." On top of the fort a great bell was hung. Three solemn strokes on the bell meant that a crime had been done, and that the men of the committee were needed.

More crimes

Justice is done

The Vigilance Committee of 1856 did its work well. It caught the criminals, it tried them fairly, it punished them severely. Its justice was stern, but it was right. Open crime came to an end in San Francisco. The city became a safe and good place in which to live.

A question of loyalty

38. California and the Civil War. In 1861 Leland Stanford was elected governor of California. This was the year in which the great civil war between the North and South began. Abraham Lincoln had been chosen President of the United States. Several of the slave states had gone out of the Union and had set up a government of their own. In California the great question was, Shall our state remain true to the Union?

True to the Union

There were men in California who had come from the South. Some of these men wanted our people to join with the Southern states. Their hopes were soon at an end. From city and town and mine and farm, the loyal men cried, "We shall stand true!" And California did stand true. Governor Stanford and the lawmakers declared the state for Lincoln and his cause. The greatest newspapers came out for the Union. The best orators spoke for loyalty. Thomas Starr King, a minister and a noble citizen, spoke and worked for freedom and the government. He collected a million and a half dollars to help the sick and wounded soldiers.

Sixteen thousand Californians volunteered for the Union cause. Our state helped the nation with great sums of money. When the Union had won, when the Southern states were again under the flag and the slaves were free, Californians could well have said, "We have done our part; we have stood true."

39. The Stagecoach. During these stirring times, there was no railroad to connect us with the East. The telegraph was not built till 1861. Travelers still had to come in wagons across the plains or in ship by way of Panama or Cape Horn.

Stagecoaches did the work of railroads. They carried passengers, express and mail over the stage line routes that led from the East. The story of the stagecoaches is a story of excitement and adventure. Drawn by six galloping horses, they dashed along the rough mountain roads and across the dusty plains. The coaches often carried great treasure, and the drivers were always heavily armed. All of us have heard

Excitement and adventure

OVERLAND STAGE

of the bold robberies, the narrow escapes, and the bravery of the drivers when they had to give battle to defend the valuables in their charge.

40. The Pony Express. Every schoolboy knows about the pony express and how its daring riders carried letters from Atchison, on the banks of the Missouri, to the city of Sacramento. The first rider from the East would set out at breakneck speed. His brave little Indian pony would carry him galloping to the relay station twenty-five miles away. Here the horseman would toss the precious mail pouch to another rider on another Indian pony, and off and away the second would go. Twenty-five miles more, and the third rider would begin. So for 2,000 miles, night and day, in sunshine and storm, over mountains

Brave carriers of the mail

and plains, horseman after horseman sped to the West. The entire distance was covered in eight days. In this way were carried the tidings from loved ones, the business letters, the news from the East, and all safely delivered, thanks to man and beast.

The pony express came to an end when the telegraph was built. And when the great railroad came, the exciting days of the stagecoaches drew to a close.

THE COMING OF THE RAILROAD

The greatest need of the state

41. A Dream of Great Builders. There were men in California who dreamed great dreams. They looked abroad over our state and saw the wide, fertile valleys and hillsides, the forest-clad mountains, the growing cities, and the commerce coming to our ports. In their wisdom they knew that our greatest wealth did not lie in the mines. They saw that Nature's best gift to us was our rich soil, waiting to yield a golden harvest of grain and fruits. They knew that the uncut timber of our forests was a fortune without measure. They knew that our wealth, our prosperity, the number of our people, would grow and grow if only one thing were done. A railroad must be built to carry our products to the East.

The "big four"

Four men who saw this great future for California stood out as leaders. They set about to make the dream become real. They were men of power and of deeds. The "Big Four" the people called them, because they did big things. Their names were Leland Stanford, Collis P. Huntington, Mark Hopkins and Charles Crocker. They took up the mighty task of building the railroad, and through this work they made vast fortunes.

Two railroad companies

42. East and West Are Joined. Two great railroad companies were formed. One, the Union Pacific, was to build westward from Omaha, Nebraska. The other, the Central Pacific, was to build eastward from Sacramento till it joined

the other. To help pay the immense cost, Congress gave the railroads large tracts of public land. The State of California also helped generously.

A mighty task

It was truly a task for giants. To bind steel rails across the wide prairies, to gird the mountain ridges, to hew a way along rocky canyons, to span swift torrents, to bore tunnels through barriers of stone, all for a distance of 2,000 miles,—this was a greater thing than had ever been done before. Many laughed at the thought of it, and cried, "Impossible!"

But the great work was done. An army of laborers toiled on the western side. On the east another army worked with tireless strength. For six years the mighty task went on. The ends of the two tracks came closer and closer together. At last the rails from the East met the rails from the West.

The last spike is driven

On May 10, 1869, at a place called Promontory, in Utah, the last spike was driven. It was a spike of gold, given by California. Six hundred men from all parts of the country were there to honor the great work. With a silver sledge Leland Stanford drove the spike, while men cheered, locomotives blew their whistles, and bells rang. With each blow that Stanford struck, a signal was sent over the telegraph wires to San Francisco. And in that city the great bell on the City Hall clanged out in time with the blows of the sledge.

To all parts of the world the news went out: "The Pacific railroad is completed!" It made the people of California wild with joy. In San Francisco and Sacramento great parades and celebrations were held. The people of the entire country rejoiced. The East and the West were one. They were tied together with bands of steel.

FORGING ONWARD

The greater wealth

43. A New Age Begins. The rough old times of the Argonauts, the struggles of the pioneers, the "days of gold," were over. With the coming of the railroad a new age dawned

for California. And what a wonderful age it was to be! What a glorious age it is! Our wealth is no longer in our gold, though plenty of that remains. A greater and a better wealth is in our farms, orchards, factories and railroads; in the thriving business and industry of our people.

The days of gold were days to wonder at. They were days of strong men and mighty deeds. But this new age, this age of industry and commerce, is a nobler one. Gold is worth only money. Industry and commerce are worth far more because they give all people a way to earn a living. All the gold may be dug from the mountains, but industry and commerce will last as long as men are willing to work.

Trouble about Chinese labor

44. Hard Times. The new age began dark and gloomy as better times often do. So many people had come to California that there was not enough work to go around. People suffered from what we call "hard times." Many citizens thought that the trouble was all due to the Chinese. Workingmen from China had come to the state in great numbers. They worked for very low wages. White men could never think of living on the money that was paid to these yellow men from across the sea. Because of their low wages, the Chinese were hired to do much of the work in the state. So the American workmen cried, "The Chinamen are getting all the work and we are getting none! We shall starve!"

The exclusion act

It is hard to say whether the Chinese really caused the hard times, but most of our people put the blame upon them. Hoodlums and ruffians often treated them with great cruelty. Many people declared that the Chinese would have to go. For a while it looked as though every Chinaman would be shipped from California. At last, however, people began to see that if a law were passed forbidding Chinese laborers to come into America, the Chinese problem would not be a source of trouble after a time. In 1882 the United States Congress passed the

Chinese Exclusion Act. This law said that Chinese workingmen could not come to this country for ten years. It said nothing about sending away the Chinamen already here. We still have a law which keeps Chinese laborers from coming into the United States.

New laws for a new age

45. A New Constitution. You have already learned how the men of 1849 met at Monterey and made a State Constitution. That Constitution was the law of California for thirty years. In 1879 the age of commerce and industry had come. Men began to think that a new Constitution was needed; one

LOS ANGELES IN 1857

that would better suit the new life of the people. In all parts of the state elections were held and men were chosen to go to the second constitutional convention of California. The Constitution that was written is the one that we now have. But we have changed it and added to it a great many times. A change in the Constitution is called an amendment. An amendment can be made only by vote of the people. If most of the voters are in favor of it, it is written into the Constitution.

Los Angeles becomes a great city

46. Los Angeles and Its Growth. Until 1880 the city of Los Angeles was but a sleepy little town inhabited mostly by Mexicans. About that time the Southern Pacific and Santa Fe

railroads extended their lines to Los Angeles, and from that day the growth of the city has been faster than that of any other city in the United States. People from all parts of the country, attracted by the chances for business and by the lovely climate, have made their homes there. There are now miles and miles of smooth streets lined with beautiful residences and gardens, business blocks, schools and churches. The increase of the city's business, manufacturing and population has made people wonder. A fine system of electric railways connects the city with all the neighboring towns. The ever-active citizens have brought about the improvement of San Pedro harbor so that Los Angeles now has an excellent seaport. They have built a great aqueduct 209 miles long to carry water to the city from the Owens river in the Sierras of Inyo county.

Other thriving communities

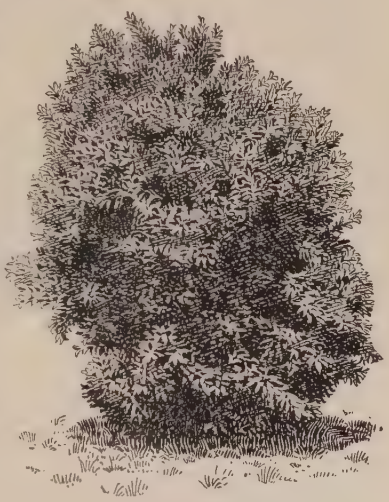
But the growth of southern California has not been in Los Angeles alone. Pasadena, Riverside, Redlands and San Bernardino are beautiful and growing towns. San Diego, with its fine harbor, has increased rapidly in population and wealth. Throughout southern California there are thriving towns too numerous to mention.

47. The Story of the Orange. Much of the wealth of southern California comes from the growing of the navel orange. That part of our country is famous as the favorite home of this orange and it is grown there in the greatest quantities.

Trees sent from Brazil

The story of how the navel orange was introduced takes us back to the year 1870. In that year the United States Department of Agriculture brought some small navel orange trees from Bahia in Brazil and planted them in the greenhouses at Washington. It was the purpose of the Department of Agriculture to see if this variety of the orange could be grown profitably in our country. It happened that Mrs. Luther C. Tibbits, of Riverside, California, had some friends in the city

of Washington who were interested in the new orange. These friends sent three small navel trees to Mrs. Tibbits. Mr. and Mrs. Tibbits planted the trees, and two of them grew and bore fruit. Their first successful crop was in 1879.



THE PARENT NAVEL ORANGE TREE STILL GROWING AT RIVERSIDE

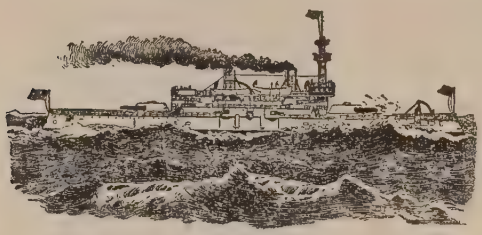
Growers adopt the new orange

The new trees became the wonder and wealth of southern California. Orange growers at once saw that there was a fortune in this new Brazilian variety. They had been growing the seedling orange. Some of the growers fastened buds from the navel orange trees into the bark of the old trees in such a way that new branches grew from the old trunks. And these new branches bore navel oranges. That is the way the great navel orange industry of California began. Those trees that Mr. and Mrs. Tibbits planted were the parents of numberless trees.

48. The Spanish-American War. In 1898 came the exciting events of the Spanish-American war. When it was known that war was about to begin, the battleship *Oregon,* the pride of the Pacific, received orders to hasten to join the Atlantic fleet near Cuba. The *Oregon* steamed with all speed from the Puget Sound navy yard to San Francisco, where it took on provisions. It then departed under full steam on the fastest voyage ever made by a battleship, up to that time. There was no wireless telegraph in those days, so no direct news could be received from the *Oregon* after it left our shores. As

The cruise of the Oregon

a result, many were the rumors that the ship had been sunk by torpedoes, and that other disasters had befallen it. News finally came that our favorite ship had joined the Atlantic fleet in safety. And when it was learned that the voyage of 15,000 miles had been made in the wonderful time of fifty-nine days, the hearts of all Californians were filled with pride, since the *Oregon* was built in San Francisco.



THE OREGON

The call for volunteers to join the colors brought thousands of young men from all parts of the state. It was necessary to send to the front only twelve companies of these volunteers. These companies made up the famous First regiment. This regiment took a very prominent part in the capture of Manila and in other fighting that occurred in the Philippines. Its return after the war was celebrated with great rejoicings.

The California volunteers

What the war did for us

The Spanish-American war brought the Philippine islands under the control of the United States. That was a very important event, for it meant that the dominion of our nation would now stretch beyond the seas. But to California especially it was a great event, indeed. Our ownership of the Philippines meant a great increase of our commerce in the Pacific. Most of this new commerce would pour through the ports of California. That meant more business and more wealth for the state.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* After the Mexican war California was under the military government of the United States. *2.* A disagreement arose as to whether California should

become a state or a territory. *3.* A constitutional convention was held, and a state constitution was adopted. *4.* After much argument in Congress, California was admitted as a free state. *5.* San Francisco grew to be an important city after the discovery of gold. *6.* Vigilance committees were formed in San Francisco to preserve law and order. *7.* The Civil war broke out and California stood by the Union. *8.* The stagecoach did the work of railroads, and the pony express carried the overland mails. *9.* Men saw the great future of California and built the transcontinental railroad. *10.* With the coming of the railroad, an age of industry and commerce began. *11.* The workmen of California made a protest against Chinese cheap labor, and the Chinese exclusion act was passed by Congress. *12.* In 1879 a new State Constitution was adopted to meet the new conditions. *13.* In 1880 Los Angeles and the south began a wonderful growth. *14.* The navel orange was introduced into California from Brazil. *15.* In 1898 the Spanish-American war broke out and many Californians volunteered.

Study Questions. *1.* Why did the people of California want a constitution in 1849? *2.* When the Constitution was written, what was said about slavery? *3.* What was said about public schools? *4.* Who was the first American governor elected for California? *5.* Name the different locations of the State Capital. *6.* Why did the Southern states object to the admission of California? *7.* Why do we celebrate September ninth? *8.* Why did San Francisco grow so quickly? *9.* Describe the old San Francisco of the gold days. *10.* Tell why vigilance committees were organized in San Francisco, and what these committees did. *11.* What did California do about taking part in the Civil war? *12.* Tell about the stagecoach. *13.* Describe a trip of the pony express. *14.* Why did men think a railroad should be built? *15.* Tell about the building of the railroad. *16.* What new life in California began when the days of gold were over? *17.* Why were the Chinese blamed for the hard times? *18.* What is the Chinese exclusion act? *19.* Why was a new Constitution written in 1879? *20.* Tell about the growth of Los Angeles. *21.* Tell the story of the navel orange. *22.* Tell about the cruise of the *Oregon*. *23.* How did Cali-

fornia help in the Spanish-American war? *24.* Why was our getting of the Philippine Islands important to California?

Suggested Readings. Admission of California: Hunt, *California the Golden,* 221–243; Bandini, *History of California,* 173–188; Drake, *The Making of the Great West,* 285–288.

Early San Francisco: Hunt, *California the Golden,* 256–281; Sexton, *Stories of California,* 169–179; Markham, *California the Wonderful,* 196–204.

Stagecoach and Pony Express: Hunt, *California the Golden,* 284–287; Markham, *California the Wonderful,* 151–154.

The Railroad: Hunt, *California the Golden,* 283–296; Bandini, *History of California,* 196–201; Sexton, *Stories of California,* 67–74.

Chinese Exclusion: Hunt, *California the Golden,* 305–314; Bandini, *History of California,* 202–203.

The New Constitution: Hunt, *California the Golden,* 315–322; Bandini, *History of California,* 203–205.

Los Angeles and the South: Bandini, *History of California,* 211–214; Markham, *California the Wonderful,* 220–238.

The Orange: Bandini, *History of California,* 246–252; Sexton, *Stories of California,* 92–101.

THE THINGS THAT HAVE BEEN DONE

THE RECENT YEARS

Population, industry and wealth

49. The Larger Life. The recent years have seen a great increase in population, industry and wealth. The growth of the south has been mentioned, but much could be said of the increase farther north. San Francisco, Oakland, Berkeley, San Jose and other cities about San Francicso bay; Sacramento, Chico, and many towns of the Sacramento valley; Fresno, Bakersfield and Stockton in the San Joaquin valley, have all shown a development that is remarkable. We have recently grown to be an important manufacturing state. Among all the states we stand about tenth in the value of

things made in factories. Six railroad routes reach into California from other parts of the nation, and the state is interlaced with steam and electric lines. Fruit growing, dairying, lumbering, mining, poultry keeping, and stock raising are generous sources of wealth. Barley, wheat, vegetables, and cattle feed are grown abundantly in most of the counties of the state.

50. The Fortune in Oil. Only a few years ago our gold brought us more wealth than any other mineral product. But in 1916 gold is in second place. The value of our oil product is over twice that of the gold.

The great oil fields

Go into Fresno, Orange, Kern, Los Angeles, Santa Barbara and Ventura counties, and you will see the famous oil fields. You will stand in wonder at those forests of towers made of criss-cross beams. There are in some places acres and acres of them, with great storage tanks among them. There is a din of engines, a smell of oil in the air. Men in overalls are busy everywhere.

AN OIL WELL IN CALIFORNIA

Each one of the towers that you see is built over an oil well. The tower was used in drilling the well, and it is now used to support the pumping machinery that draws the thick, black oil from the wells. The oil is pumped into the storage tanks, and from there is forced through pipe lines that extend from the oil fields to the seaports. One of these pipe lines extends nearly 300 miles from the Kern county fields to Point Richmond on San Francisco bay.

California is one of the greatest oil producing regions in the world. Water equal to the amount of oil we produce in a

Importance of the industry

year would float 300 battleships. The industry brings millions of dollars into the state and gives employment to thousands of men.

Oil in the early days

There was no sudden oil discovery in California as was the case with gold. Oil was known in California as far back as the time of the mission fathers. Wells were not dug in that day, but the oil that seeped from the ground was used to put on roofs and for other purposes. Several oil wells were dug between 1850 and 1860, but no profit was made because men did not know how to refine the peculiar heavy, black oil of the California fields.

The great boom

In 1892 the Los Angeles oil field was opened up and much excitement resulted. In three years 300 wells were dug. The greatest boom was in 1899 when the Bakersfield region was found to be rich in petroleum. The discovery there made the little town of Bakersfield a large city almost in a day. That locality suddenly became one of the richest oil fields in the world. Since 1892 the oil industry has spread to many localities in the state, and has grown with wonderful rapidity.

How water is fed to the land

51. Irrigation. One who travels through the farm and orchard regions of California sees many places where canals have been dug to carry water through the land. If he follows one of these canals, the traveler finds that ditches lead from them. Through the ditches the water flows to gardens, fields and orchards. This system of watering the soil is what we call irrigation.

The reason for it

Not long ago it was a great risk, in some parts of California for a man to plant his acres with orchards and gardens. Dry winters might come, leaving the trees and plants to wither and bear no fruit. To meet such a danger, irrigation systems were dug. Such systems were also made to water dry lands, where no crops, or only poor ones, could be grown. Thousands of acres in the state are now watered for this purpose. Irrigation

is doing more than anything else to increase and improve agriculture in California.

The sources of water

One may ask where this water comes from that flows through the canals and ditches to the rescue of the orchardist and the farmer. It comes from distant rivers. It comes from great lakes that men have made by building cement dams across river channels. It comes from reservoirs fed from artesian wells. It is pumped from the earth by gasoline engines and electric motors. Sometimes in one way, sometimes in another, the life-giving water is fed into the irrigating systems and sent for miles across the land.

State and nation taking a hand

Most of the irrigation has been done by companies and corporations. But the state and national governments are taking more and more interest in it. The great irrigation system at Orland was planned and made by the national government for the benefit of the people in that district. Many plans for greater irrigation systems are under way.

The idea of one man

52. The Story of Imperial. In the southeastern part of our state lies the Colorado desert. A man once visited this arid region, and as he looked out over the desert he was seized with a great idea. Why couldn't the waters of the Colorado river be let into this sun-baked land, so that it would bear fruit in place of the thorny cactus? Filled with this idea, the man talked with others who had money. Together they formed a company and set to work.

A great work is done

The result of their labors is one of the wonders of the world. They turned a large portion of the bleak desert into a garden spot. And how simple it seems, now that it is done! All that they did was to dig a canal from the Colorado river, smaller canals that branched from the main one, then smaller branches from these. Into the canals and ditches they turned the Colorado's waters, and these, irrigating the sands, made them rich and fertile. That is how Imperial county was changed from a desert into one of the world's richest regions.

The levees break

In the summer of 1905, shortly after the canals had been dug, the river burst through the banks that had been made to hold it in check. It rushed across the land that was just blooming in its new life. It poured into Salton sea and that body of water rose seven inches a day. It flooded the towns of Calexico and Mexicali. It threatened to destroy the whole of the great work that the mighty builders had created.

Fighting the floods

Time and again the heroic workers tried to dam up the escaping river, but the angry waters destroyed the hurriedly built levees. After many trials, the work seemed to be done; but the army of workers had no sooner departed than another flood came, tore through the dam, and havoc was wrought again. Once more the men went at their task. This time they succeeded in building a mighty dam that turned the flood waters aside, and the torrent was tamed at last. That was in December of 1906.

Mountain waters make electricity

53. The Conquest of Nature's Power. It is not in irrigation only that the waters have been made to do a work of wonder. The power of falling mountain streams is used to make electricity which is sent through wires to all parts of the state. It is used for lighting purposes and for running electric cars. It is used for operating countless machines, forges and pumps. And how is it all done?

Great power houses

There are places in the Sierras where vast lakes have been made by building dams across the canyons. Far below the lakes, power houses have been built. A power house is a place where there are machines for making electricity. From the lake great flumes are made, to carry the water along the mountain-side to some place high above one of the power houses. From this place the water shoots down the mountain in a huge pipe. The shooting water dashes through steel water-wheels. These powerful, whirring wheels turn the machines that make the electricity.

Wires as thick as a finger carry the electricity from the power house across the mountains, valleys and plains. These wires loop from pole to pole, and from tower to tower, for hundreds of miles, carrying electricity to cities, towns, farms, oil wells and mines. In this way is the power of the mountain torrent turned to the use of man. **The transmission lines**

54. Disaster and Rebuilding. April 18, 1906, is the date of one of the worst disasters in the history of our country. Early in the morning of that day the counties around San Francisco bay were visited by a terrible earthquake. Nothing like it had ever happened in the United States since the white man first settled here. For over a minute the earth shook with great violence. In many places buildings were destroyed, railways twisted, pipe lines broken, and other damage done. At Stanford university many valuable buildings were thrown down. A large part of the city of Santa Rosa was shattered into ruins. At San Jose, Santa Clara, Palo Alto and other cities, much property was ruined. **The havoc of the earthquake**

In San Francisco the shock of the earthquake was followed by a terrible fire. For over two days the flames raged across the city. The water supply pipes had been broken and there was no way to stop the destruction. After the fearful havoc had been done the people of the city looked out upon a waste of ashes and smouldering ruins. **A city destroyed**

The news of the great disaster awoke the sympathies of people in all parts of the world. Trainloads and shiploads of food and clothing were sent to help those whose homes and property had been destroyed. But help was not needed for long. The brave citizens soon turned to the task of building upon the ruins. Within a few short years nearly all traces of the disaster were gone from the cities and towns where the havoc had been wrought. A new and more beautiful San Francisco arose upon the ashes of the old. And from it all we **The citizens rebuild with a brave heart**

draw this lesson: Earthquake and fire may wreck and destroy, but courage and manhood will conquer in the end.

The initiative

55. Greater Rights for the People. In 1911 the people voted in favor of some very important amendments to the State Constitution. One of these amendments gives the people the right to propose a law themselves. It is done by signing a petition. If a certain percentage of the voters sign the petition, the proposed law must be brought before the people at an election. If more than half of those who vote are in favor of the proposed law, it becomes a law of the state. This right of the people is called the "initiative." Before 1911 only the legislature could bring forward new laws and vote on them.

The referendum

Another amendment to the Constitution provides something like this: If the legislature makes a law which a certain percentage of the people do not want, these people can ask that a vote on that law be taken. If more than half of the voters are against it, the law is defeated and cannot be enforced. This right is called the "referendum."

Women can vote

Still another amendment gives the women citizens of California the right to vote. In most of our states only the men can vote. We in California are proud that our state has given the women this right. The pioneer mothers who came to California amid hardships first taught us the value of women citizens, for from them we learned the truest lessons of self-sacrifice and devotion. By giving the women the right to vote we have placed a greater power for good in their hands.

Elementary education

56. The Public Schools. True to the duties of good government, we have developed one of the best systems of public schools in the nation. The elementary and intermediate schools stand as the foundation of this system. The education given in them is as good as can be found in such schools anywhere in the world. The state supplies textbooks free to the

pupils of the elementary schools. There are eight normal schools where teachers are trained for teaching the elementary branches.

The high schools

Above the elementary schools are the high schools. Of these California has every reason to be proud. No high schools anywhere give a better education. Their teachers are among the best educated people in the state. The high schools train the boys and girls to take their parts as citizens and workers in the world. They also get them ready for college.

Every opportunity is offered

In some of the cities there are special schools where unfortunate boys and girls who cannot learn very easily are taught. There are also schools where the deaf, dumb and blind are given instruction. Many of the country schools teach gardening and farming. There are schools where trades are taught. Most of the high schools teach shorthand, typewriting, bookkeeping, and other subjects necessary in business life. There are night schools where young people who work can improve their knowledge. A chance for education is offered to every willing boy or girl.

57. The Universities. The University of California is one of the largest universities in the United States. It is maintained by the state, and is located in the city of Berkeley. There are branches at San Francisco and Los Angeles, and there is a University farm at Davis where the best methods of farming are taught. Branch farm stations are located in several parts of the state.

The work of the State University

Professors from the University make trips to the towns and cities to give lectures on various subjects. Much teaching is done by mail. Thousands of farmers all over the state get letters and books from the University, helping them greatly in their work of raising cattle and crops. During every summer vacation a University summer session is held at which hundreds of students gather to improve their education.

Stanford Stanford University is another great school of higher education. Together with the University of California, it ranks among the best universities in the country. Stanford University is famous for its beautiful buildings, its excellent teachers, and the fine life of its students.

Other colleges California has several other excellent schools of higher learning. Among these are Mills college, Pomona college, Occidental college, the University of Southern California, and the University of Santa Clara.

The gift of the canal **58. The Canal and the Expositions.** After four hundred years the dream of the old sea-rovers has come true. There is a middle passage-way from the Atlantic to the Pacific. The Panama canal has been built which has shortened the sea route from East to West by 8000 miles.

To the people of California the canal has brought a great gift. It has increased our commerce with the Atlantic states and Europe. It has brought us people to settle upon our lands and develop our farming industry. It has made more factories, and more work for men to do.

The Panama-Pacific exposition The great Panama-Pacific exposition at San Francisco was built in 1915 to celebrate the joining of the oceans. Millions of dollars were spent to rear the exposition buildings, to illuminate them, and to lay out beautiful gardens. Within the walls of the imposing structures, the products and the arts of all nations were brought together. One could walk for days and days along the aisles and among the buildings and never cease to wonder.

The California-Panama exposition To show what the canal means to them, the people of southern California built the Panama-California exposition at San Diego. Here, again, the products and arts of many nations were shown. The exhibits were housed in beautiful buildings in the mission style. About them lovely tropical gardens were planted.

A wonderful system of roads

59. The State Highway. California has undertaken the building of a magnificent system of state roads. These roads are spoken of as the state highway. They are really a number of highways joined together. One main route runs from San Diego northward through the central valleys to the Oregon boundary. Another route extends along the seacoast for the entire length of the state. These wonderful roads, with their branches, are intended to connect the county seats of all the counties in the state. The routes cover a total distance of 3000 miles. It is one of the finest systems of roadways in the world.

Mount Lassen bursts forth

60. The Volcano. Lovers of California have long since declared that every wonder of the earth was given to our state by Nature. But as if to prove that her hidden powers are endless, a volcano burst from Mt. Lassen early in 1914. Many times it threw out masses of rock, ash and steam. People a hundred miles away have seen the mighty cloud thrown skyward from the mountain. Lassen is the one and only active volcano in the United States.

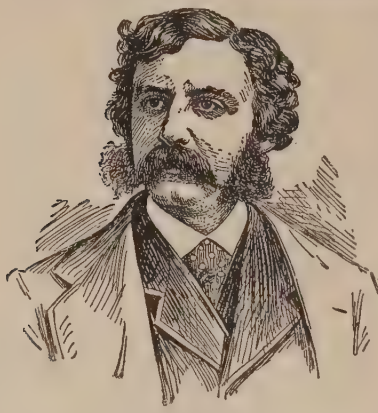
TRIUMPHS IN LITERATURE, ART AND SCIENCE.

We in California have been deep in the mighty task of building a great state. We are still young and growing, and busy at our work. But out of the noise of our sturdy progress, out of the rush of our forging, plowing and building, have risen the voices of writers, poets and thinkers. A book could be written about our men and women, past and present, whose brains have created some of the nation's finest literature and art. We can mention only a few of those whose names are best known.

Bret Harte

61. Early Writers. No name is better known in western literature than that of Bret Harte. When a young man he came to California and went to the mining camps. He was

deeply stirred by the romantic and exciting life. He wrote about what he saw, in the form of charming poems and stories. His works were published in England and America and won great praise. The world has laughed over his funny poem, the *Heathen Chinee,* and has wept over the tender story of *M'liss.*



FRANCIS BRET HARTE

Samuel L. Clemens, better known as Mark Twain, was not a Californian, but he spent several years in San Francisco.

Mark Twain

He began his literary work here, and it was here that he wrote some of the best known of his early books. We are proud to be able to count him among the first of our writers because he is now looked upon as one of the great masters of the English tongue.

Stevenson

Robert Louis Stevenson, the famous English story writer, lived for some time in San Francisco, at Monterey and near St. Helena. He wrote a great deal about us, and one of his books, *The Silverado Squatters,* is full of very interesting and amusing facts concerning his visit here.

Many writers in verse

62. Poets. It would be impossible to give the names of all the Californians who have written fine things in poetry. Bret Harte is one of them. Perhaps the best known is Joaquin Miller, called the poet of the Sierras. This rugged man, with his deep feeling and sympathy, has given us the bigness and meaning of nature, as California has taught it to him. He is the author of the widely read poem, *Columbus.*

Ina Coolbrith and Edwin Markham are two other poets of

power. Ina Coolbrith began her writings in the early days of the state. She has written many fine poems about California, as well as on other subjects. Edwin Markham, who was for years a teacher in California, won fame with his poem, *The Man With the Hoe.* He is the author of much beautiful and powerful verse. Others of our poets who stand high in the literary world are Charles Warren Stoddard, Edward Rowland Sill, John Vance Cheney and George Stirling.

Authors of famous books

63. Novelists. Our best known novelists are Frank Norris, Jack London, Mary Austin and Gertrude Atherton. Frank Norris died when but a young man, but the books that he wrote were truly great. Jack London is one of the most popular novelists of our day. Mary Austin's strong, vivid stories and sketches are widely read works of literature. Gertrude Atherton began with stories dealing with California; but she has now widened her field, and is read in Germany and England, as well as in America. Helen Hunt Jackson, though not a Californian, gave us the most famous of all California novels, *Ramona.* She was also the author of a charming book on the missions.

A friend of Nature

64. John Muir. The name of John Muir is among the best beloved of our writers. This man spent much of his life among the forests and mountains of the state. He loved them as no other man has loved them. In his writings he has tried to teach us the deep beauty of the peaks and gorges and trees and flowers of California.

A master painter

65. William Keith. California has produced many fine painters. Their works have gone into the art galleries and have shown the world the romance of California life, and the beauties of our mountains, meadows and flowers. Among all these painters the name of William Keith stands out. This man painted the Sierras and the woods. But he did more than paint them. He wrought into each picture a charm and a mystery that came from his soul. He was a great artist.

Burbank

66. Luther Burbank. The name of Luther Burbank is well known among California boys and girls. The work he has done in improving plants in his gardens at Santa Rosa has brought him fame. Among his best-known productions are the spineless cactus, the Shasta daisy and the Burbank potato.

TODAY AND TOMORROW

Room for great numbers

67. The Present and Its Opportunities. California is the second largest state in the Union. Its territory is so great that we could find room in it for Massachusetts, Delaware, Maine, New Jersey, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, Vermont, New Hampshire and Ohio. And yet, in population California is twelfth among the states. New York city alone has nearly twice as many people as there are in our entire state. Think, then, how small our population really is, as compared with the size of our state. Think how great a number of people can still find homes within our borders.

The growing wealth

California is justly famous for the great wealth that it produces. And yet it can produce several times as much. More and more land is being used for raising crops. Great plans for carrying water to the dryer and less useful lands are being completed. The Panama canal is bringing more people and greater commerce to our shores. Each year finds more factories and railroads within the state.

Something to think about

68. The Future, Its Promise and Its Duties. We look to the past with pride and admiration. We glory in what our people have done. To the future we look with increasing wonder at its possibilities. Who can tell how great the wealth of our industries will grow? Who can foresee how great the number of our people will become?

True citizenship

Let us welcome the great things that the future holds in store for us. At the same time let us stop and think of the duties that fall upon us. No state can succeed without good

citizens and wise government. And as industry and commerce grow, the need for good citizens and wise government becomes greater. As the number of our people increases, the need for wise laws increases. Wise laws and good government we cannot have unless our people remain ever true to their duties as citizens. If the people fail in this, the future will fail.

But the future will not fail, because the people of California will stand true. They will give their children an education. They will be honest and patriotic. They will vote only for what they believe is right. And the young people will do their part by going to school and fitting themselves for their duties as citizens of the future. And because her people will stand true, California, with glad heart and welcoming hand, hails the great tomorrow.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* The recent years have brought a great increase in population and growth of cities. *2.* There has been a wonderful development in agriculture, manufacture, and transportation. *3.* The oil industry has grown to mammoth proportions. *4.* Irrigation has been developed to a great extent, and has had a decided influence on the development of agriculture. *5.* By means of irrigation, Imperial county was created. *6.* Water power for making electricity has come into large use, and the electricity is sent throughout the state. *7.* In 1906 a great earthquake shook the counties about San Francisco bay, and a fire wrought havoc in San Francisco. *8.* A wonderful rebuilding followed the earthquake and fire. *9.* The initiative and referendum, and votes for women, have given greater rights to the people of the state. *10.* An excellent system of public schools has been developed. *11.* The universities do a fine work of higher education. *12.* The opening of the Panama Canal was celebrated with great expositions at San Francisco and San Diego. *13.* A wonderful system of state highways has been constructed. *14.* In 1914 Mt. Lassen burst forth as an active volcano. *15.* There were several prominent writers in the early days of

the state. *16.* Some noted poets are natives of California. *17.* California has produced famous novelists. *18.* John Muir wrote about the forests and mountains of California. *19.* William Keith was our greatest painter. *20.* Luther Burbank has done much to improve horticulture. *21.* The present holds out great opportunities. *22.* The future is full of promise, but imposes serious duties.

Study Questions. *1.* Tell about California's development in population, agriculture and business. *2.* What was the earliest use of oil in California? *3.* What about the extent of the oil industry today? *4.* Locate the great oil fields. *5.* Describe the method of irrigation. *6.* What has irrigation done for California? *7.* Tell how Imperial county was made. *8.* Tell about the break in the Colorado river. *9.* Explain how water power is used to make electricity. *10.* What are the uses of electricity? *11.* Describe the effects of the great earthquake. *12.* Tell about the burning and rebuilding of San Francisco. *13.* What is the initiative? *14.* What is the referendum? *15.* What great right has California given to the women citizens? *16.* What can be said of California's system of public schools? *17.* Tell about the work of the universities. *18.* What has the Panama canal done for California? *19.* Describe the routes of the State highway. *20.* Who were the early writers of California? *21.* Name some of our greatest poets. *22.* Name our most famous novelists. *23.* Why is the name of John Muir honored? *24.* Tell about the work of William Keith. *25.* Why is Luther Burbank well known? *26.* Tell of the great opportunities of today. *27.* What can you say of the possibilities of the future? *28.* What serious duties fall upon the citizens of the state?

Suggested Readings. California's Resources: Sexton, *Stories of California,* 75–158; Bandini, *History of California,* 229–252; Hunt, *California the Golden,* 328–342; Markham, *California the Wonderful,* 155–195.

Literature and Art: Markham, *California the Wonderful,* 328–377.

The Earthquake: Bandini, *History of California,* 225–228.

PRONOUNCING INDEX

KEY TO MARKINGS.—ā as in māte, ă as in căt, ä as in fäther, å as in låst; ē as in mē, ĕ as in lĕt, e͟ as in ve͟il, ē as in tērm; ĭ as in pĭn, ï as in police; ō as in vōte, ŏ as in lŏt; u͟ as in ru͟de; ȳ as in hȳmn.

NOTE.—Only words peculiar to California history, and of difficult or doubtful pronunciation, are given. The pronunciations follow those of *Webster's International Dictionary*, with a few modifications. Note, in the case of the Spanish words, that good English usage does not always follow the original tongue.

är′gō-naut
Bål-bō′å
Bōde͟′ga
Cabrillo (*cà-brē͟l′yō*)
Cär-mĕl′
Cahuenga (cå-wĕn′gå)
Chĭ′cō
Cäs′trō
Cō-lō′må
Cō-lō-rä′dō
Dō-lō′rĕs
Ĕl Cå-mĭ′nō Re͟-äl′
Ĕl Dō-rä′dō
făn-dăn′gō
Flō′rĕs
Fre͟′mŏnt
Gillespie (*gĭl-lĕs′pi*)
Grĭn′gō
Kearny (*kär′nȳ*)
Lōs Ăn′gĕ-lĕs
Mŏn-tĕ-re͟y′
Ōr-te͟′ga
Pĭ′cō
Pōr-tō-lä′
Rä-mō′nå
rån-che͟′rō
rån′cho͟
rō-de͟′ō
Säc-rå-mĕn′tō
Sän Bĕr-när-dĭ′nō
Sän Cär′lōs
Sän Dĭ-e͟′gō
Săn Frăn-cĭs′cō
Sän Gä′brĭ-ĕl
Sän Jose (*hō-sā′*)
Sän Juan (*hoo-än′*) Bautista (*bough-tēs′tà*)
Sän Juan (*hoo-än′*) Cäp-ïs-trä′nō
Sän Lu͟′ïs Rey (re͟)
Sän Pe͟′dro
Sän′tå Bär′bå-rå
Sän′tå Cä-tå-lï′nå
Sän′tå Clä′rå
Sán′tå Cruz (*kroos*)
Sän′tå Inez (ē-nĕs′)
señora (sĕn-yō′rå)
señiorita (sĕn-yō-rï′tå)
Sĕr′rå, Junipero (hoo-nï′pā-rō)
Sï-ĕr′rå Ne͟-vä′då
Sō-lä′nō
Sō-nō′må
Sutter (soo′ter)
Vallejo (*väl-yā′hō*)
vaquero (*và-kā′rō*)
Viscaino (*vēs-kä-ē′nō*)

THE INDEX.

ADMISSION TO UNION, 39.
Amendments to Constitution, 58.
Americans in California, 21.
Aqueduct, Los Angeles, 48.
Argonauts, 30.
Art, 61.
Atherton, Gertrude, 63.
Austin, Mary, 63.

BAKERSFIELD, 52.
Balboa, 3.
Bandini, quoted, 13.
Bear Flag rebellion, 25.
Benicia, 38.
Berkeley, 52.
Bodega bay, Russians at, 16.
Burbank, Luther, 64.
Burnett, Peter H., 38.

CABRILLO, 5.
Cahuenga, treaty of, 28.
California republic, 26.
Californians, revolt of, 25.
Camino Real, 12.
Capitals of California, 37, 38.
Carmel mission, 11.
Castro, Jose, 24.
Central Pacific railroad, 44.
Cheney, John Vance, 63.
Chico, 52.
Chinese in California, 46–47.
Civil war, 42.
Clemens, Samuel L., 62.
Coloma, 29.
Colorado river break, 54.
Columbus, 3.
Constitution of 1849, 37; of 1879, 47.
Conventions, constitutional, 37, 47.
Coolbrith, Ina, 62.
Cortes, 3, 6.
Crocker, Charles, 44.

DAVIS, University farm at, 59.
De Soto, 3.
Dolores, mission, 11.
Donner party, 22–24.
Drake, Sir Francis, 5.
Drake's bay, 6.

EARTHQUAKE, 57.
Education, 58.
El Dorado, 31.
Electricity, 56.
Exclusion of Chinese, 47.
Expositions, 60.

FANDANGO, 19.
Fires in San Francisco, 40.
Flores, General, 27.
Fort Ross, 16.
Forty-niners, 30.
Fremont, John C., 24, 27, 28.
Fresno, 52, 53.

GILLESPIE, Lieutenant, 25.
Gold, discovery of, 28.
Gold rush, 29.
Gringos, 24.

HARTE, BRET, 61.
Highway, state, 60.
Hopkins, Mark, 44.
Houses, Spanish, 18.
Huntington, Collis P., 44.
Hydraulic mining, 33.

IMPERIAL COUNTY, 54.
Indians of California, 3.
Initiative, 58.
Irrigation, 54.

JACKSON, HELEN HUNT, 63.

KEARNY, GENERAL STEPHEN, 27.
Kern, 53.
Keith, William, 63.
King, Thomas Starr, 42.

LASSEN, MOUNT, 60.
Literature, 61.
London, Jack, 63.
Los Angeles, 17, 27, 47, 53.

MAGELLAN, 3.
Markham, Edwin, 62.
Marshall, James, 28.
Mesa, battle of, 28.
Miller, Joaquin, 62.
Mills college, 60.
Mining, 31.
Mining camps, 33–34.
Missions, 8–14.
Modoc, 3.
Monterey, 6, 10, 12, 17, 24, 37.
Monterey bay, 9.
Mt. Lassen, 60.
Muir, John, 63.

NAVEL ORANGE, 48.
New Spain, 7.
Norris, Frank, 63.
Novelists, 62.

OAKLAND, 52.
Occidental college, 60.
Oil, 53.
Orange, 48, 53.
Oregon, battleship, 49.
Ortega, 9.

PALO ALTO, 57.
Panama-California exposition, 60.
Panama canal, 60.
Panama-Pacific exposition, 60.
Pasadena, 48.
Paso de Bartolo, 28.
Philippine islands, 50.
Pico, General Andres, 27.
Pizarro, 6.
Placer mining, 32.
Poets, 62.
Polk, President, 24.
Pomona college, 60.
Pony express, 42.
Portola, 6, 7–10.
Presidios, 11, 17.
Promontory points, 45.
Pueblos, 17.

RAILROADS, 44–45.
Ramona, 27.
Ranchos, 18.
Redlands, 48.
Referendum, 58.
Riley, General Bennet, 36.
Riverside, 48.
Rodeo, 19.
Russians in California, 15.

SACRAMENTO, 38, 43, 44, 52.
San Bernardino, 48.
San Carlos mission, 11.
San Diego bay, 5, 12.
San Diego, town, 17, 48, 60.
San Diego mission, 8, 10.
San Francisco, 12, 17, 39, 52.
San Francisco bay, 9, 30.
San Gabriel, battle of the, 28.
San Gabriel mission, 11, 20.
San Jose, 11, 38, 52, 57.
San Juan Bautista mission, 11.
San Juan Capistrano mission, 11.
San Luis Obispo, 11.
San Luis Rey mission, 11.
San Miguel mission, 11.
San Pasqual, 27.
San Pedro harbor, 48.
Santa Barbara, 11, 17, 53.
Santa Barbara mission, 11.
Santa Catalina, 6.
Santa Clara college, 60.
Santa Cruz, 17.
Santa Inez mission, 11.
Santa Rosa, 57.
Schools, 58.
Serra, Junipero, 7–11.
Sill, Edward Rowland, 63.
Slavery question, 38.
Sloat, Commodore, 26.
Sonoma, 25.
Spanish-American war, 49.
Stagecoach, 42.
Stanford, Leland, 42, 44, 45.
Stanford university, 60.
Stevenson, Robert Louis, 62.
Stirling, George, 63.
Stockton, town, 52.
Stockton, Commodore, 26–27.
Stoddard, Charles Warren, 63.
Suffrage, woman, 58.
Sutter, Captain John A., 16, 21, 28.
Sutter's fort, 22.

TIBBITS, Mr. and Mrs. Luther C., 48.
Twain, Mark, 62.

UNION PACIFIC railroad, 44.
Universities, 59.
University farm, 59.
University of California, 59.
University of Southern California, 60

VALLEJO, GENERAL, 25–26.
Vallejo, town, 38.
Vaqueros, 18.
Ventura, 53.
Vigilance committees, 41.
Viscaino, 69.
Volcano, 60.

WRITERS, 61.